

*IMPORTANT NOTICE: Readers are referred to the disclaimer set out at the beginning of the Calendar*

## Section C

# Courses of Study

<b>Statute governing all courses of study</b>	
Personal Courses of Study Statute	119
<b>Faculty of Architecture and Design</b>	
<i>Architecture</i>	
Bachelor of Architecture	127
Master of Architecture	130
<i>Building Science</i>	
Bachelor of Building Science	131
Bachelor of Building Science with Honours	133
Master of Building Science	134
Graduate Certificate and Diploma of Building Management	136
<i>Design</i>	
Bachelor of Design	138
Bachelor of Design with Honours	145
Master of Design	147
Graduate Diploma in Design	148
<b>Faculty of Commerce and Administration</b>	
Bachelor of Commerce and Administration	151
Conjoint Bachelor of Commerce and Administration and Bachelor of Teaching	159
Conjoint Bachelor of Commerce and Administration and Bachelor of Science	160
Graduate Diploma in Professional Accounting	161
Graduate Diploma in Commerce	162
Bachelor of Commerce and Administration with Honours	165
Master of Commerce and Administration	171
<i>Applied Finance</i>	
Master of Applied Finance	172
Postgraduate Diploma in Financial Analysis	174
Postgraduate Diploma in Treasury Management	174
Postgraduate Certificate in Financial Markets Analysis	175

<i>Financial Mathematics</i>	
Master of Financial Mathematics	175
Postgraduate Diploma in Financial Mathematics	177
<i>Government</i>	
Master of Public Management	178
Postgraduate Certificate and Diploma in Public Management	180
Master of Public Policy	181
Postgraduate Certificate and Diploma in Public Policy	182
Master of Strategic Studies	184
Postgraduate Certificate and Diploma in Strategic Studies	185
Master of Public Administration (Executive)	186
<i>Information Management</i>	
Master of Communications	188
Master of Library and Information Studies	188
Postgraduate Certificate and Diploma in Archives and Records Management	190
Master of Information Management	191
Postgraduate Certificate and Diploma in Information Management	193
<i>Information Technology</i>	
Bachelor of Information Technology ( <i>see under Faculty of Science, p 384</i> )	
<i>Management</i>	
Master of Business Administration	195
International Master of Business Administration	197
Certificate in Management Studies	199
Postgraduate Diploma in Business Administration	199
Postgraduate Diploma in Human Resource Management	199
Certificate in Executive Development	201
Master of Management Studies	201
Master of Management	203
Certificate in Māori Business	203
<i>Tourism Management</i>	
Bachelor of Tourism Management	204
Bachelor of Tourism Management with Honours	206
Master of Tourism Management	207
<i>Marketing</i>	
Postgraduate Diploma in Marketing	209

<b>Faculty of Education</b>	
Conjoint Bachelor of Teaching Programmes	210
Conjoint Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Teaching (Early Childhood Education)	211
Bachelor of Education (Teaching) Early Childhood	211
Master of Education	214
Graduate Diploma of Teaching (Primary)	218
Graduate Diploma of Teaching (Secondary)	219
Postgraduate Certificate and Diploma in Education and Professional Development	222
Master of Teaching	223
Postgraduate Diploma in Teaching	223
Graduate Diploma in Special Needs Resource Teaching	224
Diploma in Education and Training for Professional Development	225
Diploma in the Education of Students with Special Needs Teaching	226
Diploma of Teaching (Early Childhood Education) Whāriki Papatipu	226
Diploma of Teaching (Early Childhood Education)	226
Bachelor of Education (Teaching) Primary	227
Bachelor of Education (Teaching) Primary Upgrade	227
Bachelor of Education with Honours	227
<b>Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences</b>	
Bachelor of Arts	228
Bachelor of Arts with Honours	263
Master of Arts	281
Master of Arts (Applied)	289
Graduate Certificate and Diploma in Arts (Applied)	294
Graduate Diploma in Arts	295
<i>Education</i>	
Conjoint Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Teaching	295
Conjoint Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Teaching (Early Childhood Education)	297
Bachelor of Education (Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages)	299
<i>Music</i>	
Bachelor of Music	301
Bachelor of Music with Honours	306
Master of Music	310
Artist Diploma	311
Graduate Diploma in Music	312
Master of Music Therapy	313

Postgraduate Diploma of Music Teaching	314
Foundation Certificate in Jazz	315
<i>International Relations</i>	
Master of Asia-Pacific Affairs	316
Graduate Diploma in Asia-Pacific Affairs	316
Master of International Relations	317
Graduate Diploma in International Relations	318
<i>Museum and Heritage Studies</i>	
Master of Museum and Heritage Studies	318
Graduate Certificate and Diploma in Museum and Heritage Studies	319
<i>New Zealand Studies</i>	
Master of New Zealand Studies	319
Graduate Certificate in New Zealand Studies	319
<i>Nursing and Midwifery</i>	
Master of Nursing	320
Master of Midwifery	321
Master of Nursing (Clinical)	321
Postgraduate Diploma of Nursing	323
Postgraduate Diploma of Midwifery	324
Postgraduate Certificate in Clinical Nursing	324
Postgraduate Diploma in Health	325
Postgraduate Certificate in Health	326
Postgraduate Certificate in Midwifery	327
<i>Public History</i>	
Master of Public History	327
<i>Theatre Arts</i>	
Master of Theatre Arts	328
Graduate Diploma in Theatre Arts	328
<i>Japanese Studies</i>	
Graduate Diploma in Japanese Studies	330
Postgraduate Diploma in Teaching Japanese	330
<i>Māori Studies</i>	
Diploma in Māoritanga / Tohu Māoritanga	331
Graduate Diploma in Teaching Māori Language / He Tohu Whakaako i te Reo Māori	332
<i>Rehabilitation Studies</i>	
Diploma in Rehabilitation Studies	333

<i>Language Studies</i>	
Graduate Diploma in Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages	334
Graduate Certificate in Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages	335
Certificate in Deaf Studies (Teaching NZSL)	336
Certificate of Proficiency in English	336
<i>Police Studies</i>	
Certificate in Contemporary Policing	337
<b>Faculty of Law</b>	
Bachelor of Laws	338
Bachelor of Laws with Honours	341
Master of Laws	342
Certificate in Law	344
Diploma in Law	345
Law Profession Admission Programme	345
<b>Faculty of Science</b>	
Bachelor of Science	346
Conjoint Bachelor of Commerce and Administration and Bachelor of Science ( <i>see under Faculty of Commerce and Administration, p 159</i> )	
Conjoint Bachelor of Science and Bachelor of Teaching	357
Bachelor of Science with Honours	359
Master of Science	369
Graduate Diploma in Science	376
Bachelor of Biomedical Science	379
Bachelor of Biomedical Science with Honours	380
Master of Biomedical Science	382
Graduate Diploma in Biomedical Science	383
Bachelor of Information Technology	384
Bachelor of Science and Technology	388
Master of Computer Science	390
Master of Conservation Biology	391
Postgraduate Certificate in New Zealand Conservation	391
Master of Development Studies	392
Postgraduate Diploma in Development Studies	394
Master of Environmental Studies	395
Postgraduate Diploma in Environmental Studies	395
Graduate Diploma in Computer Science	396
Postgraduate Certificate and Diploma in Meteorology	397
Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology	398

**Inter-Faculty Qualifications**

Certificate in Foundation Studies	400
Certificate of University Preparation	401
Certificate of Proficiency	402

**Doctorates**

Doctor of Philosophy	403
Doctor of Commerce	406
Doctor of Literature	407
Doctor of Music	408
Doctor of Laws	409
Doctor of Science	410

---

## Personal Courses of Study Statute

---

### PART 1: GENERAL

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the statutes for all degrees and diplomas listed in the Degrees Statute and for any other academic qualifications of this University.

1. In this statute, the word “qualification” applies to degrees, diplomas and certificates.
  - A “course” (previously known as “paper”) is an individual unit of study towards a qualification.
  - A “course of study” is a collection of courses to be used towards a qualification or combination of qualifications.
  - A “personal course of study” is a particular combination of courses selected by an individual student.
2. The personal course of study of every candidate for a qualification shall comply with the statute for that qualification, except that the relevant Associate Dean (or Dean) may in exceptional circumstances approve a personal course of study which does not comply with that statute.
3.
  - (a) The personal course of study chosen by a student for a given academic year shall require the approval of the Academic Board. The Head of each School in which the student proposes (i) to satisfy the subject requirements at advanced level for an undergraduate qualification, or (ii) to study for a postgraduate qualification (other than PhD), shall act on behalf of the Board in giving that approval.
  - (b) The personal course of study chosen by any candidate for two qualifications shall require the approval of the Heads of all of the Schools concerned.
  - (c) Heads of Schools may nominate other members of their faculties to approve personal courses of study on their behalf.
4. A student who has passed at this or any other institution a course equivalent to one which is required for a Victoria University qualification, or for a major or specialisation within such a qualification, but is unable to gain credit for it towards that qualification may be given an exemption from that course by the relevant Associate Dean (or Dean). Such an exemption may require the substitution of an approved alternative course.
5. A student shall not normally in any trimester enrol for courses equivalent to more than 90 points except that if all courses are at 100-level the limit is 81 points. Enrolment in a higher number of points may be approved by a relevant Associate Dean (or Dean). For the purposes of this section half of the points value of each two-trimester course should be attributed to each trimester.
6. Only those students enrolled in a course are entitled to attend classes for that course.

**Changes in personal courses of study****Additions**

7. Students are normally expected to be registered for their courses by Friday in the week preceding the start of teaching. A student who wishes to add a course after its commencement must obtain permission (on the appropriate form) from both the Course Co-ordinator (or designated authority) and the Head of School or Associate Dean (or Dean) responsible for approving the student's personal course of study. Other than in exceptional circumstances, no course may be added after the first one-sixth has elapsed.

*Note: The addition of a course after it has commenced will be approved only if places are available, late entry will not significantly affect the delivery of the course and the late enrolment will not significantly impact on the student's chance of passing.*

**Withdrawals**

8. (a) Any student who wishes to withdraw from a course must apply on the appropriate form.  
(b) A student may withdraw from a course at any time during the first three-quarters of the teaching weeks.  
(c) Withdrawals after that date require the approval of the relevant Associate Dean (or Dean). An Associate Dean (or Dean) will not normally approve such a withdrawal unless satisfied that:  
(i) there are medical or personal circumstances applying after the specified date for withdrawals which have seriously affected the student's ability to complete the course, and  
(ii) either there is evidence of satisfactory progress in the course up to the specified cut-off date for withdrawals, or the absence of such evidence is due to adverse medical or personal circumstances.

*Note 1: Exact withdrawal dates for particular trimesters may be obtained from the Enrolment Guide or Faculty Student Administration Offices.*

*Note 2: Any additional fees arising from the change of course will be calculated and will become payable when the change of course form is returned to the Faculty Student Administration Office. Any refund that becomes due will be posted to the student when the procedures have been completed.*

*Note 3: The operative date for any change of course is the date when the form is received by the Faculty Student Administration Office. If forms are posted, due allowance should be made for postal delays to ensure that the form arrives before the relevant deadline.*

**Prerequisites, Corequisites and Restrictions**

9. (a) Each course in the personal course of study of a student shall comply with any prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions specified in the relevant statutes.  
(i) A pass in a prerequisite for a course is necessary before the student may be enrolled for that course, unless this requirement is waived by the relevant Head of School. If the waiver is conditional on simultaneous

- enrolment in the prerequisite course, then both courses must be passed before enrolment can occur in any subsequent course for which the second course is itself a prerequisite.
- (ii) Either a pass or concurrent enrolment in any corequisite for a course is necessary before the student may be enrolled for that course, unless this requirement is waived by the relevant Head of School.
  - (iii) Enrolment in a course which is restricted against a course or combination of courses that the student has already passed or is concurrently enrolled in, is prohibited unless permitted by the relevant Head of School. In such cases, the student may not receive credit toward any Victoria University qualifications for both the former course and the course or combination of courses against which it is restricted.
- (b) Where a student has passed a course for which exemption from any prerequisite has been granted, the student may enrol in that prerequisite only with the specific approval of the Head of the School concerned.
  - (c) Any decision taken under this Section may be appealed to the relevant Associate Dean (or Dean).

#### **Enrolment for course already passed**

10. Only in special circumstances and with the permission of the relevant Associate Dean (or Dean) may a student enrol in a course (i) previously passed or (ii) equivalent to a prerequisite for a course previously passed. In case (i), credit for the course will be given just once.

#### **Cross-credits from one qualification to another**

11. Unless expressly permitted in the relevant statutes, cross-crediting is possible only for Bachelor's degrees and the following Honours degrees: BDes(Hons), LLB(Hons). Candidates completing several undergraduate degrees may be given a reduction in the total number of points required if the relevant statutes permit cross-crediting of the kind and to the extent proposed, subject to the following conditions:
- (a) No more than three degrees (including at most one completed external degree\*) may be involved.
- \* In this section, "external degree" means a degree or some other qualification awarded by another tertiary institution and regarded as comparable to a Victoria University degree*
- (b) No 300-level course may be used to satisfy major requirements for more than one degree.
  - (c) Where two Victoria University degrees are involved, the amount of cross-crediting between them is limited to 160 points, except where transfer credit is included from a completed external degree, in which case the amount of cross-crediting is limited to 100 points.
  - (d) Where three Victoria University degrees are involved, the total amount of cross-crediting may not exceed 240 points.
  - (e) The overall course of study shall satisfy all of the requirements of the statutes for the qualifications involved except that the level and schedule requirements will be applied to the overall course of study as follows:

- (i) The minimum number of points at 200 level or above shall be obtained by summing the numbers of such points required for each programme separately (as shown in column A below).
- (ii) The minimum number of points at 300 level or above shall be obtained by summing the numbers of such points required for each programme separately (as shown in column B).
- (iii) The minimum number of points from the home schedule(s) for each degree (as defined in column C) will be as required for each degree separately (as shown in column D), and the minimum total number of points from the combined relevant home schedules shall be the sum of those two numbers less the points reduction due to cross-crediting as described in (c) and (d).
- (iv) The minimum total number of points for the overall course of study will be the sum of the totals required for the degrees concerned (as shown in column E) less the points reduction due to cross-crediting, as described in (c) and (d).

<i>Degree</i>	<i>A 200+</i>	<i>B 300+</i>	<i>C home schedules</i>	<i>D home pts</i>	<i>E total pts</i>
BArch	460	340	BArch, BBS, BDes	542	600
BBS	200	80	BArch, BBS, BDes	176	360
BDes	320	160	BDes	348	480
BDes(Hons)	328	248	BDes, BDes(Hons)	378	490
BCA	180	72	BCA	204	360
Conjoint BCA/BSc	294	120	BCA, BSc	414	510
BCA/BTeach	318	120	BCA, BTeach	488	534
BTM	204	72	BTM, BCA	360	360
BA	180	72	BA	312	360
BA/BTeach	318	120	BA, BTeach	488	534
BA/BTeach(ECE)	364	142	BA, BTeach(ECE)	472	534
BEd(Tchg)EC	222	90	BEd(Tchg)EC	360	360
BMus	180	48	BMus, BA	360	360
LLB	338	210	LLB	392	482
LLB(Hons)	372	244	LLB, LLB(Hons)	426	516
BSc	180	72	BSc	270*	360
BSc/BTeach	318	120	BSc, BTeach	488	534
BBmedSc	180	78	BBmedSc, BSc	314	360
BIT	300	168	BIT	398	480
BSc(Tech)	210	78	BSc(Tech), BSc	270	360

\* Courses from outside the BSc Schedule taken to satisfy a BSc major requirement may contribute up to 48 further points towards this number.

**Crediting courses to qualifications**

12. Unless otherwise permitted by the relevant Associate Dean (or Dean), a student may credit a set of courses to a qualification if and only if the following conditions apply:
- The set of courses meets the requirements of the statute for the qualification.
  - The student has obtained a pass in every course, except where the course is taken for a postgraduate Honours degree or Part 1 of the corresponding Master's degree or where the statute for the qualification specifies otherwise.
  - Except in special cases and with the approval of the relevant Associate Dean (or Dean), at the time of enrolment for each course the student met the requirements for being accepted into the qualification.

**PART 2: POSTGRADUATE HONOURS AND MASTER'S DEGREES**

13. (a) A candidate may enrol in a postgraduate Honours or Master's course (i.e. one listed on the schedule of a postgraduate Honours or Master's degree) only with the approval of the Head of School responsible for that course. The qualification to which the course is to be credited must be specified at the time of enrolment.
- (b) A candidate for a postgraduate Honours degree (or Part 1 of a corresponding Master's programme) will not normally be permitted to re-enrol in a failed course (or replace it with another course) for the same qualification.
- (c) Except with the permission of the relevant Associate Dean, no more than 25% of a candidate's personal course of study for a postgraduate Honours (or Part 1 of a corresponding Master's) degree may consist of individual research courses.
14. (a) Unless otherwise permitted by the relevant degree statute, no course already credited to another qualification (or in the opinion of the appropriate Associate Dean (or Dean) substantially equivalent to such a course) may be credited to a postgraduate Honours or Master's degree.
- (b) A candidate for a postgraduate Honours or Master's degree, who is prevented by part (a) from crediting a course that is compulsory for that qualification, may substitute an alternative course approved by the relevant Associate Dean (or Dean).
15. A person who has been awarded a BA(Hons), BCA(Hons), BMus(Hons), BSc(Hons), MA, MA(Applied), MCA, MMus or MSc in any subject
- may be a candidate for the same degree in another subject;
  - may not present the same subject for more than one of those postgraduate Honours degrees or for more than one of those Master's degrees.
16. (a) Candidates for a postgraduate Honours or Master's degree must complete the requirements for the qualification within the maximum time specified in the statute, unless an extension is approved by the relevant Associate Dean (or Dean).
- (b) The course of study for a qualification shall be regarded as having begun when the candidate first enrolled in a course later credited to that qualification.

**Substitution of courses**

17. (a) With the approval of the relevant Head of School, a candidate may replace optional courses in a postgraduate Honours or Master's degree with courses of a comparable points value from the same or other programmes as specified in the relevant degree statute. In no case may courses be substituted for more than half of the points required for the degree.
- (b) The Head of School shall approve only substitute courses that are relevant and complementary to the rest of the candidate's programme, and shall ensure that the candidate's personal course of study is consistent with the intent of the degree statute.

**Master's theses**

18. A Master's thesis is a component of a Master's degree worth at least 60 points and satisfying the requirements of parts (a) and (b) of this section.
  - (a) The thesis shall present the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of the subject being presented or, in the case of the MA, MA(Applied), MBmedSc, MCA, MEd, MMidw, MMus, MNurs or MSc degrees, a review of the literature relating to some special problem which may be combined with an investigation of some aspect of this problem.
  - (b) The work for a 120-point thesis should normally require at most 12 months but not less than two trimesters of full-time work or the equivalent in part-time work.
  - (c) The relevant Associate Dean (or Dean) may at any time extend the maximum time for completing a Master's thesis or, on application from a candidate who is unable to continue work on a thesis for a specified period of time, grant a suspension of enrolment for that period. Such a suspension would not normally be for less than three months or more than twelve months.

**PART 3: AWARD OF HONOURS, DISTINCTION OR MERIT**

19. (a) Unless otherwise specified in the relevant degree statute, the class of Honours to be awarded or the award of Distinction or Merit shall be assessed on the candidate's overall performance; the assessment to be made is of the candidate's quality of mind and command of the subject displayed over a range of material and tasks appropriate to the limited time specified for the programme.
- (b) An Associate Dean (or Dean), after consultation with the relevant Head of School, may extend a maximum period for completing requirements relating to the award of Honours, Distinction or Merit. A candidate refused such extension may still be permitted to complete the degree.

**Award of Honours**

20. (a) These classes of honours shall apply to BA(Hons), BBmedSc(Hons), BBSc(Hons), BCA(Hons), BDes(Hons), BMus(Hons), BSc(Hons), and BTM(Hons): First Class, Second Class (first division), Second Class (second division), and Third Class.

- (b) These classes of honours shall apply to other Bachelor's and Master's degrees awarded with Honours: First Class, Second Class (first division) and Second Class (second division).
- (c) Only the first attempt at a course, and only results for the specified number of courses, can be taken into account in assessing the class of Honours to be awarded for any postgraduate Honours degree.

#### **Award of Distinction or Merit**

21. Where the statute for a degree states that it may be awarded with Distinction or Merit, a candidate will be awarded the degree with Distinction if in the opinion of the examiners the work is at an A+ or A standard overall, and with Merit if the work is at an A- or B+ standard.

### **PART 4: MISCELLANEOUS**

#### **Transition from earlier regulations and statutes**

22. (a) Unless expressly prevented by subsequent statutes or regulations, a candidate enrolled for a qualification under a previous statute may complete the qualification under that statute and any associated regulations if they do so within five years from when the statute was changed. Such completion shall accord with a determination to be made in each case by the relevant Associate Dean (or Dean) concerning the way in which the requirements of the earlier regulations and statutes are to be met.
- (b) A candidate may complete a qualification under a statute and regulations which last applied before the time specified in (a) only at the discretion of the Associate Dean (or Dean).
- (c) In making the determination of section (a), the Associate Dean (or Dean) shall endeavour to prevent undue hardship and shall, as appropriate, take account of
- (i) any provisions for the transition in the new statute,
  - (ii) how long the candidate has been enrolled.
- No credit may be given for a course or courses substantially equivalent to courses previously passed.

*Note: The schedules to current statutes for degrees and other academic qualifications generally make against current courses explicit restrictions relating to courses that have been taught within the last seven years. Information about courses last taught more than seven years ago which may be restricted against current courses can be obtained on request from the relevant Faculty Student Administration Office or School.*

23. (a) Each BA, BCA and BMus unit passed before 1972, and each BSc unit passed before 1973, shall count as 36, 44, or 48 points for stage I, II, or III respectively, and each half unit or reading knowledge as 18, 22, or 24 points for stage I, II, or III, but no candidate who has passed such unit, half unit or reading knowledge shall enrol in its equivalent as scheduled for any degree.
- (b) The units and their stages of the earlier regulations and statutes shall be deemed to be of equivalent standard to the courses scheduled for current degrees in accordance with the following table:

<i>Courses numbered</i>	<i>Equivalent stage</i>
100-199	Stage I or Reading Knowledge
200-299	Stage II
300-399	Stage III

- (c) The weighting of each undergraduate course passed after 1972 and before 1998 shall normally be translated from credits to points as follows:

**Courses from the BA, BMus, BCA, BTM and BEd(Tchg)EC Schedules**

- (i) 6-credit 100-level courses will become 18 points;
- (ii) 6-credit 200-level courses will become 22 points;
- (iii) 6-credit 300-level courses will become 24 points.

*Note: 12-, 4-, and 3-credit courses will be translated proportionally with fractions rounded up.*

**Courses from the BSc Schedule**

As for the BA with the following exceptions:

- (i) BIOL 301-330 all 30 points for 6-credit courses or 15 points for 3-credit courses;
- (ii) CHEM 365, 371, 372 all 30 points;
- (iii) COMP 301-389 all 15 points;
- (iv) GEOL 311-333 all 30 points.

**Courses from the LLB/LLB(Hons) Schedules**

- (i) LAWS 101 will become 36 points;
- (ii) LAWS 211-214 will become 32 points;
- (iii) LAWS 301 will become 30 points;
- (iv) 6-credit 300-level courses will become 15 points;
- (v) LAWS 401, 402, 489 will become 8 points.

**Courses from the BArch, BBS and BDes Schedules**

- (i) Intermediate Years: As for BA/BSc;
- (ii) Professional Years: Each 6-credit course will become 20 points.

*Note: There may be some exceptions to these rules and students must obtain advice from the relevant Faculty Student Administration Office regarding their personal course of study.*

## Faculty of Architecture and Design

### BArch

#### Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### General Requirements

1. (a) The course of study for the BArch degree shall, except as provided in section 2(b) below, consist of courses worth at least 600 points, including

**Part 1:** First Year Architecture

**Part 2:** Second, Third, Fourth and Fifth Year Architecture.

Each candidate shall complete to the satisfaction of the Head of the School of Architecture such practical work as may be prescribed.

*Note: Practical work means work carried out in timetabled class hours in a laboratory, workshop or studio. With the permission of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Architecture and Design, this may be replaced or supplemented by field work and excursions.*

- (b) A candidate shall normally complete Part 1 before being admitted to Part 2.

#### Year Requirements

2. (a) Part 1 (First Year Architecture) shall include ARCH 101, 102, 111, 112, 171 (or 172), 181, and at least 18 MATH/PHYS points\*.

\* A candidate with a satisfactory background in Maths or Physics may in either case substitute 18 points from any course offered for a first degree of this University. (See Guide to Study)

- (b) The Associate Dean may exempt from Part 1 and admit to Part 2 a student who has
  - (i) completed a New Zealand Certificate or National Diploma as specified in the Schedule to the Credit Transfer Statute; or
  - (ii) completed a relevant New Zealand degree or diploma or equivalent; or
  - (iii) passed at least 126 points in a course of study other than that prescribed for Part 1; or
  - (iv) produced evidence of extensive practical, professional and/or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.
- (c) In exceptional circumstances, the Head of School may award a pass in Part 1 as a whole to a candidate who has failed one or more of the required courses if the overall performance is of a sufficiently high standard.
3. (a) After completing Part 1, students will be ranked on academic performance in required First Year Architecture courses for entry into Second Year. Part 2 shall normally consist of four years of full-time study as follows:
 

**Second Year**  
ARCH 211, 212, 241, 251, 280, and at least 18 points in elective courses numbered 100-299 from the BArch, BBS or BDes schedules or in approved courses offered for any first degree of this University.

**Third Year**

ARCH 311, 312, 341, 351, 363, and at least 20 points in elective courses numbered 200-399 from the BArch or BBSc schedules or in approved courses offered for any first degree of this University.

**Fourth Year**

ARCH 373, 411, 412, 431, 441, 451, and at least 20 points at 300-level or above from the BArch or BBSc schedules or an approved course from the BDes schedule.

**Fifth Year**

ARCH 461, 482, an approved research course worth at least 20 points and at least 20 points at 300-level or above from the BArch or BBSc schedules.

- (b) In certain circumstances the Associate Dean may exempt a candidate from compulsory courses in Part 2 with or without credit. In particular, a candidate who has completed a BBSc degree may be exempted with full credit from ARCH 241, 251, 341 and 351 and the Second and Third Year electives.

**Cross-credits**

4. At the discretion of the Associate Dean,
- a candidate completing a BArch degree combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;
  - a candidate completing a BArch degree combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the BArch and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 1-3 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Award of Honours**

5. The BArch degree may be awarded with Honours as described in sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.
- To be eligible for the award of Honours, a candidate shall normally have completed the Fourth and Fifth Years in no more than three consecutive years.
  - Honours shall not normally be awarded if a candidate's performance in a compulsory Fourth or Fifth Year course is unsatisfactory at first attempt, unless the candidate has subsequently passed the course to the satisfaction of the Examiners Committee.

**Transitional Arrangements**

6. Candidates who began Part 2 under the regulations in force before 2004 may complete the degree under those regulations as long as they do so by the end of 2007. Alternatively, they may complete under this statute.

### Schedule to the BArch Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ARCH 101	Communications Studies	18	
ARCH 102	Architectural Communication	18	
ARCH 111	Architectural Design	18	
ARCH 112	Architectural Design	18	P ARCH 111 or DESN 111
ARCH 171	History of Architecture	18	
ARCH 172	History of Architecture	18	
ARCH 181	Architectural Technologies	18	
ARCH 201	Communication	20	X BBSC 201
ARCH 211	Architectural Design	20	
ARCH 212	Architectural Design	20	P ARCH 211
ARCH 222	Sustainable Architecture	20	P 72 pts; X ARCH 282 in 1998-2000
ARCH 241	Construction	20	X BBSC 241
ARCH 244	Building Cost Planning	20	P ARCH 241 or BBSC 241; X BBSC 244
ARCH 245	Fire Safety Design	20	P ARCH 241 or BBSC 241 or ITDN 241; X BBSC 245, ARCH 382 in 2001, ARCH 282 in 2002-04
ARCH 251	Structures	20	X BBSC 251
ARCH 261	Building Economics	20	X BBSC 261
ARCH 271	History of Architecture	20	P ARCH 171 or 172 or 181
ARCH 273	Building Heritage Conservation	20	P 40 200-level ARCH or BBSC pts; X ARCH 281 in 1996-98 or ITDN 373 in 1996-98
ARCH 274	Pacific Architecture	20	
ARCH 280	Methods of Inquiry in Architecture	20	
ARCH 281	Special Topic	20	
ARCH 282	Special Topic	20	
ARCH 301	Communication in Practice	20	P ARCH 201 or BBSC 201; X BBSC 301
ARCH 302	Graphic Communication	20	P ARCH 312
ARCH 311	Architectural Design	20	P ARCH 212
ARCH 312	Architectural Design	20	P ARCH 311
ARCH 321	Building Performance	20	P ARCH 431, 451 or BBSC 331; C (BBSc students only) BBSC 341; X BBSC 321
ARCH 332	Environmental Control	20	P ARCH 312 or BBSC 331; X BBSC 332
ARCH 333	Lighting Design and Technology	20	P ARCH 212 or BBSC 231 or ITDN 231(or 234)
ARCH 341	Construction	20	P ARCH 241 or BBSC 241; X BBSC 341
ARCH 343	Construction Studies	20	P ARCH 341 or BBSC 341; X BBSC 343
ARCH 351	Structures	20	P ARCH 251 or BBSC 251; X BBSC 351
ARCH 352	Structural Systems	20	P ARCH 351 or BBSC 351; X BBSC 352
ARCH 363	Management Principles and Practice	20	P 60 200-level ARCH, BBSC or DESN pts; X BBSC 363
ARCH 371	Ideas and Forms of Cities	20	P ARCH 171 or 172 or 18 approved DESN or ARTH pts; 40 200-level pts
ARCH 373	Urban Design History and Theory	20	P ARCH 171 or 172; 40 200-level pts
ARCH 379	History of Architecture	20	P ARCH 271 or 272 or 380

**Schedule to the BArch Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ARCH 380	Architectural Theory and Criticism	20	P ARCH 171 or 172, 40 200-level pts; X ARCH 272
ARCH 381	Special Topic	20	
ARCH 382	Special Topic	20	
ARCH 389	Independent Study	20	P 40 200-level ARCH pts
ARCH 403	Computer Applications	20	P ARCH 341 or BBSC 303; X ARCH 303 before 1999, BBSC 403
ARCH 411	Architectural Design	20	P ARCH 312
ARCH 412	Architectural Design	20	P ARCH 411
ARCH 431	Services	10	P ARCH 312
ARCH 441	Construction	20	P ARCH 341
ARCH 451	Structural Systems	10	P ARCH 351
ARCH 461	Professional Practice	20	P ARCH 363 or BBSC 363
ARCH 463	Project Management	20	P ARCH 363 or BBSC 363
ARCH 480	Architecture and Critical Theory	20	P ARCH 380; X ARCH 372
ARCH 481	Architectural Design	40	P ARCH 373, 411, 412, 431, 441, 451; X 482
ARCH 482	Architectural Design	60	P as for ARCH 481; X ARCH 481
ARCH 489	Architectural Research	20	P as for ARCH 481

**MArch****Statute for the Degree of Master of Architecture**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MArch degree shall have
  - (i) completed a BArch degree or, at the discretion of the Head of the School of Architecture, an architecture diploma; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Research) of the Faculty of Architecture and Design for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

**General Requirements**

2. (a) A candidate shall present a thesis (ARCH 591) as specified in section 18 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.
- (b) The course of study may, with the approval of the Associate Dean, be carried out in part at an approved institution outside this University.
3. (a) A candidate shall normally be enrolled for the degree for a minimum of three trimesters in the case of a full-time student or six trimesters in the case of a part-time student.

- (b) The thesis shall be presented within three years of the candidate's first enrolment for the degree.

#### **Award of Distinction or Merit**

4. The MArch may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

## **BBSc**

### **Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Building Science**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **General Requirements**

1. (a) The personal course of study of a candidate for the BBSc degree shall, except as provided in section 2(b) below, consist of courses worth at least 360 points, including

**Part 1:** First Year Building Science

**Part 2:** Second and Third Year Building Science.

Each candidate shall complete to the satisfaction of the Head of the School of Architecture such practical work as may be prescribed.

*Note: Practical work means work carried out in timetabled class hours in a laboratory, workshop or studio. With the permission of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Architecture and Design, this may be replaced or supplemented by field work and excursions.*

- (b) A candidate shall normally complete Part 1 before being admitted to Part 2.

#### **Year Requirements**

2. (a) Part 1 (First Year Building Science) shall consist of courses worth at least 126 points, including
- (i) ARCH 101 (or 102), 111, 171 (or 172), 181;
  - (ii) 18 approved points in each of Mathematics and Physics\* and additional courses offered for any first degree of this University.

\* A candidate with a satisfactory background in Maths and Physics may in either case substitute 18 points from any course offered for a first degree of this University. (See Guide to Study)

- (b) The Associate Dean may exempt from Part 1 a student who has
- (i) completed a New Zealand Certificate or National Diploma as specified in the Schedule to the Credit Transfer Statute; or
  - (ii) completed a relevant New Zealand degree or diploma or equivalent; or
  - (iii) passed at least 126 points in a course of study other than that prescribed for First Year Building Science; or
  - (iv) passed the equivalent of Part 1 at another New Zealand tertiary institution; or

- (v) produced evidence of extensive practical, professional and/or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.
- (c) In exceptional circumstances, the Head of School may award a pass in Part 1 as a whole to a candidate who has failed one or more of the required courses if the overall performance is considered to be of a sufficiently high standard.
- 3. (a) After completing Part 1, students will be ranked on academic performance in required First Year courses for entry into Second Year. Part 2 shall normally consist of two years of full-time study as follows:

**Second Year**

BBSC 231, 241 and 251, and at least 56 points from courses numbered 100-299, including at least 20 points at 200-level, from the schedules of the BArch, BBS or BDes degrees or, with approval, of any first degree of this University.

**Third Year**

BBSC 331, 341, 351 and at least 60 points normally chosen from courses numbered 200-399, including at least 20 points at 300 level, from the schedules of the BArch, BBS or BDes degrees or, with approval, of any first degree of this University.

- (b) Each personal course of study shall include
  - (i) at least 40 points from approved courses, including one at 300 level, in one of the following areas: environmental science, digital craft, management or construction technology; and
  - (ii) an approved Design course worth at least 18 points or an approved equivalent offered at this or another university.
- (c) A candidate shall normally complete Second Year Building Science before being admitted to Third Year, except that a candidate who fails to pass all the Second Year courses may be permitted by the Associate Dean to enrol simultaneously in the courses required to complete that Year and in Third Year courses.
- (d) In exceptional circumstances the Associate Dean may exempt a candidate from compulsory Part 2 courses, with or without credit.

**Cross-credits**

- 4. At the discretion of the Associate Dean,
  - (a) a candidate completing a BBS degree combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;
  - (b) a candidate completing a BBS degree combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the BBS and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 1-3 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Schedule to the BBSc Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
BBSC 201	Communication	20	X ARCH 201
BBSC 231	Environmental Science	20	P ARCH 181 or 18 approved MATH or PHYS pts
BBSC 241	Construction	20	X ARCH 241
BBSC 244	Building Cost Planning	20	P BBSC 241 or ARCH 241; X ARCH 244
BBSC 245	Fire Safety Design	20	P BBSC 241 or ARCH 241 or ITDN 241; X ARCH 245, ARCH 382 in 2001, ARCH 282 in 2002-04
BBSC 251	Structures	20	X ARCH 251
BBSC 261	Building Economics	20	X ARCH 261
BBSC 271	History of Building Technology	20	P ARCH 171 or 172 or 181
BBSC 281	Special Topic	20	
BBSC 282	Special Topic	20	
BBSC 301	Communication in Practice	20	P BBSC 201 or ARCH 201; X ARCH 301
BBSC 303	Computer Applications	20	P BBSC 241 or ARCH 241; X ARCH 303
BBSC 321	Building Performance	20	P BBSC 331 or ARCH 431, 451; C (BBSc students only) BBSC 341; X ARCH 321
BBSC 331	Environmental Science	20	P BBSC 231
BBSC 332	Environmental Control	20	P BBSC 331 or ARCH 312; X ARCH 332
BBSC 341	Construction	20	P BBSC 241 or ARCH 241; X ARCH 341
BBSC 343	Construction Studies	20	P BBSC 341 or ARCH 341; X ARCH 343
BBSC 351	Structures	20	P BBSC 251 or ARCH 251; X ARCH 351
BBSC 352	Structural systems	20	P BBSC 351 or ARCH 351; X ARCH 352
BBSC 363	Management Principles and Practice	20	P 60 200-level ARCH, BBSC or DESN pts; X ARCH 363
BBSC 381	Special Topic	20	
BBSC 382	Special Topic	20	
BBSC 389	Independent Study	20	P 40 200-level BBSC points

## BBSc(Hons)

### Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Building Science with Honours

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

- Before enrolment, a candidate for the BBSc(Hons) degree shall have
  - completed a BBSc degree; and
  - produced evidence of adequate performance and practical preparation to the satisfaction of the Head of the School of Architecture and been accepted as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.

**General Requirements**

2. A candidate for this degree shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters.
3. The course of study for the BBSc(Hons) shall consist of four 400-level BBSC courses with such substitutions as may be approved under section 4 of this statute. The amount of practical work shall be as determined by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Architecture and Design.

**Substitution of Courses**

4. With the approval of the Head of School, a candidate may replace up to two courses with substitutes from those prescribed for BA(Hons), BCA(Hons), BSc(Hons) or LL.M. (See Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses.)

**Award of Honours**

5. A candidate shall become eligible for the award of Honours by completing the requirements for the degree within two years of first enrolment for it. (See sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions covering the award of Honours.)

**Schedule to the BBSc(Hons) Statute**

Course	Title	Pts
BBSC 401	Research Method	30
BBSC 402	Building Studies	30
BBSC 403	Numerical Methods in Building Technology	30
BBSC 431	Lighting of Buildings	30
BBSC 432	Buildings and Energy	30
BBSC 433	Architectural Aerodynamics	30
BBSC 441	Advanced Construction Studies	30
BBSC 442	Building Materials Performance	30
BBSC 443	People, Fire and Buildings	30
BBSC 451	Structural Design Forms	30
BBSC 452	Building Response to Earthquake and Wind	30
BBSC 481	Special Topic	30

**MBSc****Statute for the Degree of Master of Building Science**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. Before enrolment, a candidate for the MBSc degree shall have
  - (a) (i) completed a BBSc or BBSc(Hons); and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the School of Architecture as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.

- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived if the candidate has produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Architecture and Design of extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.
2. A candidate who is enrolled in a course of study for BBSc(Hons) but has not yet been awarded that degree may transfer to the MBSc at any date before the first day of October in the year in which the candidate would otherwise have been examined for BBSc(Hons). Such candidates shall be deemed to have commenced the MBSc on the date of their first enrolment for the BBSc(Hons).

### General Requirements

3. (a) Except as provided in part (d), the course of study for the MBSc degree shall consist of courses worth at least 240 points, including
- Part 1:** Courses as prescribed in section 3 of the BBSc(Hons) statute.
- Part 2:** A Master's thesis (BBSC 591), with up to two additional courses if required by the Head of School. (Examinations in such courses may be required by the Head of School, in which case the value of the course(s) shall not exceed 40% of the total.)
- The amount of practical work shall be as determined by the Head of School.
- (b) Part 1 should normally be completed before a candidate proceeds to Part 2. Except with the permission of the Head of School, no candidate will be permitted to proceed from Part 1 to Part 2 unless the course work for Part 1 is at least at B level.
- (c) For a course of study including both parts the Head of School shall determine the division of marks. However, each part shall contribute at least 40% of the total.
- (d) A candidate admitted under section 1(b) or who has completed a BBSc(Hons) may be admitted directly to Part 2 by the Head of School.
- (e) The course of study for Part 2 of the degree may, with the approval of the Associate Dean, be carried out in part at an approved institution outside this University.
4. (a) A full-time candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least five trimesters if Part 1 is included.
- (b) A candidate may spread the work for Part 1 over more than one year. In such a case the candidate shall nominate in which end-of-year examination period each Part 1 course will be examined. A candidate wishing to retain eligibility for Honours shall be examined for all Part 1 courses in one end-of-year examination period.
- (c) A full-time candidate shall be enrolled for Part 2 for at least three trimesters and a part-time candidate for at least six trimesters.
- (d) A full-time candidate shall normally present the thesis within two years and six months of first enrolment in Part 1 or within one year and six months of first enrolment in Part 2. A part-time candidate shall normally present the thesis within three years and six months of first enrolment for Part 1 or within two years and six months of first enrolment in Part 2. The Associate Dean may extend these maximum periods in special cases

**Substitution of Courses**

5. With the approval of the Head of School, a candidate may replace up to two Part 1 courses with courses prescribed for BArch, BCA(Hons), BSc(Hons), BA(Hons), MA, LLM or MSc. (See Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses.)

**Award of Honours, Distinction or Merit**

6. (a) The MBSc may be awarded with Honours as described in sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute. To be eligible, a candidate shall be examined for all Part 1 courses in one end-of-year examination period and shall complete Parts 1 and 2 within two years and six months of first enrolment for the degree. This period may at any time be extended by the Associate Dean if it is clearly necessary because of circumstances beyond the control of the candidate.
- (b) A candidate admitted directly to Part 2, or who has completed both parts but is not eligible for Honours, may be awarded the MBSc with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**GCertBM and GDipBM****Statute for the Graduate Certificate of Building Management and the Graduate Diploma of Building Management**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipBM shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in a building-related field, or completed the GCertBM with at least a B average; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Programme Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Research) of the Faculty of Architecture and Design for a candidate who has industry training and related practical or professional experience of an appropriate kind.
2. Before enrolment, a candidate for the GCertBM shall have
  - (a) (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in a building-related field; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Programme Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean for a candidate who has
  - (i) completed an approved certificate or gained industry training in a building-related field; and

- (ii) had at least three years of practical experience in a building-related field at a level acceptable to the Programme Director.

### General Requirements

3. (a) Except as provided in (b) and (c) and in section 7, the course of study for the GDipBM shall comprise
- Part 1**
- (i) GCPM 801, GDPM 811; and
- (ii) two courses from (GCPM 802-804, GDPM 812-817).
- Part 2**
- (i) GDPM 821 or GDFM 822; and
- (ii) three further courses from the schedule to this statute.
- (b) Part 1 should normally be completed before a candidate proceeds to Part 2. However, with the permission of the Programme Director a candidate may omit Part 1 and be admitted directly to Part 2.
- (c) With the approval of the Programme Director, a candidate for the diploma may transfer credit for not more than four courses in Parts 1 and 2 that have been passed for another qualification.
4. The course of study for the GCertBM shall comprise Part 1 of the course of study for the diploma.
5. A candidate for the diploma shall complete the requirements of the diploma within five years of first enrolling in the certificate or the diploma. The Graduate Building Management Board of Studies may extend this maximum period in special cases.
6. A candidate who has completed Part 1 of the diploma but does not complete Part 2 may be awarded a GCertBM. A candidate who holds the certificate shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the diploma.

### Substitution of Courses

7. With the approval of the Programme Director, a candidate for the diploma or certificate may replace up to four optional courses in Parts 1 or 2 with substitute courses at an equivalent or higher level offered at this University or at another degree-granting institution in New Zealand or overseas. The Programme Director shall ensure that such substitutions are relevant and complementary to the other courses taken by the candidate.

### Schedule to the GCertBM/GDipBM Statute

Course	Title	Pts
GCPM 801	Management Practices in the Construction Industry	15
GCPM 802	Construction Industry Financial Management	15
GCPM 803	Building Cost Planning	15
GCPM 804	Special Topic	15
GDPM 811	Construction Industry Human Resources	15
GDFM 812	Built Facility Management	15
GDPM 813	Construction Project Planning	15

**Schedule to the GCertBM/GDipBM Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts
GDPM 814	Construction Contract Law	15
GDFM 815	Building Project Evaluation	15
GDFM 816	Building Performance Assessment	15
GDPM 817	Special Topic	15
GDPM 821	Investigation Project or Case Study in Building Management	15
GDFM 822	Investigation Project or Case Study in Facility Management	15
GDPM 823	Project Evaluation and Monitoring	15
GDPM 824	Special Topic	15
GDFM 825	Special Topic	15

**BDes****Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Design**

*Note: The degree requirements for 2006 differ from previous years. Information on how this affects individual students is available from the Faculty Office.*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**General Requirements**

1. (a) The personal course of study of a candidate for the BDes degree shall, except as provided in section 5 below, consist of courses worth at least 480 points, including

**Part 1:** First Year Design

**Part 2:** Second, Third and Fourth Year in one of the professional disciplines offered (Digital Media Design, Industrial Design, Interior Architecture and Landscape Architecture).

Each candidate shall complete to the satisfaction of the Head of the School of Design such practical work as may be prescribed.

*Note: Practical work means work carried out in timetabled class hours in a laboratory, workshop or studio. With the permission of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Architecture and Design, this may be replaced or supplemented by field work and excursions.*

- (b) A candidate shall normally complete Part 1 before being admitted to Part 2.

**Part 1: First Year**

2. (a) Part 1 (First Year Design) shall consist of a minimum of 126 points in the following courses or their approved equivalents:
  - (i) DESN 101, 104, 111, 112, 141, 171;
  - (ii) 18 points from DESN 100-level courses or other approved electives\*.

\* Students specialising in Landscape Architecture must include GEOG 111 (or an approved substitute) in either First or Second Year.

- (b) A candidate who has successfully completed at least 126 points in a personal course of study other than that prescribed above for Part 1 may, at the discretion of the Associate Dean, be exempted from Part 1 and admitted to Second Year Design.

**Part 2: Second, Third and Fourth Year**

3. (a) After completing Part 1, candidates will be ranked on their academic performance in the required First Year Design courses for entry into Part 2 in one of the four professional disciplines currently offered.
- (b) The Associate Dean may admit to Part 2 a candidate who has produced satisfactory evidence of extensive practical, professional and/or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind. Candidates admitted under this paragraph shall follow an approved personal course of study for at least three years to qualify for the award of the BDes.
- (c) Candidates accepted into Second Year Design who have not complied with the Part 1 requirements may be required to enrol in selected Part 1 courses simultaneously with Second Year courses.
- (d) At the discretion of the Associate Dean, a candidate who has failed one Part 1 course may be permitted to enter Part 2, on condition that the course or an approved equivalent is successfully completed during Second Year Design. The candidate may not enrol in any course for which the failed course is a prerequisite.
4. (a) Part 2 in each professional discipline shall normally consist of a three-year programme of full-time study as follows:

**Part 2: Digital Media Design**

*Second Year Design*

- (i) DMDN 201, 211, 212, 271  
 (ii) at least 36 further points from DESN or DMDN 100-299 or approved electives

*Third Year Design*

- (i) DMDN 311, 312, 371, 389  
 (ii) at least 40 further points from DESN or DMDN 200-399 or approved electives

*Fourth Year Design*

- (i) DMDN 411, 412, 461  
 (ii) at least 40 further points from DESN or DMDN 200-499 or approved electives

**Part 2: Industrial Design**

*Second Year Design*

- (i) IDDN 201, 211, 212, 232, 271;  
 (ii) at least 18 further points from DESN or IDDN 100-299 or approved electives.

*Third Year Design*

- (i) IDDN 311, 312, 341, 371, 389;  
 (ii) at least 20 further points from DESN or IDDN 200-399 or approved electives.

*Fourth Year Design*

- (i) IDDN 411, 412, 461;
- (ii) at least 40 further points from DESN or IDDN 200-499 or approved electives.

**Part 2: Interior Architecture***Second Year Design*

ITDN 201, 211, 212, 232, 241, 271;

*Third Year Design*

- (i) ITDN 311, 312, 341, 371, 389;
- (ii) at least 20 further points from DESN or ITDN 200-399 or approved electives.

*Fourth Year Design*

- (i) ITDN 411, 412, 461;
- (ii) at least 40 further points from DESN or ITDN 200-499 or approved electives.

**Part 2: Landscape Architecture***Second Year Design*

- (i) LADN 201, 211, 212, 232, 271;
- (ii) at least 18 further points from DESN or LADN 100-299 or approved electives.

*Third Year Design*

- (i) LADN 311, 312, 341, 361, 371, 389;

*Fourth Year Design*

- (i) LADN 411, 412, 461;
- (ii) at least 40 further points from DESN or LADN 200-499 or approved electives.

- (b) At the discretion of the Associate Dean, a candidate who fails to pass all the courses of a Part 2 Year may be permitted to enrol in the courses required to complete that Year and in courses for the following Year.

**Substitution of Courses**

5. With the approval of the Head of School, courses completed for a design-related qualification in another tertiary institution may be substituted for courses required for the BDes, following presentation of evidence that the other qualification has been abandoned.

**Cross-crediting**

6. At the discretion of the Associate Dean,
  - (a) a candidate completing a BDes degree combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;
  - (b) a candidate completing a BDes degree combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the BDes and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 1-4 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Award of Honours

7. The BDes may be awarded with Honours as described in Sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Course of Study Statute.
- To be eligible for the award of Honours, a candidate shall normally have completed the Third and Fourth Years in no more than three consecutive years.
  - Honours shall not normally be awarded if a candidate's performance in a compulsory Third or Fourth Year course is unsatisfactory at first attempt.

### Schedule to the BDes Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
DESN 101	Drawing and Modelling Fundamentals	18	
DESN 103	Life Drawing for Designers	18	
DESN 104	Introduction to Computers for Designers	18	
DESN 111	3D Ideas & Practices of Design	18	
DESN 112	3D Ideas and Practices of Design	18	P DESN 111; X DESN 113
DESN 114	Photography and Digital Imaging	18	
DESN 141	Design Technologies, Materials and Processes	18	X DESN 131
DESN 170	Māori Art and Contemporary Māori Design	18	
DESN 171	History and Theory of Design	18	
DESN 172	Māori Design Conventions and Social History	18	
DESN 203	Life Drawing for Designers	20	P DESN 103
DESN 204	Drawing for Design	20	P DESN 101 or C ARCH 211
DESN 205	Digital Design 3D Form and Space	20	P DESN 104; DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112
DESN 211	Contemporary Māori Art and Design	20	P DESN 170
DESN 231	Designing with Photography	20	P DESN 114; DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112
DESN 235	Time Based Media	20	P DESN 104
DESN 236	Moving Image for Design	20	P DESN 104 or 112 (or 113) or C ARCH 211
DESN 271	History and Theory of Design	20	P DESN 171 or ANTH 101 or ARTH 111 or 112 or ARCH 171 or 172; X DESN 171 in 1997-99
DESN 272	New Zealand Design History	20	P DESN 171 or 172 or ARCH 171 or 172
DESN 273	Artefacts and Ritual in Design	20	P DESN 171 or ARCH 171 or 172 or ANTH 101
DESN 303	Life Drawing for Design	20	P DESN 203
DESN 305	Drawing for Design	20	P DESN 203 or IDDN/ITDN/LADN/ARCH 201
DESN 311	Contemporary Māori Art & Design	20	P DESN 211
DESN 333	Ergonomics	20	P DESN 233
DESN 334	Time Based Media	20	P DESN 235
DESN 335	Time Based Media	20	P DESN 334

**Schedule to the BDes Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
DESN 336	Moving Image for Design	20	P DESN 236
DESN 337	Moving Image for Design	20	P DESN 336
DESN 381	Independent Study	20	P 40 200-level DESN pts
DESN 382	Independent Study	20	P 40 200-level DESN pts
DESN 383	Special Topic	20	
DESN 384	Special Topic	20	
DESN 385	Special Topic	20	
DESN 386	Special Topic	20	
DESN 387	Special Topic	20	
DESN 388	Special Topic	20	
DESN 391	International Design Studio	40	P ARCH 312 or IDDN 312 or ITDN 312 or LADN 312 or permission of course coordinator
DMDN 201	Dynamic Web Design	20	C DMDN 211 or ARCH 211
DMDN 206	Design and the Internet	20	P DESN 104; DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112; X DESN 206
DMDN 211	Digital Media Design	20	P DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112
DMDN 212	Digital Media Design	20	P DMDN 211
DMDN 271	History of Digital Media Design	20	P DESN 171 or ARCH 171 or 172
DMDN 304	Computer Aided Design	20	P DESN 104; DMDN/IDDN/ITDN/LADN/ARCH 212; X DESN 304
DMDN 305	Design and Real Time Interactive Media	20	P DMDN/IDDN/ITDN/LADN/ARCH 212
DMDN 311	Digital Media Design	20	P DMDN 212
DMDN 312	Digital Media Design	20	P DMDN 311
DMDN 371	Digital Media Design Theory and Criticism	20	P DMDN 271
DMDN 389	Digital Media Design Research	20	P 40 200-level DMDN pts; C 20 300-level DMDN pts
DMDN 411	Digital Media Design Research	20	P DMDN 312
DMDN 412	Digital Media Design Research	40	P DMDN 411
DMDN 461	Professional Practice for Digital Media Design	20	C DMDN 411
DMDN 489	Digital Media Design Research	20	P DMDN 389
IDDN 201	Drawing and Modelling for Industrial Design	20	C IDDN 211 or ARCH 211
IDDN 211	Industrial Design	20	P DESN 112 (or 113) or C ARCH 211
IDDN 212	Industrial Design	20	P IDDN 211
IDDN 213	Product Design	20	P DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112; X DESN 212
IDDN 232	Ergonomics	20	P DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112; X DESN 233
IDDN 271	History of Industrial Design	20	P DESN 171 or ARCH 171 or 172
IDDN 311	Industrial Design	20	P IDDN 212
IDDN 312	Industrial Design	20	P IDDN 311

**Schedule to the BDes Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
IDDN 313	Product Design	20	P IDDN 213 or DESN 212; X DESN 312
IDDN 314	Whiteware Design	20	P IDDN 311; X IDDN 312 in 1997-99
IDDN 317	Industrial Design Visiting Designer's Studio	20	P IDDN 212 or ARCH 212
IDDN 318	Industrial Design Visiting Designer's Studio	20	P IDDN 212 or ARCH 212
IDDN 332	Ergonomics, Culture, Context and Society	20	P IDDN 232 or DESN 233
IDDN 341	Production Materials and Processes	20	P IDDN 212, 232 or DESN 233; X IDDN 331
IDDN 362	Industrial Design and National Resource Development	20	P 40 200-level IDDN pts
IDDN 371	Industrial Design Theory and Criticism	20	P IDDN 271
IDDN 381	Independent Study	20	P 40 200-level IDDN pts
IDDN 382	Independent Study	20	P 40 200-level IDDN pts
IDDN 383	Special Topic	20	
IDDN 384	Special Topic	20	
IDDN 389	Design Research	20	P 40 200-level IDDN pts; C 20 300-level IDDN pts
IDDN 411	Industrial Design	20	P IDDN 312; X 413, 415
IDDN 412	Industrial Design	40	P IDDN 389, 411 (or 413); X IDDN 414
IDDN 415	Industrial Design	24	P IDDN 489
IDDN 461	Professional Practice for Industrial Designers	20	C IDDN 411 (or 413) or 415
IDDN 485	Design Thesis	60	P IDDN 415
IDDN 489	Design Research	24	P IDDN 389
ITDN 201	Drawing and Modelling for Interior Architecture	20	P DESN 101 (or ARCH 101), DESN 104 (or ARCH 102), DESN 112 (or ARCH 112)
ITDN 211	Interior Architecture	20	P DESN 112 (or 113) or C ARCH 211
ITDN 212	Interior Architecture	20	P ITDN 211
ITDN 214	Exhibition Design, Construction & Technologies	20	P DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112; X DESN 214
ITDN 215	Furniture Design, Construction & Technologies	20	P DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112; X DESN 215
ITDN 232	Service Technologies for Interior Architecture	20	C ITDN 212; X ITDN 231 or 234
ITDN 241	Interior Architecture Materials, Construction and Structures	20	P DESN 112 (or ARCH 112), DESN 131 (or ARCH 181)
ITDN 271	History of Interior Architecture	20	P DESN 171 or ARCH 171 or 172
ITDN 311	Interior Architecture	20	P ITDN 212
ITDN 312	Interior Architecture	20	P ITDN 311
ITDN 314	Exhibition Design, Construction & Technologies	20	P ITDN 214 or DESN 214; X DESN 314
ITDN 315	Furniture Design, Construction & Technologies	20	P ITDN 215 or DESN 215; X DESN 315
ITDN 317	Interior Architecture Visiting Designer's Studio	20	P ITDN 212 or ARCH 212

## Schedule to the BDes Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ITDN 318	Interior Architecture Visiting Designer's Studio	20	P ITDN 212 or ARCH 212
ITDN 332	Interior Architecture Colour & Lighting Technologies	20	P ITDN 211 or IDDN 211 or LADN 211 or ARCH 211; X DESN 234
ITDN 341	Material Processes and Construction	20	P ITDN 212, 241; X ITDN 331
ITDN 361	Management Principles and Practice	20	P 60 200-level ITDN or ARCH pts
ITDN 371	Interior Architecture Theory and Criticism	20	P ITDN 271
ITDN 373	Interiors and Building Conservation	20	P 40 200-level IDDN or ITDN or ARCH pts
ITDN 381	Independent Study	20	P 40 200-level ITDN pts
ITDN 382	Independent Study	20	P 40 200-level ITDN pts
ITDN 383	Special Topic	20	
ITDN 384	Special Topic	20	
ITDN 389	Design Research	20	P 40 200-level pts; C 20 300-level pts
ITDN 411	Interior Architecture	20	P ITDN 312; X ITDN 413, 415
ITDN 412	Interior Architecture	40	P ITDN 389, 411 (or 413); X ITDN 414
ITDN 415	Interior Architecture	24	P ITDN 489
ITDN 461	Professional Practice for Interior Architects	20	C ITDN 411 or 415 (or 413)
ITDN 485	Design Thesis	60	P ITDN 415
ITDN 489	Design Research	24	P ITDN 389
LADN 201	Drawing and Modelling for Landscape Architecture	20	C LADN 211 or ARCH 211
LADN 211	Landscape Architecture Design	20	P DESN 112 (or 113) or C ARCH 211
LADN 212	Landscape Architecture Design	20	P LADN 211
LADN 213	Land Art Design and Construction	20	C LADN 211 or IDDN 211 or ITDN 211 or ARCH 211; X DESN 217
LADN 216	Urban Furniture Design, Construction & Technologies	20	P DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112; X DESN 216
LADN 232	Planting Technologies & Construction for Landscape Architecture	20	P LADN 211 or IDDN 211 or ITDN 211 or ARCH 211; X LADN 231
LADN 233	Landscape Architecture Analysis	20	P (DESN 104 or ARCH 102), DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112; X DESN 237
LADN 271	History and Theory of Landscape Architecture	20	P DESN 171 or ARCH 171 or 172
LADN 273	Landscape Architecture Cultural Landscapes	20	P DESN 171 or ARCH 171 or 172; X DESN 274
LADN 311	Landscape Architecture Design	20	P LADN 212
LADN 312	Landscape Architecture Design	20	P LADN 311
LADN 313	Design and Construction of Communities	20	P LADN 212 or ARCH 212; X DESN 317
LADN 317	Landscape Architecture Visiting Designer's Studio	20	P LADN 212 or ITDN 212 or ARCH 212
LADN 318	Landscape Architecture Visiting Designer's Studio	20	P LADN 212 or ITDN 212 or ARCH 212
LADN 332	Landscape Architecture Ecologies and Technologies	20	P LADN 212 or ARCH 212 or ARCH 222; X DESN 316
LADN 341	Urban Landscape Construction	20	P LADN 232 or 231; X DESN 241

**Schedule to the BDes Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
LADN 361	Landscape Assessment, Management and Legislation	20	P LADN 212, 271; X LADN 334, 363
LADN 371	Landscape Architecture Theory and Criticism	20	P LADN 271
LADN 381	Independent Study	20	P 40 200-level LADN pts
LADN 382	Independent Study	20	P 40 200-level LADN pts
LADN 383	Special Topic	20	
LADN 384	Special Topic	20	
LADN 389	Design Research	20	P 40 200-level LADN pts; C 20 300-level LADN pts
LADN 411	Landscape Architecture Design	20	P LADN 312; X LADN 413, 415
LADN 412	Landscape Architecture Design	40	P LADN 389, 411 (or 413); X 414
LADN 415	Landscape Architecture Design	24	P LADN 489
LADN 461	Professional Practice for Landscape Architects	20	C LADN 411 or 415 (or 413)
LADN 485	Design Thesis	60	P LADN 415
LADN 489	Design Research	24	P LADN 389

**BDes(Hons)****Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Design with Honours**

*Note: No new students will be accepted into this degree from 2006. For information on transition arrangements please contact the Faculty Office.*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**General Requirements**

1. (a) Admission to the BDes(Hons) degree shall be by approval of the Head of the School of Design following consultation with academic staff teaching in the BDes. Candidates are normally selected on the basis of academic performance in the Second Year of the BDes or an equivalent course of study.
- (b) In exceptional cases candidates may be considered for transfer to BDes(Hons) on the basis of academic performance in the Third Year of the BDes.
2. (a) The course of study for the BDes(Hons) degree shall consist of courses worth at least 490 points, including
  - Part 1:** First Year Design as prescribed in section 2 of the BDes statute;
  - Part 2:** Second Year Design as prescribed in section 4 of the BDes statute and Third and Fourth Year Honours as specified in section 3 below for one of the professional disciplines offered (Industrial Design, Interior Architecture and Landscape Architecture).

Each candidate shall complete to the satisfaction of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Architecture and Design such practical work as may be prescribed.

*Note: Practical work means work carried out in timetabled class hours in a laboratory, workshop or studio. With the permission of the Associate Dean, this may be replaced or supplemented by field work and excursions.*

3. (a) The Third and Fourth Honours Years shall include courses as follows:

**Industrial Design**

*Third Year Honours Industrial Design*

- (i) IDDN 311, 312, 341, 371, 489;  
 (ii) at least 20 points from DESN or IDDN 200-399 or approved electives.

*Fourth Year Honours Industrial Design*

- (i) IDDN 415, 461, 485;  
 (ii) at least 20 points from DESN or IDDN 200-499 or approved electives.

**Interior Architecture**

*Third Year Honours Interior Architecture*

- (i) ITDN 311, 312, 341, 371, 489;  
 (ii) at least 20 points from DESN or ITDN 200-499 or approved electives.

*Fourth Year Honours Interior Architecture*

- (i) ITDN 415, 461, 485;  
 (ii) at least 20 points from DESN or ITDN 200-499 or approved electives.

**Landscape Architecture**

*Third Year Honours Landscape Architecture*

LADN 311, 312, 341, 361, 371, 489;

*Fourth Year Honours Landscape Architecture*

- (i) LADN 415, 461, 485;  
 (ii) at least 20 points from DESN or LADN 200-499 or approved electives.

**Award of Honours**

4. (a) A candidate shall become eligible for the award of Honours by completing the final two years of the BDes(Hons) programme within three years.  
 (b) The Board of Examiners shall determine the class of Honours to be awarded in each case by taking into account the candidate's standard of performance in the courses prescribed for Third and Fourth Year Honours.

**Cross-crediting**

5. At the discretion of the Associate Dean,  
 (a) a candidate completing a BDes(Hons) degree combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;  
 (b) a candidate completing a BDes(Hons) degree combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the BDes(Hons) and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 1-3 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Schedule to the BDes(Hons) Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Corequisites (C)
IDDN 415	Industrial Design	24	P IDDN 489
IDDN 485	Design Thesis	60	P IDDN 415
IDDN 489	Design Research	24	C IDDN 311, 331
ITDN 415	Interior Architecture	24	P ITDN 489
ITDN 485	Design Thesis	60	P ITDN 415
ITDN 489	Design Research	24	C ITDN 311, 341 (or 331)
LADN 415	Landscape Architecture Design	24	P LADN 489
LADN 485	Design Research	60	P LADN 415
LADN 489	Design Research	24	C LADN 311, 363 (or 334)

## MDes

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Design

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MDes degree shall have
  - (i) completed a BDes or BDes(Hons) degree or, at the discretion of the Head of the School of Design, a design diploma; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Research) of the Faculty of Architecture and Design for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) A candidate shall present a thesis (DESN 591) as specified in section 18 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute or a design composition (DESN 592) as specified in the Assessment Handbook.
- (b) The course of study may, with the approval of the Associate Dean, be carried out in part at an approved institution outside this University.
3. (a) A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least three trimesters in the case of a full-time student, or six trimesters in the case of a part-time student.
- (b) The thesis or design composition shall be presented within three years of the candidate's first enrolment for the degree.

#### Award of Distinction or Merit

4. The MDes may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

## GDipDes

### Statute for the Graduate Diploma in Design

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipDes shall have
  - (i) completed a BDes, BDes(Hons) or BArch degree; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the School of Design as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Head of School for a candidate who
  - (i) has completed any other Bachelor degree and has sufficient training and ability to proceed with the proposed course of study; or
  - (ii) has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. The course of study for the GDipDes shall consist of courses worth at least 240 points satisfying the requirements for one of the professional disciplines as described below:

##### Digital Media Design

###### Year 1

- (a) DMDN 811, 812, 871
- (b) at least 60 further points in approved electives at 200 level or above from the BDes schedule

###### Year 2

- (a) DMDN 813, 814, 861
- (b) at least 60 further points in approved electives at 300 level or above from the BDes schedule

##### Industrial Design

###### Year 1

- (a) IDDN 811, 812, 841, 871;
- (b) at least 40 further points in approved electives at 200 level or above from the BDes or BDes(Hons) schedules.

###### Year 2

- (a) IDDN 813, 814, 861;
- (b) at least 60 further points in approved electives at 300 level or above from the BDes or BDes(Hons) schedules.

##### Interior Architecture

###### Year 1

- (a) ITDN 811, 812, 841, 871;
- (b) at least 40 further points in approved electives at 200 level or above from the BDes or BDes(Hons) schedules.

*Year 2*

- (a) ITDN 813, 814, 861;  
 (b) at least 60 further points in approved electives at 300 level or above from the BDes or BDes(Hons) schedules.

**Landscape Architecture***Year 1*

- (a) LADN 811, 812, 862, 871;  
 (b) at least 40 further points in approved electives at 200 level or above from the BDes or BDes(Hons) schedules.

*Year 2*

- (a) LADN 813, 814, 861;  
 (b) at least 60 further points in approved electives at 300 level or above from the BDes or BDes(Hons) schedules.

3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled full-time for at least four trimesters (or the equivalent part-time) and shall complete the requirements of the diploma within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Architecture and Design may extend this maximum period in special cases.

**Schedule to the GDipDes Statute**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
DMDN 811	Digital Media Design	20	P IDDN/ITDN/LADN 212; X DMDN 311
DMDN 812	Digital Media Design	20	P DMDN 811; X DMDN 312
DMDN 813	Digital Media Design Research	20	P DMDN 812; X DMDN 411
DMDN 814	Digital Media Design Research	20	P DMDN 813; X DMDN 412
DMDN 861	Professional Practice for Digital Media Design	20	C DMDN 813; X DMDN 461
DMDN 871	Digital Media Design Theory and Criticism	20	P IDDN/ITDN/LADN 271; X DMDN 371
IDDN 811	Industrial Design	20	P ITDN/LADN 212; X IDDN 311
IDDN 812	Industrial Design	20	P IDDN 811; X IDDN 312
IDDN 813	Industrial Design	20	P IDDN 812; X IDDN 411, 413
IDDN 814	Industrial Design	20	P IDDN 813; X IDDN 412, 414
IDDN 841	Production Materials and Processes	20	P ITDN 232 (or 231, 234), or LADN 232 or 231; X IDDN 331, 341, 831
IDDN 861	Professional Practice for Industrial Design	20	C IDDN 813; X IDDN 461
IDDN 871	Industrial Design Theory and Criticism	20	P ITDN/LADN 271; X IDDN 371
ITDN 811	Interior Architecture	20	P IDDN/LADN 212; X ITDN 311
ITDN 812	Interior Architecture	20	P ITDN 811; X ITDN 312
ITDN 813	Interior Architecture	20	P ITDN 812; X ITDN 411, 413
ITDN 814	Interior Architecture	20	P ITDN 813; X ITDN 412, 414
ITDN 841	Material Processes and Construction	20	P IDDN 232 or DESN 233 or LADN 232 or 231; X ITDN 331, 341, 342, 831
ITDN 861	Professional Practice for Interior Architects	20	C ITDN 813; X ITDN 461

**Schedule to the GDipDes Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ITDN 871	Interior Architecture Theory and Criticism	20	P IDDN/LADN 271; X ITDN 371
LADN 811	Landscape Architecture Design	20	P IDDN/ITDN 212; X LADN 311
LADN 812	Landscape Architecture Design	20	P LADN 811; X LADN 312
LADN 813	Landscape Architecture Design	20	P LADN 812; X LADN 411, 413
LADN 814	Landscape Architecture Design	20	P LADN 813; X LADN 412, 414
LADN 861	Professional Practice for Landscape Architects	20	C LADN 813; X LADN 461
LADN 862	Landscape Assessment, Management and Legislation	20	P IDDN/ITDN 212, 271; X LADN 361,363, 334, 834

## Faculty of Commerce and Administration

### BCA

#### Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce and Administration

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### General Requirements

1. (a) The personal course of study of a candidate for the BCA degree shall, except as provided in section 3 below and the Credit Transfer Statute, consist of courses from the BCA schedule and the schedules of any other first degree of this University. The total points value shall be at least 360, of which
  - (i) at least 180 points shall be for courses numbered 200-399;
  - (ii) at least 204 points shall be selected from the BCA schedule; and
  - (iii) at least 72 points shall be numbered 300-399 (including 24 points in each of two subjects), with at least 48 of those selected from the BCA schedule.
- (b) Every personal course of study shall include
  - ACCY 111, ECON 130, FCOM 110,
 except that the ECON 130 requirement will be waived for a student who has passed ECON 110 and 120, or passed ECON 140.

#### Major Subject Requirements

2. A candidate shall satisfy the requirements for at least one major subject as listed below. No course numbered 300-399 may be counted towards more than one major subject.

##### Accounting

- (a) COML 203, ECON 140, QUAN 102;
- (b) two courses from INFO 101, MARK 101, MGMT 101, MOFI 201;
- (c) ACCY 223, 231 (or 221), 232; one course from ACCY 302, 303, 305, 308;
- (d) one further course from ACCY 300-399.

##### Commercial Law

- (a) COML 203\*; two courses from COML 300-399;
- (b) one further 200/300-level ACCY, COML, LAWS, MARK, MBUS, MGMT, MOFI or PUBL course.

\* A student exempted from COML 203 shall replace it with an additional course under (b).

##### e-Commerce

- (a) INFO 101, 102; ELCM 211, 251;
- (b) two courses from (ELCM 300-399, INFO 301);
- (c) one further course from (ELCM 300-399, INFO 221, MARK 306).

##### Econometrics

- (a) ECON 140, QUAN 102 (or STAT 131 or 193), QUAN 111 (or MATH 113, 114);

- (b) ECON 201 or 202; QUAN 201, 203 (or STAT 231);
- (c) QUAN 301; QUAN 303 or 304.

**Economics**

- (a) ECON 140, QUAN 102 (or STAT 131 or 193), QUAN 111 (or MATH 113, 114);
- (b) ECON 201, 202;
- (c) at least two courses from ECON 300-399 (one of those may be replaced by MOFI 303, QUAN 301 or an ECHI course numbered 300-399).

**Human Resource Management and Industrial Relations**

- (a) MGMT 101, HRIR 201, MGMT 202;
- (b) two courses from HRIR 300-399;
- (c) one further course from COML 302, ECON 333, HRIR 300-399.

**Information Systems**

- (a) INFO 101, 102, 201, 241;
- (b) two courses from INFO 300-399;
- (c) one further course from INFO 200-399.

**International Business**

- (a) IBUS 201, 202, 301, 305;
- (b) 18 100-level ASIA, CHIN, EURO, FREN, GERM, ITAL, JAPA, KORE, PASI or SPAN points; or ASIA 201, 202 or 203, or an approved substitute;
- (c) one course from ACCY 309, COML 306, ECON 309, INFO 301, HRIR 303, IBUS 308-311, MARK 302, MGMT 310, 311, 318.

**Management**

- (a) MGMT 101, 202, 205, 206;
- (b) two courses from MGMT 308-399 (one of those may be replaced by ECON 335 or PUBL 302 or HRIR 301).

**Management Science**

- (a) MGMT 101, QUAN 102 (or STAT 131 or 193), QUAN 111 (or MATH 113, 114);
- (b) MGMT 206 or OPRE 251;
- (c) MGMT 314, one of MGMT 312, 313, 315, 316;
- (d) OPRE 351 or 352.

**Māori Business**

- (a) MBUS 201, 202, 203;
- (b) MBUS 301, 302.

**Marketing**

- (a) MARK 101 (or 151), 202, 211 (or 261), 311; QUAN 102 (or STAT 131 or 193);
- (b) either (i) two further courses from MARK 300-399 or (ii) COML 308, one further course from MARK 300-399.

**Money and Finance**

- (a) ECON 140, QUAN 102 (or STAT 131 or 193), QUAN 111 (or MATH 113, 114);
- (b) MOFI 201, 202\*; one course from MOFI 300-399;
- (c) one further course from (MOFI 300-399, ACCY 306, ECON 305, 309 QUAN 304 or 371).

\* MOFI 202 may be dropped if three courses are included from (MOFI 300-399, QUAN 304).

**Public Policy**

- (a) POLS 111, QUAN 102 (or STAT 193 or SPOL 205);
- (b) PUBL 201, 202, 203, 306;
- (c) one further course from PUBL 300-399.

**Cross-crediting**

3. At the discretion of the Associate Dean (Undergraduate Students) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration,
  - (a) a candidate completing a BCA degree combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;
  - (b) a candidate completing a BCA degree combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the BCA and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 1 and 2 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Schedule to the BCA Statute**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C), Restrictions (X)
ACCY 001	Bookkeeping	0	
ACCY 111	Accounting	18	
ACCY 211	Accounting for Tourism	22	P ACCY 111
ACCY 221	Financial Accounting 1	22	P ACCY 111, ECON 130; C ACCY 001
ACCY 222	Financial Accounting 2	22	P ACCY 001, 221
ACCY 223	Management Accounting	22	P ACCY 111, ECON 130; C ACCY 001
ACCY 224	Māori Resource Management	22	P 18 MAOR language pts, one of ACCY 111, ECON 130, MAOR 123; X MAOR 215
ACCY 231	Financial Accounting	22	P ACCY 111; C ACCY 001; X ACCY 221, 222
ACCY 232	Auditing and Tax	22	P ACCY 001, 231 (or 221)
ACCY 302	Advanced Management Accounting	24	P ACCY 001, 223, QUAN 102
ACCY 303	Advanced Auditing	24	P ACCY 232 (or 222), COML 203
ACCY 305	Advanced Domestic Taxation	24	P ACCY 232 (or 222), COML 203 <i>Note: From 2008 the prerequisites for ACCY 303 and 305 will be "ACCY 232, COML 203"</i>
ACCY 306	Financial Statement Analysis	24	P ACCY 231 (or 221), MOFI 201
ACCY 307	Government Accounting and Finance	24	P 22 200-level ACCY pts
ACCY 308	Advanced Financial Accounting	24	P ACCY 001, 231 (or 221)
ACCY 309	International Accounting Topics	24	P 22 200-level ACCY pts
ACCY 314	Accounting and Society	24	P 22 200-level ACCY pts

**Schedule to the BCA Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C), Restrictions (X)
ACCY 315	Advanced Māori Resource Management	24	P ACCY 224 or MAOR 215
ACCY 316	Advanced International Taxation	24	P ACCY 305
ACCY 317	Accounting Information Systems	24	P 22 200-level ACCY pts, INFO 101
ACCY 320	Special Topic	24	
ACCY 321	Special Topic	24	
COML 111	Law for Business	18	
COML 203	Legal Environment of Business	22	P 18 pts; X LAWS 101, two of LAWS 121-123
COML 301	Law of Special Contracts	24	P COML 203 or 36 LAWS pts; X LAWS 350, LAWS 352 (1995 or after)
COML 302	Labour Law	24	P (COML 111, 22 200-level BCA pts) or COML 203 or 36 LAWS pts; X LAWS 355
COML 303	Law of Organisations	24	P COML 203 or 36 LAWS pts; X LAWS 360, 361
COML 304	Competition Law	24	P (COML 111, 22 200-level BCA pts) or COML 203 or 36 LAWS pts; ECON 130; X LAWS 356 (1995 or after)
COML 305	Law of Contractual Obligations	24	P COML 203 or 36 LAWS pts; X LAWS 211
COML 306	Law of International Business	24	P (COML 111, 22 200-level BCA pts) or COML 203 or 36 LAWS pts; X LAWS 354 (1995 or after)
COML 307	Legal Issues for e-Commerce	24	P (COML 111, 22 200-level BCA pts) or COML 203 or 36 LAWS pts
COML 308	Marketing Law	24	P (COML 111, 22 200-level BCA pts) or COML 203 or 36 LAWS pts
COML 309	Banking Law and Regulation in New Zealand	24	P (COML 111, 22 200-level BCA pts) or COML 203 or 36 LAWS pts; X COML 307 1996-2000; LAWS 352 (1995 or after)
COMM 101	Introduction to Communications and Information Management	18	X LIBR 101
COMM 201	Introduction to Communications	22	P COMM 101 or 54 pts
COMM 202	Interpersonal Communication	22	P LALS 202 or 54 pts; X LING 224
COMM 302	Technology and Communications	24	P 22 200-level COMM or MGMT pts
ECHI 303	Modern British Economic History	24	P 22 200-level ECHI, ECON or HIST pts
ECHI 305	Dynamic Organisational Structures in International Business	24	P 22 200-level ECHI, ECON, IBUS, HIST, HRIR, ACCY, MARK or MGMT pts; X IBUS 305
ECON 130	Economic Principles and Issues	18	X ECON 102, 113, (110 and 120)
ECON 140	Economics and Strategic Behaviour	18	P ECON 130; X any two of ECON 110, 120, 130 (or 113)
ECON 201	Microeconomics	22	P ECON 140 (or 110)
ECON 202	Macroeconomics	22	P ECON 140 (or 120)
ECON 204	Introduction to Asian Economic History	22	P 18 ECON, ASIA, HIST, CHIN, JAPA, GEOG or POLS pts; X ECHI 201, ASIA 206
ECON 205	The Development of the Modern International Economy	22	P 18 100-level ECON, HIST, GEOG or POLS pts; X ECHI 202, IBUS 202
ECON 224	Introduction to Public Economics	22	P ECON 130 (or 110 or 102); X PUBL 203

**Schedule to the BCA Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C), Restrictions (X)
ECON 305	Macroeconomics: Growth, Business Cycles and Sustainability	24	P ECON 202; QUAN 111 or (MATH 113, 114)
ECON 307	Public Sector Economics	24	P ECON 201 or PUBL 203; C ECON 201; X PUBL 303
ECON 309	International Economics	24	P ECON 201 or 202; QUAN 111 or (MATH 113, 114)
ECON 310	History of Economic Thought	24	P 22 200-level ECON or ECHI pts, 18 100-level ECON pts
ECON 314	Microeconomics: Information and Markets	24	P ECON 201; QUAN 111 or (MATH 113, 114)
ECON 328	Industry Structure and Business Strategy	24	P ECON 140 (or 110), 44 200-level pts
ECON 330	Law and Economics	24	P either ECON 140 (or 110) or COML 203; X LAWS 335
ECON 333	Economics of Work and Pay	24	P 18 100-level ECON pts; ECON 201 or HRIR 201 or INRC 202
ECON 334	Feminist Economics	24	P (18 100-level ECON pts, 22 200-level pts) or WISC 201; X WISC 304
ECON 335	Managerial Economics	24	P ECON 140 (or 110), 22 200-level ACCY, ECON or MOFI pts
ELCM 211	Foundations of e-Commerce	22	P INFO 101; X ELCM 201
ELCM 251	Introduction to Internet Design and Development	22	P INFO 102; X ELCM 202
ELCM 311	Advanced Topics in e-Commerce	24	P ELCM 211 (or 201); X ELCM 301
ELCM 320	Project in e-Commerce	24	P 22 200-level ELCM pts; X INFO 320, INFO 314 passed 1997-1999
ELCM 351	Advanced Internet Design and Development	24	P ELCM 251 (or 202); X ELCM 302
ELCM 353	Internet Development Environments	24	P ELCM 251; X ELCM 306
ELCM 381	Special Topic in e-Commerce and Multimedia	24	P 22 200-level ELCM pts
ELCM 391	Research Paper in e-Commerce	24	P permission of Head of School; C 24 300-level ELCM pts; X INFO 321
FCOM 110	The New Zealand Commercial Environment	18	
FCOM 201	Special Topic	22	P 72 pts, including 36 from the BCA schedule
HRIR 201	Managing Human Resources and Industrial Relations	22	P MGMT 101 or 36 pts from the BA, BCA, or BTM schedules; X INRC 202, 211, MGMT 305
HRIR 301	Strategic Human Resource Management	24	P HRIR 201 or INRC 202
HRIR 302	Managing Employment Agreements	24	P HRIR 201 or INRC 202 or MGMT 305; X INRC 302
HRIR 303	International Employment Relations	24	P HRIR 201 or INRC 202; X INRC 303
HRIR 304	Workplace Industrial Relations	24	P HRIR 201 or INRC 202; X INRC 304; INRC 306 in 1993-94
HRIR 305	Employee Recruitment and Selection	24	P HRIR 201 or INRC 202

**Schedule to the BCA Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C), Restrictions (X)
HRIR 306	Remuneration and Performance Management	24	P HRIR 201 or INRC 202
HRIR 307	Human Resource Development	24	P HRIR 201 or INRC 202
HRIR 308	Special Topic	24	P HRIR 201 or INRC 202
IBUS 201	Principles of International Business	22	P FCOM 110 or (ECON 130, MGMT 101)
IBUS 202	The Development of the Modern International Economy	22	P 18 100-level ECON, HIST, GEOG or POLS pts; X ECHI 202, ECON 205
IBUS 301	International Management	24	P IBUS 201
IBUS 305	Dynamic Strategy and Structure in International Business	24	P IBUS 201 (or 202) or MGMT 205; X ECHI 305
IBUS 308	Special Topic	24	P IBUS 201 or 202
IBUS 309	Special Topic	24	P IBUS 201 or 202
IBUS 311	International Business Research Project	24	P IBUS 301, 24 further 300-level pts, QUAN 102 (or STAT 193)
INFO 101	Foundations of Information Systems	18	X INFO 211
INFO 102	Information Systems Development	18	C INFO 101; X INFO 212 before 2005
INFO 201	Introduction to Information Systems Management	22	P INFO 101
INFO 221	Principles of Project Management	22	P 36 100-level pts; X BITT 301
INFO 222	Modern Systems Analysis	22	P INFO 102; X INFO 212
INFO 241	Introduction to Database Management and Programming	22	P INFO 102 or COMP 103; X INFO 213, COMP 302
INFO 301	Strategic Information Systems Management	24	P INFO 201 or ELCM 211; X INFO 311
INFO 320	Project in Information Systems	24	P 22 200-level INFO pts (not 221); X ELCM 320, INFO 314 passed 1997-99
INFO 322	Information Systems Implementation	24	P 22 200-level INFO pts (not 221); X INFO 214
INFO 325	Telecommunications in Business	24	P 22 200-level INFO, ELCM or COMP pts (not INFO 221); X INFO 314
INFO 341	Advanced Database Programming	24	P INFO 241; X INFO 312
INFO 381	Special Topic in Information Systems	24	P 22 200-level INFO pts (not 221)
INFO 391	Research Paper in Information Systems	24	P permission of Head of School; C 24 300-level INFO pts
MARK 101	Principles of Marketing	18	X MARK 151, 201
MARK 151	Principles of Marketing (Distance)	18	P permission of Head of School; X MARK 101, 201
MARK 202	Buyer Behaviour	22	P MARK 101 (or 151 or 201)
MARK 203	Marketing Information Management	22	P MARK 101 (or 151 or 201)
MARK 204	Tourism Marketing	22	P MARK 101 (or 151 or 201); X MARK 312
MARK 211	Marketing Management	22	P MARK 101 (or 151 or 201); X MARK 261, 305
MARK 261	Marketing Management (Distance)	24	P MARK 101 (or 151); X MARK 211, 305
MARK 301	Marketing Communications	24	P MARK 202, 211 (or 261)
MARK 302	International Marketing	24	P MARK 202, 211 (or 261)
MARK 304	Thinking Skills in Marketing	24	P MARK 202, 211 (or 261)

**Schedule to the BCA Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C), Restrictions (X)
MARK 306	Internet Marketing	24	P MARK 202, 211 (or 261)
MARK 307	Marketing Decision Support	24	P MARK 202, 211 (or 261)
MARK 308	Special Topic in Marketing	24	P MARK 202 or 211 (or 261)
MARK 309	Special Topic in Marketing	24	P MARK 202 or 211 (or 261)
MARK 311	Strategic Marketing Management	24	P MARK 202, 211 (or 261); C 24 300-level MARK pts; X MARK 305
MARK 313	Direct Marketing	24	P MARK 202, 211 (or 261)
MARK 314	Conceptual Foundations of Marketing	24	P MARK 202, 211 (or 261)
MARK 315	Special Topic	24	
MBUS 201	Management of Māori Resources	22	P MGMT 101
MBUS 202	Māori Authorities	22	P 18 pts
MBUS 203	Māori Small Business	22	P 18 pts
MBUS 301	Māori Claims	24	P MBUS 201
MBUS 302	Advanced Management of Māori Resources	24	P MBUS 201
MGMT 101	Introduction to Management	18	X MGMT 201
MGMT 202	Organisational Behaviour	22	P MGMT 101, 36 pts
MGMT 205	Strategic Management	22	P MGMT 101, 36 pts; X MGMT 301
MGMT 206	Systems Thinking and Decision Making	22	P MGMT 101, 36 pts; X MGMT 204
MGMT 307	Special Topic	24	P 22 200-level pts
MGMT 308	Organisational Communication	24	P MGMT 202 or COMM 201 (or 202) or LING 224 or MDIA 204; X COMM 301
MGMT 310	Competitive Advantage	24	P MGMT 205
MGMT 311	Knowledge Management	24	P MGMT 205
MGMT 312	Quality and Environmental Management	24	P 22 200-level MGMT pts
MGMT 313	Strategic Operations Management	24	P 22 200-level MGMT pts; X MGMT 303
MGMT 314	Operations and Services Management	24	P 22 200-level MGMT pts; X MGMT 203
MGMT 315	Systems Thinking and Modelling	24	P MGMT 206
MGMT 316	Decision Modelling for Managers	24	P MGMT 206
MGMT 317	Organisational Innovation and Change	24	P 22 200-level MGMT pts; X MGMT 306
MGMT 318	Organisational Analysis and Design	24	P MGMT 202; X MGMT 302
MGMT 319	Sport Management	24	P 22 200-level MGMT pts; X MGMT 307 in 1998-2001, TOUR 310
MOFI 201	Finance	22	P ECON 140 (or 110), QUAN 103 or 111 (or one of MATH 103-114), QUAN 102 (or STAT 131 or 193)
MOFI 202	Money and Banking	22	P ECON 140 (or 120)
MOFI 301	Corporate Finance	24	P MOFI 201 or FINM 371 or QUAN 371
MOFI 302	Financial Policy and Management	24	P MOFI 201
MOFI 303	Monetary Economics	24	P MOFI 202, QUAN 111
MOFI 305	Investments	24	P MOFI 201 or FINM 371 or QUAN 371
MOFI 306	Special Topic	24	P 22 200-level MOFI pts

**Schedule to the BCA Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C), Restrictions (X)
PUBL 113	Social and Public Policy: Values and Change	18	X SPOL 111,112, 113
PUBL 201	Introduction to Public Policy	22	P ECON 130 (or 110 or 102) or POLS 111 or 36 pts
PUBL 202	Institutions and the Policy Process	22	P FCOM 110 or POLS 111 or PUBL 201 or 18 LAWS pts; X POLS 235
PUBL 203	Introduction to Public Economics	22	P ECON 130 (or 110 or 102) or PUBL 113 or 201; X ECON 224
PUBL 205	Development Policy and Management	22	P 36 ECON, IBUS, MGMT, POLS or PUBL pts; X POLS 236
PUBL 206	Power and Bureaucracy	22	P 36 CRIM, HRIR, IBUS, LAWS, MBUS, MGMT, POLS or PUBL pts; X POLS 238
PUBL 207	Environmental Policy	22	P 22 PUBL pts or 36 BIOL, ENVI, GEOG, HIST, LAW, SOSC or SPOL pts
PUBL 302	Public Management	24	P PUBL 202 or 44 200-level ECON, ECHI, HRIR, IBUS, LAWS, MBUS, MGMT, SPOL or POLS pts; X POLS 380
PUBL 303	Public Sector Economics	24	P PUBL 203 or ECON 201; C ECON 201; X ECON 307
PUBL 304	Cabinet Government	24	P PUBL 202, 22 200-level PUBL or POLS pts; X POLS 381
PUBL 305	Special Topic	24	P 44 200-level PUBL pts
PUBL 306	Policy Analysis	24	P PUBL 201; X PUBL 301
QUAN 102	Statistics for Business	18	X STAT 193
QUAN 103	Introductory Maths for Business	18	X MATH 103, 113, 114, QUAN 111
QUAN 111	Mathematics for Economics and Finance	18	X MATH 103/113 and MATH 104/114
QUAN 201	Introduction to Econometrics	22	P 18 100-level ECON pts, QUAN 102 or STAT 131 or 193, QUAN 111 (or 103 or one of MATH 103-114); X QUAN 203 and STAT 231
QUAN 202	Business and Economic Forecasting	22	P QUAN 102 or STAT 131 or 193; QUAN 111 (or 103 or one of MATH 103-114); X QUAN 302
QUAN 203	Quantitative Methods	22	P QUAN 102 or STAT 131 or 193; QUAN 111 (or MATH 113 or 114); X QUAN 201 and STAT 231
QUAN 301	Econometrics	24	P ECON 201 or 202; QUAN 201; QUAN 203 or STAT 231
QUAN 303	Applied Econometrics	24	P ECON 201 or 202; QUAN 203 or STAT 231 or 291
QUAN 304	Financial Econometrics	24	P ECON 201 or 202 or MOFI 201 or 202; QUAN 203 or STAT 231
QUAN 371	Financial Mathematics	24	P MATH 113 or QUAN 111, 44 200-level MATH, OPRE, STAT, ECON, MOFI or QUAN pts; X FINM 371
<b>Faculty Special Topics</b>			
FCOM 101	Special Topic	18	
FCOM 102	Special Topic	18	
FCOM 103	Special Topic	18	
FCOM 202	Special Topic	22	P 72 100-level BCA pts
FCOM 203	Special Topic	22	P 72 100-level BCA pts

## Conjoint BCA/BTeach

### Statute for the Conjoint Bachelor of Commerce and Administration and Bachelor of Teaching Programme

*Note: This statute facilitates the study of the BCA and BTeach degrees in combination; students completing the conjoint programme graduate with both degrees.*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Admission to the conjoint BCA/BTeach programme normally occurs in a candidate's first year of study at university and requires that the candidate be accepted into the BCA degree and meet the College of Education entry requirements, which include the "good character" and "fitness to teach" requirements of the NZ Teachers Council. A candidate who has already completed the requirements of the BCA will not be admitted to the conjoint programme.
- (b) A candidate taking the conjoint programme shall obtain permission to re-enrol for it each year after first admission to the programme. Such permission will normally be given if the student has achieved a B- average over the courses completed in the previous year of study.

#### General Requirements

2. The personal course of study of a candidate for the conjoint BCA/BTeach shall, except as provided in section 6 below and the Credit Transfer Statute, consist of courses from the schedules to first degrees of this University with a total points value of at least 534, of which
  - (a) at least 318 points shall be from courses numbered 200-399, including at least 120 from courses numbered 300-399;
  - (b) at least 244 points shall be from the BCA schedule, including at least 136 from courses numbered 200-399; and
  - (c) at least 244 points shall be from the BTeach schedule, including at least 136 from courses numbered 200-399.

A candidate taking the conjoint programme is normally expected to include courses from both the BCA and BTeach schedules in each year of enrolment.

3. The course of study of every candidate shall comply with section 1(b) of the BCA statute and contain
  - (a) enough courses to fulfil the requirements of at least one BCA major subject as set out in section 2 of the BCA statute;
  - (b) at least 44 points in ACCY, ECON or INFO courses numbered 200-399; and
  - (c) courses from the BTeach schedule as follows:

##### Part 1

CUST 131; TEAP 131, 132, 231, 232, 331

##### Part 2

Courses as specified in one of the following teaching specialisations:

- (i) Primary: CUST 132, 133, 134, 135, 231, 232, 233, 331, 332;

- (ii) Secondary: CUST 153; two of CUST 251-269; two of CUST 351-369; TEAP 253;
  - (iii) Primary and Secondary: CUST 132, 133, 134, 135, 231, 232, 233, 331, 332; two of CUST 351-369, TEAP 253.
4. Where, in the opinion of the relevant Head of School or Programme Director, a candidate has achieved in another course of study a standard equivalent to that required in any compulsory course and cannot obtain corresponding credit under section 6 of this statute or the Credit Transfer Statute, the candidate shall be exempted from that course and shall substitute an approved course of at least the equivalent number of points.
  5. The aegrotat pass provisions in the Examination Statute shall not apply to courses from the BTeach schedule. In the event that a candidate is prevented from completing such a course by one of the circumstances specified in section 6.1 of that statute, the candidate will be granted an extension to complete the assessment.

### **Cross-crediting**

6. At the discretion of the Associate Dean (Undergraduate Students) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration, a candidate completing a conjoint BCA/BTeach combined with another undergraduate degree may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately. In any such case, the overall course of study for the conjoint BCA/BTeach and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 2-3 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### **BTeach Schedule**

*Note: See the Course of Study Statutes for the Faculty of Education.*

## **Conjoint BCA/BSc**

### **Statute for the Conjoint Bachelor of Commerce and Administration and Bachelor of Science Programme**

*Note: This statute facilitates the study of the BCA and BSc degrees in combination; students completing the conjoint programme graduate with both degrees.*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Admission to the conjoint BCA/BSc programme normally occurs in a candidate's first year of study at university and requires that the candidate be accepted into both the BCA and BSc degrees. A candidate who has already completed the requirements of either the BCA or the BSc will not be admitted to the conjoint programme.
- (b) A candidate taking the conjoint programme shall obtain permission to re-enrol for it each year after first admission to the programme. Such permission

will normally be given if the student has achieved a B- average over the courses completed in the previous year of study.

### General Requirements

2. The personal course of study of a candidate for the conjoint BCA/BSc shall consist of courses from the schedules to first degrees of this University as approved by the Associate Dean (Undergraduate Students) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration and the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science. Except as provided in section 4 below and the Credit Transfer Statute, these courses shall have a total point value of 510, including
  - (a) at least 294 points from courses numbered 200-399, with at least 120 of those from courses numbered 300-399; and
  - (b) at least 414 points from the BCA or BSc schedules, of which
    - (i) at least 204 points shall be from the BCA schedule, including at least 114 points from courses numbered 200-399; and
    - (ii) at least 204 points shall be from the BSc schedule, including at least 114 points from courses numbered 200-399.

A candidate taking the conjoint programme is normally expected to include courses from both the BCA and BSc schedules in each year of enrolment.

3. The combined course of study of every candidate shall comply with section 1(b) of the BCA statute and contain enough courses to fulfil the requirements of
  - (a) at least one BCA major subject as set out in section 2 of the BCA statute; and
  - (b) at least one BSc major subject as set out in section 2 of the BSc statute.

No 300-level course may be used to satisfy major subject requirements for both the BCA and the BSc.

### Cross-crediting

4. At the discretion of the Associate Dean (Undergraduate Students) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration or the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science, a candidate completing a conjoint BCA/BSc combined with another undergraduate degree may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately. In any such case, the overall course of study for the conjoint BCA/BSc and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 2-3 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

## GDipProfAcc

### Statute for the Graduate Diploma in Professional Accounting

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipProfAcc shall have
  - (i) completed, or qualified for enrolment in, a BCA degree at Victoria University of Wellington; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the School of Accounting and Commercial Law as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.

- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Head of School for a candidate who has completed a commerce degree at a university in New Zealand or overseas and who has adequate background to proceed with the proposed course of study.

### General Requirements

2. (a) The course of study for the GDipProfAcc shall consist of courses worth at least 134 points selected from the schedules of any first degree of this University, including
- (i) at least 116 points from courses numbered 200-399; and
  - (ii) at least 72 points from ACCY 300-399.
- (b) Courses included in the GDipProfAcc and the candidate's commerce degree and any other programmes of study shall include the following (or their equivalent):
- (i) ACCY 111, 223, 231\*; 232; three courses from ACCY 302, 303, 305, 308, 317, including two from ACCY 302, 303, 308; two further courses from ACCY 300-399.
- \* ACCY 221 may be substituted for ACCY 231 as long as ACCY 308 is included.
- (ii) COML 203, 303; COML 301 or 305;
  - (iii) ECON 130\*, 140, INFO 101, MGMT 101, MOFI 201, QUAN 102; and
  - (iv) five courses from the following list (at least one of which shall be numbered 200-399): all COMM, ECHI, FINM or PUBL courses; all 200/300-level ECON courses (except ECON 328 and 335); all 200-level FCOM courses; all MBUS courses (except 203); MOFI 202, 303; all QUAN courses (except 102); any other courses at this University not in the BCA schedule.
- \* The ECON 130 requirement may be waived by the Associate Dean (Undergraduate Students) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a student who has passed ECON 140.
- (c) A candidate shall complete a commerce degree before being awarded the GDipProfAcc.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the diploma within five years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend this maximum period in special cases.

### Transitional arrangements

4. Candidates who began their course of study under the GDipProfAcc statute in force in 2005 may complete the diploma under that statute as long as they do so by the end of 2008. Alternatively, they may complete under this statute.

## GDipCom

### Statute for the Graduate Diploma in Commerce

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipCom shall have
- (i) completed a BCA degree; and

- (ii) been accepted by the appropriate Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Undergraduate Students) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has completed another Bachelor's degree and has adequate training and ability to proceed with the proposed course of study.

### General Requirements

2. (a) The course of study for the diploma shall be a coherent programme of study approved by the Associate Dean. The course of study shall consist of courses worth at least 116 points, including
  - (i) at least 72 points at 300 level or above; and
  - (ii) at least five courses numbered 200-599 from courses offered for the BCA, BCA(Hons), MCA or MMS degrees, except that, at the discretion of the Associate Dean, up to two approved courses may be selected from other programmes offered at this University.
- (b) At the discretion of the Associate Dean, any courses previously passed for a Certificate of Proficiency may be credited to the diploma.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the diploma within three years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend the maximum period in special cases.

*Note: The actual time taken to complete the diploma will depend on the need to pass prerequisites and the timetabling of courses. It will not always be possible to complete a specialisation in two trimesters.*

### Subject Requirements

4. Except as provided in section 5, the personal course of study of each candidate shall satisfy the requirements for one of the specialisations listed below:

#### Accounting

- (a) ACCY 231; ACCY 223 or 232; one course from ACCY 302, 303, 305, 308;
- (b) two further courses from ACCY 300-399\*.

\* One of those may be replaced by an approved pair of 400-level ACCY courses.

*Note: This is not intended as a path towards the academic requirements of the Institute of Chartered Accountants. Students wishing to meet those requirements should contact the Head of the School of Accounting and Commercial Law.*

#### Commercial Law

COML 203; four courses from COML 300-399\*.

\* One of those may be replaced by an approved 200/300-level elective.

#### e-Commerce

- (a) ELCM 211, 251;
- (b) three courses from (ELCM 300-399, INFO 301, MARK 306).

#### Econometrics

- (a) QUAN 203 or STAT 231;
- (b) two of QUAN 301 (or ECON 408, 409), 303, 304;
- (c) one further approved course from QUAN 201, 202, QUAN/ECHI/ECON 300-399 or an approved pair of 400-level ECON courses.

**Economics**

- (a) ECON 201, 202; one course from ECON 305, 309, 314, 328;
- (b) two further courses\* from ECON 300-399, MOFI 303, QUAN 301.

\* One of those can be replaced by the pair MOFI 403, 404 or an approved 300-level ECHI course, or an approved pair of 400-level ECON courses.

**Financial Mathematics**

- (a) MATH 206 or 207; QUAN 203 or STAT 231;
- (b) FINM/QUAN 371; two of MOFI 301, 305, QUAN 301, 304.

**Human Resource Management and Industrial Relations**

- (a) HRIR 201, MGMT 202;
- (b) three courses\* from HRIR 300-399.

\* One of those may be replaced by COML 302, ECON 333 or MGMT 318.

**Information Systems**

- (a) INFO 201, 241;
- (b) three courses from INFO 300-399.

**International Business**

- (a) IBUS 201, 202, 301, 305;
- (b) 18 100-level ASIA, CHIN, EURO, FREN, GERM, ITAL, JAPA, KORE, PASI or SPAN points, or ASIA 201, 202 or 203, or an approved substitute;
- (c) one course from ACCY 309, COML 306, ECON 309, INFO 301, HRIR 303, IBUS 308-311, MARK 302, MGMT 310, 311, 318.

**Management**

- (a) Two courses from MGMT 202, 205, 206;
- (b) three further courses from MGMT 308-399.

\* Any of these five courses may be replaced by an approved combination of MMMS courses of at least an equivalent points value.

**Māori Business**

- (a) MBUS 201, 202 (or 203), 301, 302;
- (b) one further approved 300-level course, or an approved pair of 400/500-level courses.

**Marketing**

- (a) MARK 202, 211 (or 261);
- (b) (i) three courses from MARK 300-399; or  
(ii) two courses from MARK 300-399; COML 308.

**Money and Finance**

- (a) MOFI 201; MOFI 202 or ECON 202 or QUAN 203;
- (b) three courses\* from ACCY 306, MOFI 300-399, QUAN 304.

\* One of those may be replaced by a pair of 400-level MOFI courses or an approved 300-level ECHI, ECON or QUAN course.

**Public Management**

- (a) PUBL 202, 302;
- (b) three further courses, at least two of which are at 300 level, from PUBL 205, 206, 300-399, MGMT 200-399, ACCY 307 or approved alternatives.

**Public Policy**

- (a) Two courses from PUBL 201-203; PUBL 306;
- (b) two further courses\* from PUBL 300-399.

\* One of those may be replaced by an approved policy-related 300-level course.

**Tourism Management**

- (a) TOUR 240; TOUR 230 or 250;
- (b) three courses\* from TOUR 301, 345, 380, 390.

\* One of those may be replaced by an approved 300-level course.

5. (a) A candidate who has already passed for some other qualification one or more of the courses required for a particular specialisation under section 4 will be given the appropriate exemptions and allowed to substitute an approved course or courses if necessary to meet the points requirements of section 2(a).
- (b) To qualify for a specialisation the candidate's programme for the GDipCom shall include at least two 300-level courses (or approved substitutes) in the relevant subject area.

**BCA(Hons)****Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce and Administration with Honours**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. Before enrolment, a candidate for the BCA(Hons) degree shall have
  - (a) completed a BCA degree or, at the discretion of the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration, another degree including material similar to that constituting a BCA;
  - (b) satisfied the prerequisites listed in section 2 for the subject to be presented, or been granted exemption from those prerequisites by the Associate Dean; and
  - (c) been accepted by the relevant Head of School or Programme Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
2. The subjects for the BCA(Hons) and their prerequisites are:

**Accounting**

48 points from ACCY 300-399

**Economics**

48 points from ECON 300-399

**Human Resource Management and Industrial Relations**

24 points from HRIR 300-399 and 24 further 300-level BCA points

**Information Systems**

48 points from ELCM or INFO 300-399

**International Business**

24 points from IBUS 300-399 and 24 further 300-level BCA points

**Marketing**

48 points from MARK 300-399

**Management**

48 points from MGMT 300-399

**Money and Finance**

48 points from MOFI 300-399

**Public Policy**

48 points from PUBL 300-399.

**General Requirements**

3. The course of study for BCA(Hons) shall consist of courses worth at least 120 points as required in section 5.
4. (a) A candidate for this degree shall normally be enrolled for not less than two trimesters and not more than four trimesters.  
(b) A candidate may, with the permission of the Associate Dean, be assessed in four courses in each of two years. A candidate without such permission may spread the work over two years and retain eligibility for honours provided all courses are assessed in the second year.

**Subject Requirements**

5. The personal course of study of a candidate shall satisfy the requirements for one of the subjects listed below, with such substitutions as may be approved under section 6:

**Accounting**

- (a) ACCY 401, 421, 422;
- (b) five courses from ACCY 402-413, COML 401-405, MOFI 401-402.

**Economics**

- (a) (ECON 402, 403) or (ECON 404, 405);
- (b) six further courses from ECON 401-489, MMCA 401, MOFI 401-489.

**Human Resource Management and Industrial Relations**

- (a) HRIR 401, 402, MGMT 404, 405, 411, 430;
- (b) two further courses from HRIR 411-412, MGMT 401-418, ECON 416, 417.

**Information Systems**

- (a) INFO 401, 402, 403, 408; two courses from INFO 404-407, 409, 410;
- (b) two further 400-level INFO or other approved courses.

**International Business**

- (a) IBUS 401, 405, 409; two further courses from IBUS 402-408;
- (b) three further courses from IBUS 411-489 or other approved Honours courses.

**Management**

- (a) MGMT 404, 430; four courses from MGMT 401, 403, 405-418;
- (b) two further courses from MGMT 401-489, ACCY 402-413, COML 402-403, ECON 401-419, INFO 401-409, MARK 401-406, MMCA 401, MMMS 502-504, 506, 521-522, MOFI 401-407, PUBL 402-415.

**Marketing**

- (a) MARK 401, 405, 409; two courses from MARK 402-404, 406;  
 (b) three further courses from MARK 402-489, MMCA 401, INFO 401-404, MGMT 401, COML 401-403 or other approved courses.

**Money and Finance**

- (a) Four courses from FINM 470, 471, MOFI 401-489;  
 (b) four further courses from (ECON 401-489, MMCA 401, MOFI 401-489).

**Public Policy**

- (a) MMCA 401, PUBL 401, 402, 403;  
 (b) four further courses from PUBL 404-415 or other approved courses from those offered for the MCA, BA(Hons) or MA degrees or other postgraduate Honours or Master's programmes.

**Substitution of Courses**

6. A candidate may, with the permission of the relevant Head of School or Programme Director, replace up to four courses in the relevant part (b) of section 5 with courses of at least an equivalent points value offered for the BCA(Hons) or other postgraduate Honours or Master's programmes. (See Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses.)

**Award of Honours**

7. A candidate shall become eligible for the award of Honours in a subject by completing the requirements of the degree within two years of first enrolment for the degree in that subject. (See sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions covering the award of Honours.)

**Schedule to the BCA(Hons) Statute**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C), Restrictions (X)
<b>Accounting</b>			
ACCY 401	Methodology in Accounting	15	C ACCY 421
ACCY 402	Current Issues in Management Accounting	15	P ACCY 223; ACCY 302 or 314
ACCY 403	Applied Management Accounting	15	P ACCY 402
ACCY 404	Governmental Accounting and Finance	15	P ACCY 307 or 308
ACCY 405	Foundations of Public Sector Accounting	15	P ACCY 404
ACCY 406	Auditing	15	P ACCY 303
ACCY 407	History of Accounting Thought	15	
ACCY 408	Special Topic	15	
ACCY 409	Special Topic	15	
ACCY 410	Advanced Taxation	15	P ACCY 305
ACCY 411	Applied Taxation	15	P ACCY 410
ACCY 412	Current Issues in Financial Accounting	15	P ACCY 308

**Schedule to the BCA(Hons) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C), Restrictions (X)
ACCY 413	Accounting, Organisations and Society	15	P ACCY 308 (or 307)
ACCY 421	Accounting Research Methodology	15	C ACCY 401
ACCY 422	Research Project in Accounting	15	P ACCY 401, 421
ACCY 423	Studies in Auditing	15	P ACCY 308
ACCY 425	Studies in Taxation	15	P ACCY 308
<b>Commercial Law</b>			
COML 401	Advanced Competition Law A	15	P 24 300-level COML pts
COML 402	Advanced Competition Law B	15	P COML 401
COML 403	Special Topic	15	
COML 404	Special Topic	15	
COML 405	Special Topic	15	
COML 421	Law of Commercial Transactions	15	P COML 303
COML 425	Advanced Law of Contractual Obligations	15	P COML 303
<b>Economics</b>			
ECON 401	Topics in the Nature of Economic Inquiry	15	P MMCA 401
ECON 402	Advanced Macroeconomic Theory A	15	P QUAN 203, ECON 305; C ECON 403
ECON 403	Advanced Macroeconomic Theory B	15	P QUAN 203, ECON 305; C ECON 402
ECON 404	Advanced Microeconomic Theory A	15	P QUAN 203, ECON 314; C ECON 405
ECON 405	Advanced Microeconomic Theory B	15	P QUAN 203, ECON 314; C ECON 404
ECON 406	Economic Dynamics A	15	P 48 300-level ECON, QUAN or OPRE pts (ECON 305, 314 recommended)
ECON 407	Economic Dynamics B	15	P ECON 406 or an approved background in economics and mathematics (ECON 305 or 314 recommended)
ECON 408	Advanced Econometrics A	15	P QUAN 301 or equivalent
ECON 409	Advanced Econometrics B	15	P ECON 408
ECON 410	Public Economics A	15	P ECON 307 or PUBL 303 or equivalent X PUBL 410
ECON 411	Public Economics B	15	P ECON 201 or 410; X PUBL 411
ECON 412	International Economics A	15	P ECON 309 or 314 (or 201)
ECON 413	International Economics B	15	P ECON 309 or 305
ECON 414	Theories of Growth and Development	15	C ECON 415 or ECHI 402
ECON 415	Topics in Development Economics	15	P ECON 414 or 48 relevant 300-level pts
ECON 416	Labour Markets	15	
ECON 417	Labour Markets in the Global Economy	15	P ECON 333 or 416
ECON 418	Special Topic	15	
ECON 419	Special Topic	15	
ECON 420	Special Topic	15	

**Schedule to the BCA(Hons) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C), Restrictions (X)
ECON 421	Asian Miracle Economies since 1945	15	P 24 300-level ECON, ECHI, HIST or IBUS pts
ECON 422	Industrial Organisation	15	P ECON 314
ECON 423	Macroeconomic Modelling of the New Zealand Economy	15	P ECON 305
<b>Human Resource Management and Industrial Relations</b>			
HRIR 401	Labour Policy	15	P 48 300-level HRIR pts
HRIR 402	Industrial Relations	15	P 48 300-level HRIR pts
HRIR 411	Special Topic	15	P 48 300-level HRIR pts
HRIR 412	Special Topic	15	P 48 300-level HRIR pts
<b>Information Systems</b>			
INFO 401	Foundations of Information Systems Research	15	P 48 300-level ELCM or INFO pts
INFO 402	Current Issues in Information Systems Research	15	P INFO 401
INFO 403	Research Methods in Information Systems	15	P 48 300-level ELCM or INFO pts
INFO 404	e-Commerce Research	15	P 48 300-level ELCM or INFO pts
INFO 405	IT and the New Organisation	15	P 48 300-level ELCM or INFO pts
INFO 406	Information and Systems	15	P 48 300-level ELCM or INFO pts
INFO 407	Virtual Workplace: Issues and Strategies	15	P 48 300-level ELCM or INFO pts
INFO 408	Research Project in Information Systems	15	P INFO 403 or approved substitute
INFO 409	Special Topic in Information Systems	15	
INFO 410	Research Paper in Information Systems	15	P INFO 401, 402, 403
<b>International Business</b>			
IBUS 401	Advanced International Business	15	P IBUS 301
IBUS 402	Multinational Corporations in the Global Business Environment	15	P IBUS 301
IBUS 404	International Communication	15	P IBUS 301 or 305
IBUS 405	Research Methods in International Business	15	P IBUS 301
IBUS 406	Advanced Strategy and Organisational Development	15	P IBUS 301 or 305
IBUS 409	Dissertation	15	P IBUS 405
IBUS 411	Special Topic	15	P IBUS 301 or 305
IBUS 412	Special Topic	15	P IBUS 301 or 305
<b>Management</b>			
MGMT 401	Managerial Decision Processes	15	P 24 300-level MGMT pts
MGMT 403	Operations Management	15	P 24 300-level MGMT pts
MGMT 404	Research Methods	15	
MGMT 405	Human Resource Management	15	P 24 300-level MGMT or HRIR pts
MGMT 409	Special Topic in Management	15	P 24 300-level MGMT pts
MGMT 410	Special Topic in Management	15	P 24 300-level MGMT pts

**Schedule to the BCA(Hons) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C), Restrictions (X)
MGMT 411	Advanced Organisational Behaviour	15	P 24 300-level MGMT pts
MGMT 413	Innovation and Change Management	15	P 24 300-level MGMT pts
MGMT 417	Advanced Strategic Management	15	P 24 300-level MGMT pts
MGMT 418	Current Topics in Strategic Management	15	P MGMT 417
MGMT 430	Research Paper	15	P MGMT 404
<b>Marketing</b>			
MARK 401	Advanced Marketing Management	15	P 24 300-level MARK pts
MARK 402	Consumers, Technology and Product Development	15	P 24 300-level MARK pts
MARK 403	Advanced International Marketing	15	P 24 300-level MARK pts
MARK 404	Advanced Internet Marketing	15	P 24 approved 300-level MARK pts
MARK 405	Methodology in Marketing	15	P 24 300-level MARK pts
MARK 406	Managing Marketing Communications	15	P 24 300-level MARK pts
MARK 407	Special Topic	15	P 24 300-level MARK pts
MARK 408	Special Topic	15	P 24 300-level MARK pts
MARK 409	Dissertation	15	P MARK 405
<b>Methodology</b>			
MMCA 401	Methodology	15	
<b>Money and Finance</b>			
FINM 470	Introduction to Risk Management and Insurance	15	C FINM/QUAN 371; X FINM 870, MOFI 405 in 1997 or 1998
FINM 471	Further Risk Management and Insurance	15	P FINM 470; X FINM 870; MOFI 405 in 1997 or 1998
MOFI 401	Options	15	P MOFI 201 (MOFI 301 strongly recommended), QUAN 203
MOFI 402	Corporate Finance	15	P MOFI 201 (MOFI 301 strongly recommended), QUAN 203
MOFI 403	Monetary Economics A	15	P MOFI 303 or ECON 305
MOFI 404	Monetary Economics B	15	P MOFI 303 or ECON 305
MOFI 405	Stock Prices and Volatility Modelling	15	P MOFI 301 or 305, QUAN 203
MOFI 406	Special Topic	15	
MOFI 407	Advanced Investments	15	P MOFI 201(MOFI 301 strongly recommended), QUAN 203
MOFI 409	Special Topic	15	
<b>Public Policy</b>			
PUBL 401	Methodology in Public Policy	15	P MMCA 401
PUBL 402	Advanced Public Policy A	15	P PUBL 306 or equivalent
PUBL 403	Advanced Public Policy B	15	P PUBL 402
PUBL 404	Bureaucratic Power In Western Democracies	30	P PUBL 306 or equivalent; X POLS 433
PUBL 406	Some Aspects of Policy-Making	30	X POLS 432
PUBL 408	State and the Economy	30	X POLS 436

**Schedule to the BCA(Hons) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C), Restrictions (X)
PUBL 410	Public Economics A	15	P PUBL 303 or ECON 307 or equivalent; X ECON 410
PUBL 411	Public Economics B	15	P ECON 201 or PUBL 410; X ECON 411
PUBL 412-15	Special Topics	15	

**MCA****Statute for the Degree of Master of Commerce and Administration**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MCA degree shall have
  - (i) completed a BCA(Hons) degree in the subject to be presented or, at the discretion of the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration, another degree;
  - (ii) been accepted by the relevant Head of School or Programme Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived if the candidate has produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Associate Dean of extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

**General Requirements**

2. Each candidate shall present a Master's thesis worth 120 points in one of the subjects listed below:
  - Accounting
  - Economics
  - Human Resource Management and Industrial Relations
  - Information Systems
  - International Business
  - Management
  - Marketing
  - Money and Finance
  - Public Policy
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the degree within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend that maximum period in special cases.

**Award of Distinction or Merit**

4. The MCA may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

---

### Schedule to the MCA Statute

Course	Title	Pts
ACCY 591	Thesis	120
ECON 591	Thesis	120
HRIR 591	Thesis	120
INFO 591	Thesis	120
IBUS 591	Thesis	120
MARK 591	Thesis	120
MGMT 591	Thesis	120
MOFI 591	Thesis	120
PUBL 591	Thesis	120

---

## MAF

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Applied Finance

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. Before enrolment, a candidate for the MAF degree shall have
  - (a) (i) completed a Bachelor's degree; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the MAF Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
  - (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has
    - (i) completed to the equivalent of at least a B- average standard a PGCertFMA, PGDipTM, PGDipFA or another postgraduate diploma judged by the Associate Dean to be comparable to the PGDipTM or PGDipFA; or
    - (ii) had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) and in section 4, the course of study for the MAF shall consist of courses worth at least 180 points, including
 

**Part 1:** MMAF 501 (or 510); MMAF 502

**Part 2:** Further MMAF courses worth at least 140 points.
- (b) Part 1 should normally be completed before a candidate proceeds to Part 2. However, a candidate who has completed courses equivalent to those in Part 1 or who has substantial academic or scholarly experience may omit Part 1 and be admitted directly to Part 2.
- (c) (i) A candidate who has completed the PGDipTM, PGDipFA or PGCertFMA and is accepted into the MAF shall receive full credit for the

- courses completed for the relevant diploma or certificate, but must abandon that qualification upon being awarded the MAF.
- (ii) Other candidates admitted under section 1(b)(i) will receive a credit of 40 points for any completed courses equivalent to those in Part 2, and shall complete approved MMAF courses worth a further 100 points.
3. A candidate completing both parts shall normally be enrolled for at least three trimesters over one and a half years and shall complete the degree within six years of first enrolling in it. A candidate admitted directly to Part 2 shall be enrolled for at least two trimesters.

#### Substitution of Courses

4. A candidate may, with the permission of the Director, replace Part 2 courses worth up to 80 points with courses of at least an equivalent points value offered for other postgraduate programmes of this University. (See Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses.)

#### Award of Distinction or Merit

5. The MAF may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Schedule to the MAF Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions
MMAF 501	New Zealand Capital Markets	20	MMAF 510, 580
MMAF 502	Corporate Finance	20	
MMAF 510	Global Capital Markets	20	MMAF 501, 580
MMAF 511	International Corporate Finance	20	
MMAF 512	Treasury Management	20	MMAF 580
MMAF 513	Treasury Operations	20	
MMAF 514	Derivatives	20	MMAF 580
MMAF 515	Financial Institutions Management	20	
MMAF 516	Portfolio Design and Investment	20	
MMAF 521	Macroeconomic Processes and Financial Management	20	
MMAF 522	Risk and Insurance	20	FINM 470, 471
MMAF 523	Treasury Accounting and Tax	20	
MMAF 524	Financial Econometrics	20	
MMAF 525	Financial Modelling	20	
MMAF 526	Law and Finance	20	
MMAF 527-33	Special Topics	20	
MMAF 550	Research Paper	40	
MMAF 580	International Financial Markets Analysis	60	MMAF 501, 510, 512, 514; permission of the Director

## PGDipFA

### **Statute for the Postgraduate Diploma in Financial Analysis**

The statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGDipFA shall have
  - (i) completed an appropriate Bachelor's degree, or demonstrated satisfactory progress in a postgraduate finance qualification judged by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration to be comparable with the PGDipFA; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the MAF Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### **General Requirements**

2. The course of study for the PGDipFA shall consist of courses worth at least 120 points, including
  - Part 1:** MMAF 501 (or 510), 502
  - Part 2:** At least 80 points from further MMAF or other approved postgraduate courses offered at this University.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the diploma within four years of first enrolling for it.

## PGDipTM

### **Statute for the Postgraduate Diploma in Treasury Management**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGDipTM shall have
  - (i) completed an appropriate Bachelor's degree or equivalent qualification; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the MAF Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has
  - (i) demonstrated satisfactory progress in a postgraduate treasury qualification judged by the Associate Dean to be comparable to the PGDipTM; or

- (ii) had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

**General Requirements**

2. The course of study for the PGDipTM shall consist of courses worth at least 120 points, including
  - Part 1:** MMAF 501 (or 510), 502
  - Part 2:** MMAF 511, 512, 513
  - Part 3:** MMAF 514 or 515, or, with the approval of the Director, a postgraduate course or courses worth at least 20 points.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the diploma within four years of first enrolling for it.

**PGCertFMA****Statute for the Postgraduate Certificate in Financial Markets Analysis**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGCertFMA shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the MAF Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

**General Requirements**

2. The course of study for the PGCertFMA shall consist of MMAF 580.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for six months.

**MFinMath****Statute for the Degree of Master of Financial Mathematics**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MFinMath degree shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree or an equivalent qualification, having passed at least one 200-level course in mathematics (equivalent to MATH

- 206 or 207), at least one 200-level course in statistics (equivalent to STAT 231) and 48 approved 300-level points in mathematics, statistics, operations research or financial mathematics; and
- (ii) been accepted by the Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) will be waived for a candidate who has completed the PGDipFinMath with a grade average of B or better.
  - (c) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration, for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

### General Requirements

- 2. (a) Except as provided in (b), the course of study for the MFinMath shall consist of courses worth at least 180 points, including
    - Part 1**
      - (i) at least three courses from FINM 465-472
      - (ii) at most two courses from MMAF 501-589
      - (iii) approved 400/500-level ECON, FINM, MATH, MOFI, OPRE, ORST, QUAN or STAT courses to make a total of 120 points;
    - Part 2**  
FINM 589, one course from FINM 511-513.
  - (b) A candidate who has been accepted under section 1(c) may be permitted by the Associate Dean to omit Part 1 and to enter Part 2 directly. Other candidates will normally require a grade average of B or better in Part 1 or the PGDipFinMath for entry into Part 2.
  - (c) Those candidates completing Part 1 and not admitted to Part 2 will be awarded a PGDipFinMath.
- 3. A candidate who has been awarded the PGDipFinMath shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the MFinMath.
  - 4. A candidate completing Parts 1 and 2 shall normally be enrolled for at least four trimesters and shall complete the degree within five years of first enrolling in it. A candidate admitted directly to Part 2 shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the degree within three years of first enrolling in it.

### Award of Distinction or Merit

- 5. The MFinMath degree may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Transitional Arrangements

- 6. A candidate who began the MFinMath degree under the statute in force before 2005 may complete under that statute before the end of 2005 or transfer to this statute.

### Schedule to the MFinMath Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
FINM 465	Financial Mathematics and Insurance	15	P MATH 206/207, STAT 231, FINM 371; X FINM 861, 865; MOFI 406 from 1998
FINM 466	Insurance Mathematics	15	P MATH 206/207, STAT 231
FINM 467	Actuarial Statistics	15	P MATH 206/207, STAT 231
FINM 470	Introduction to Risk Management and Insurance	15	C FINM 371 or QUAN 371 X FINM 870; MOFI 405 in 1997 or 1998
FINM 471	Risk Management and Insurance	15	C FINM 470 X FINM 870; MOFI 405 in 1997 or 1998
FINM 472	Financial Engineering and Risk Management	15	P MATH 206/207, STAT 231, FINM 371
FINM 481	Special Topic	30	
FINM 482	Special Topic	15	
FINM 511-13	Special Topics	30	
FINM 589	Project	30	

## PGDipFinMath

### Statute for the Postgraduate Diploma in Financial Mathematics

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGDipFinMath shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree or an equivalent qualification, having passed at least one 200-level course in mathematics (equivalent to MATH 206 or 207), at least one 200-level course in statistics (equivalent to STAT 231) and 48 approved 300-level points in mathematics, statistics, operations research or financial mathematics; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who is otherwise considered suitably qualified.

#### General Requirements

2. A candidate shall be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the diploma within three years of first enrolment in it.
3. The personal course of study of each candidate shall consist of courses worth at least 120 points, including
  - (a) at least three courses from FINM 465-472
  - (b) at most two courses from MMAF 500-589

- (c) approved 400/500-level ECON, FINM, MATH, MOFI, OPRE, ORST, QUAN or STAT courses.

## MPM

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Public Management

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MPM degree shall have
  - (i) completed a New Zealand Bachelor's degree or another degree approved by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration;
  - (ii) had two years of relevant work experience (this requirement may be waived by the Head of the School of Government in special cases); and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (c) or (d) or section 4, the course of study for the MPM shall consist of courses worth at least 180 points, comprising
 

**Part 1:** MMPM 501 (or, with approval, 521), 504, 505, 522;

**Part 2:** four further courses from MMPM 502-532;

**Part 3:** at least one of MMPM 550, 551, 553, 554;

**Part 4:** further courses from the MPM schedule.
  - (b) To enrol in Part 3 a candidate shall normally have completed Parts 1 and 2 or be concurrently enrolled to do so.
  - (c) The Head of School may exempt from any Part 1 course a candidate who has mastered the material covered in that course through previous study and/or practical experience. Credit may be awarded where the previous study involved postgraduate courses not credited to a completed qualification; otherwise, the candidate shall replace exempted courses with approved electives of equivalent points value.
  - (d) The Associate Dean may exempt from Part 3 a candidate who has completed a research paper or dissertation for another social science Master's degree.
  - (e) A failure in one course shall not prevent a candidate from being awarded the degree. However, a candidate who fails two or more courses, or who fails one course twice, will need the permission of the Head of School to continue in the programme.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least three trimesters and shall complete the degree within four years of first enrolling in it. The Head of School may extend the maximum period in special cases.

### Substitution of Courses

4. With the approval of the Head of School, a candidate may replace up to four optional courses in Parts 2 or 4 with appropriate postgraduate Honours or Master's courses of at least equivalent value taken at this or another university and not credited to another qualification. However, courses worth at least 90 points must be taken at Victoria University. (See Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study statute for the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses.)

### Award of Distinction or Merit

5. The MPM may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Schedule to the MPM Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites
MMPM 501	Public Management	15	
MMPM 502	Law in the Public Sector	15	
MMPM 503	Economics Principles and Policies for Public Managers	15	
MMPM 504	Financial Management in the Public Sector	15	
MMPM 505	Human Resource Management	15	
MMPM 506	Organisation and Work in the Public Sector	15	
MMPM 507	Information Systems in the Public Sector	15	
MMPM 521	Comparative Public Management	15	
MMPM 522	Strategic Management in the Public Sector	15	
MMPM 523	Accountancy and Financial Management in the Public Sector	15	MMPM 504
MMPM 524	Project and Risk Management in the Public Sector	15	
MMPM 525	Performance Measurement and Managing for Performance in the Public Sector	15	
MMPM 526	Advanced Human Resource Management in the Public Sector	15	MMPM 505
MMPM 527	Monitoring and Evaluation in the Public Sector	15	
MMPM 528	Public Sector Ethics	15	
MMPM 529	Marketing Management in the Public Sector	15	
MMPM 530	Leadership and Change in the Public Sector	15	
MMPM 531	Politics and Public Management	15	
MMPM 532	Implementation and Service Delivery	15	
MMPM 533-34	Special Topic	15	
MMPM 535-36	Approved personal courses of study	15	
MMPM 550	Project	15	four courses from MMPM 521-532, including 521 or 522
MMPM 551	Project	15	as for MMPM 550
MMPM 552	Internship in a Public Sector Agency	15	as for MMPM 550
MMPM 553	Research Essay	30	as for MMPM 550
MMPM 554	Dissertation	60	

## PGCertPM and PGDipPM

### **Statute for the Postgraduate Certificate in Public Management and the Postgraduate Diploma in Public Management**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGCertPM or the PGDipPM shall have
  - (i) completed a New Zealand Bachelor's degree or another degree approved by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration;
  - (ii) had two years of relevant work experience (this requirement may be waived by the Head of the School of Government in special cases); and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### **General Requirements**

2. (a) Except as provided in section 5, the course of study for the PGCertPM shall consist of courses worth 60 points, including MMPM 501 (or, with approval, 521), 504, 505, 522.
- (b) Except as provided in section 5, the course of study for the PGDipPM shall consist of courses worth at least 120 points, including
  - (i) MMPM 501 (or, with approval, 521), 504, 505, 522;
  - (ii) four further courses from MMPM 502-532.
3. (a) A candidate for the PGCertPM shall normally complete the certificate within two years of first enrolling in it.
- (b) A candidate for the PGDipPM shall normally complete the diploma within three years of first enrolling in the certificate or diploma.
- (c) The Head of School may extend the maximum period in (a) or (b) in special cases.
4. A candidate who has been awarded the PGCertPM shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the PGDipPM.

#### **Substitution of Courses**

5. (a) With the permission of the Head of School, a candidate for the certificate may replace one course with an appropriate postgraduate Honours or Master's course taken at this or another university and not credited to another qualification.
- (b) With the permission of the Head of School, a candidate for the diploma may replace up to two courses with appropriate postgraduate Honours or Master's courses of an equivalent point value taken at this or another university and not credited to another qualification.

## MPP

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Public Policy

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MPP degree shall have
  - (i) completed a New Zealand Bachelor's degree or another degree approved by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration;
  - (ii) had two years of relevant work experience (this requirement may be waived by the Head of the School of Government in special cases); and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (c) or (d) or section 4, the course of study for the MPP shall consist of courses worth at least 180 points, comprising
 

**Part 1:** MAPP 521, 524, 525, 526, 531;

**Part 2:** three further courses from MAPP 522-558;

**Part 3:** courses worth from 30 to 60 points from MAPP 570-582;

**Part 4:** further courses from the MPP schedule.
  - (b) To enrol in Part 3 a candidate shall normally have completed Parts 1 and 2 or be concurrently enrolled to do so.
  - (c) The Head of School may exempt from any Part 1 course a candidate who has mastered the material covered in that course through previous study and/or practical experience. Credit may be awarded where the previous study involved postgraduate courses not credited to a completed qualification; otherwise, the candidate shall replace exempted courses with approved electives of equivalent points value.
  - (d) The Associate Dean may exempt from Part 3 a candidate who has completed a research paper or dissertation for another social science Master's degree.
  - (e) A failure in one course shall not prevent a candidate from being awarded the degree. However, a candidate who fails two or more courses, or who fails one course twice, will need the permission of the Head of School to continue in the programme.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least three trimesters and shall complete the degree within four years of first enrolling in it. The Head of School may extend the maximum period in special cases.

#### Substitution of Courses

4. With the approval of the Head of School, a candidate may replace up to four optional courses in Parts 2 or 4 with appropriate postgraduate Honours or Master's courses of at least equivalent value taken at this or another university

and not credited to another qualification. However, courses worth at least 90 points must be taken at Victoria University. (See Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study statute for the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses.)

#### Award of Distinction or Merit

- The MPP may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Schedule to the MPP Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
MAPP 521	Economics	15	X MAPP 505
MAPP 522	Economics and Public Policy	15	P MAPP 521; X MAPP 505
MAPP 523	Politics, Philosophy and Public Policy	15	X MAPP 503
MAPP 524	Institutions and the Policy Process	15	X MAPP 503
MAPP 525	Policy Analysis and Advising	15	X MAPP 504
MAPP 526	Policy Tools and Practice	15	X MAPP 525 before 2006
MAPP 527	Regulatory Policy	15	X MAPP 556 in 2003
MAPP 528	Local Government	15	X MAPP 561 in 2003-04
MAPP 529	Strategic Management	15	X MAPP 562 in 2003-04
MAPP 530	Comparative Public Management	15	X MAPP 560 in 2003-04
MAPP 531	Law in the Public Sector	15	
MAPP 551	Health Policy	15	
MAPP 552	Education Policy	15	
MAPP 553	Topics in Research and Analysis	15	
MAPP 554	Monitoring and Evaluation	15	
MAPP 555	Social Policy	15	
MAPP 556	Equity and Public Policy	15	
MAPP 557	Managing Policy Organisations	15	
MAPP 558	Development Policy and Management	15	
MAPP 559-62	Special Topics	15	
MAPP 567-68	Approved personal courses of study	15	
MAPP 570	Research Essay	30	
MAPP 575	Dissertation	60	
MAPP 580	Project	15	
MAPP 581	Project	15	
MAPP 582	Internship in a Public Sector Agency	15	

#### PGCertPP and PGDipPP

#### Statute for the Postgraduate Certificate in Public Policy and the Postgraduate Diploma in Public Policy

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

- (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGCertPP or the PGDipPP shall have

- (i) completed a New Zealand Bachelor's degree or another degree approved by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration;
  - (ii) had two years of relevant work experience (this requirement may be waived by the Head of the School of Government in special cases); and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (c) or in section 5, the course of study for the PGCertPP shall consist of courses worth 60 points, including
- (i) MAPP 521, 524, 525;
  - (ii) MAPP 526 or 531.
- (b) Except as provided in (c) or in section 5, the course of study for the PGDipPP shall consist of courses worth 120 points, including
- (i) MAPP 521, 524, 525, 526, 531;
  - (ii) three further courses from MAPP 522-562.
- (c) Courses listed in column 1 below which have not been credited to another qualification may be credited to the PGCertPP or PGDipPP in place of the corresponding courses in column 2.

#### *Column 1*

MAPP 503

MAPP 504

MAPP 505

#### *Column 2*

MAPP 523 and MAPP 524

MAPP 525 and MAPP 526

MAPP 521 and MAPP 522

3. (a) A candidate for the PGCertPP shall normally complete the certificate within two years of first enrolling in it.
- (b) A candidate for the PGDipPP shall normally complete the diploma within three years of first enrolling in the certificate or the diploma.
- (c) The Head of School may extend the maximum period in (a) or (b) in special cases.
4. A candidate who has been awarded the PGCertPP shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the PGDipPP.

### Substitution of Courses

5. (a) With the permission of the Head of School, a candidate for the certificate may replace one course with an appropriate postgraduate Honours or Master's course taken at this or another university and not credited to another qualification.
- (b) With the permission of the Head of School, a candidate for the diploma may replace up to two courses with appropriate postgraduate Honours or

Master's courses of an equivalent point value taken at this or another university and not credited to another qualification.

## MSS

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Strategic Studies

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MSS degree shall have
  - (i) completed a New Zealand Bachelor's degree or another degree approved by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration, or the Postgraduate Diploma in Arts in Defence and Strategic Studies at Massey University;
  - (ii) had two years of relevant work experience (the Head of the School of Government may waive this requirement in special cases); and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (b), (c) or (d) or section 4, the course of study for the MSS shall consist of courses worth at least 180 points, comprising
 

**Part 1:** STRA 501, 502;

**Part 2:** six courses from STRA 503-512, 522-525;

**Part 3:** at least 30 but no more than 90 points from STRA 517-521, 526;

**Part 4:** further courses from STRA 503-516 or 522-525.
  - (b) To enrol in Part 3 a candidate shall normally have completed Parts 1 and 2 or be concurrently enrolled to do so. However, a candidate who has completed the Postgraduate Diploma in Arts in Defence and Strategic Studies at Massey University may be exempted from Parts 1 and 2 and enter Part 3 directly.
  - (c) The Head of School may exempt from any Part 1 course a candidate who has mastered the material covered in that course through previous study and/or practical experience. Credit may be awarded where the previous study involved postgraduate courses not credited to a completed qualification; otherwise, the candidate shall replace exempted courses with approved electives of equivalent points value.
  - (d) A failure in one course shall not prevent a candidate from being awarded the degree. However, a candidate who fails two or more courses, or who fails any course twice, will need the permission of the Head of School to continue in the programme.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least three trimesters and shall complete the degree within four years of first enrolling in it. The Head of School may extend the maximum period in special cases.

### Substitution of Courses

4. With the approval of the Head of School, a candidate may replace up to four optional courses in Parts 2 or 4 with appropriate postgraduate Honours or Master's courses of at least equivalent value taken at this or another university and not credited to another qualification. However, courses worth at least 90 points must be taken at Victoria University except as permitted under section 2(b). (See Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study statute for the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses.)

### Award of Distinction or Merit

5. The MSS may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Schedule to the MSS Statute

Course	Title	Pts
STRA 501	Strategy: Theory and Policy	15
STRA 502	Strategic Analysis	15
STRA 503	International Political Economy	15
STRA 504	NZ Foreign Policy	15
STRA 505	Strategic and Security Issues in the Asia-Pacific region	15
STRA 506	NZ Defence Policy	15
STRA 507	Conflict Resolution/Peacekeeping	15
STRA 508	Intelligence Policy	15
STRA 509	Terrorism and Counter-Terrorism	15
STRA 510	Special Topic	15
STRA 511	Strategic Thinking	15
STRA 512	National Security Policy	15
STRA 513-14	Approved courses of study	15
STRA 517-18	Projects	15
STRA 519	Research Essay	30
STRA 520	Thesis	90
STRA 521	Internship	15
STRA 522-25	Special Topics	15
STRA 526	Dissertation	60

## PGCertSS and PGDipSS

### Statute for the Postgraduate Certificate in Strategic Studies and the Postgraduate Diploma in Strategic Studies

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGCertSS or PGDipSS shall have
  - (i) completed a New Zealand Bachelor's degree or another degree approved by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration;

- (ii) had two years of relevant work experience (the Head of the School of Government may waive this requirement in special cases); and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

**General Requirements**

2. (a) Except as provided in section 5, the course of study for the PGCertSS shall consist of courses worth 60 points, including
- (i) STRA 501, 502;
  - (ii) two courses from STRA 503-512, 522-525.
- (b) Except as provided in section 5, the course of study for the PGDipSS shall consist of courses worth at least 120 points, including
- (i) STRA 501, 502;
  - (ii) six courses from STRA 503-512, 522-525.
3. (a) A candidate for the PGCertSS shall normally complete the certificate within two years of first enrolling in it.
- (b) A candidate for the PGDipSS shall normally complete the diploma within three years of first enrolling in the certificate or diploma.
- (c) The Head of School may extend the maximum period in (a) or (b) in special cases.
4. A candidate who has been awarded the PGCertSS shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the PGDipSS.

**Substitution of Courses**

5. (a) With the permission of the Head of School, a candidate for the certificate may replace one course with an appropriate postgraduate Honours or Master's course taken at this or another university and not credited to another qualification.
- (b) With the permission of the Head of School, a candidate for the diploma may replace up to two courses with appropriate postgraduate Honours or Master's courses of an equivalent point value taken at this or another university and not credited to another qualification.

**MPA(Exec)****Statute for the Degree of Master of Public Administration  
(Executive)**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MPA(Exec) degree shall have
- (i) completed a Bachelor's degree;
  - (ii) had at least five years of relevant work experience (the Head of the School of Government may waive this requirement in special cases); and

- (iii) been accepted by the Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional, or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (b), the course of study for the MPA(Exec) shall consist of courses worth at least 240 points, including
- Part 1 (Core)**  
PADM 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 507
- Part 2 (Electives)**  
Two courses from PADM 508-511
- Part 3 (Work-based Project)**  
PADM 512.
- (b) With the permission of the Head of School, a candidate who has already completed a course equivalent to PADM 504 and/or PADM 507 may substitute a further elective from PADM 508-511.
- (c) (i) Courses passed at another participating university shall be treated as if they were courses of this University.
- (ii) Candidates shall not obtain credit towards the degree for any course credited to another qualification.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for not less than four trimesters and shall complete the degree within five years of first enrolling in it. The Head of School may extend that maximum period in special cases.

### Award of Distinction or Merit

4. The MPA(Exec) may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Schedule to the MPA(Exec) Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions
PADM 501	Delivering Public Value	24	
PADM 502	Designing Public Policies and Programmes	24	
PADM 503	Choices and Challenges for Government in a Market Economy	24	
PADM 504	Decision Making Under Uncertainty	24	
PADM 505	Governing by the Rules – the Jurisprudence of Governing	24	
PADM 506	Leading Public Sector Change	24	
PADM 507	Financial Management in the Public Sector	24	MMPM 504
PADM 508-11	Approved personal courses of study	24	
PADM 512	Work-based Project	24	

## MComms

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Communications

*Note: This qualification is not open to new students. See the 2005 Calendar for the current statute.*

## MLIS

### Statute for the Master of Library and Information Studies

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MLIS degree shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a university in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Director of Library and Information Management Programmes as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (b) or (c) or in section 5, the course of study for the MLIS shall comprise
  - Part 1:** INFO 520, 521, 523, 525, 527, 528;
  - Part 2:** Four courses from INFO 530-579;
  - Part 3:** INFO 580.
- (b) With the permission of the Director, a candidate who can demonstrate expertise in one or more Part 1 courses may substitute an equivalent number of electives from the list under Part 2.
- (c) With the permission of the Director, a candidate who holds a DipLibr may be granted credit for eight courses of the MLIS. The candidate shall abandon the DipLibr upon being awarded the MLIS.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least three trimesters and shall complete the degree within four years of first enrolling in it. The Director may extend that maximum period in special cases.
4. (a) A candidate who fails any course may be permitted to re-enrol in that course in the following year, or, in special circumstances, at a later time at the discretion of the Associate Dean.
- (b) A candidate who has failed more than one course in any trimester (or in the case of part-time students who has failed more than one course in any two consecutive trimesters) may enrol for subsequent courses only with the permission of the Head of School.

### Substitution of Courses

5. With the permission of the Director, a candidate may replace up to four courses in Part 1 or 2 with an equivalent number of 400/500-level courses offered at this University.

### Award of Distinction or Merit

6. The MLIS may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Transitional Arrangements

7. Any candidate who began their course of study under the MLIS statute in force before 2005 may complete the degree under the present statute with these modifications: INFO/LIBR 522, 524, 526 and 550 may be substituted for INFO 542, 544, 546 and 580, respectively.

### Schedule to the MLIS Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
INFO 520	Information and Society	15	
INFO 521	Management in Information Services	15	
INFO 523	Information Resources and Client Services	15	
INFO 525	Applications of IT in Library and Information Services	15	
INFO 527	Organisation of Knowledge Resources	15	
INFO 528	Research Methods for Information Management Environments	15	
INFO 530	Māori Information Sources	15	
INFO 531	Resources for New Zealand Studies	15	
INFO 532	Health Information	15	
INFO 534	Introduction to Archives Management	15	
INFO 535	Introduction to Records Management	15	
INFO 536	The Art of the Book	15	
INFO 538	Practicum	15	P 60 500-level INFO pts
INFO 539	Services to Children and Young Persons	15	
INFO 540	Preservation Management in Libraries and Archives	15	
INFO 541	Electronic Publishing	15	
INFO 542	Management of Library Services	15	X INFO/LIBR 522
INFO 544	Advanced Reference Services	15	X INFO/LIBR 524
INFO 546	Bibliographic Organisation	15	X INFO/LIBR 526
INFO 547	Digital Libraries	15	
INFO 548	Law Librarianship	15	
INFO 549	Business Information Sources	15	
INFO 551-54	Approved Course of Study	15	P permission of Head of School
INFO 560-61	Special Topics	15	
INFO 580	Research Project	30	P INFO 528; X INFO/LIBR 550

## PGCertArcRec and PGDipArcRec

### **Statute for the Postgraduate Certificate in Archives and Records Management and the Postgraduate Diploma in Archives and Records Management**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute and the statute for the degree of Master of Library and Information Studies.

#### **Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGCertArcRec or the PGDipArcRec shall have
  - (i) completed a New Zealand Bachelor's degree (or equivalent); and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Director of Library and Information Management Programmes as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### **General Requirements**

2. (a) Except as provided in section 5(a), the course of study for the PGCertArcRec shall consist of courses worth 60 points, including
  - (i) INFO 520, 534, 535;
  - (ii) one course from INFO 525, 527, 531, 540, 549.
- (b) Except as provided in section 5(b), the course of study for the PGDipArcRec shall consist of courses worth 120 points, including
  - (i) INFO 520, 521, 527, 534, 535;
  - (ii) three courses from INFO 525, 530, 531, 536, 540, 549.
3. (a) A candidate for the PGCertArcRec shall normally complete the certificate within two years of first enrolling in it.
- (b) A candidate for the PGDipArcRec shall normally complete the diploma within three years of first enrolling for the certificate or the diploma.
- (c) The Director may extend the maximum period in (a) or (b) in special cases.
4. A candidate who has been awarded the PGCertArcRec shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the PGDipArcRec.

#### **Substitution of Courses**

5. (a) With the permission of the Director, a candidate for the PGCertArcRec may replace one course with an appropriate postgraduate Honours or Master's course offered at this or another university.
- (b) With the permission of the Director, a candidate for the PGDipArcRec may replace up to two courses with a corresponding number of appropriate

postgraduate Honours or Master's courses offered at this or another university.

- (c) Any candidate who has completed a 500-level LIBR course may substitute that for the INFO course with the same number.

## MIM

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Information Management

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MIM degree shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree;
  - (ii) had at least three years of relevant work experience at a level acceptable to the MIM Director; and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in sections 4 and 7, the course of study for the MIM shall consist of courses worth at least 180 points, comprising
 

**Part 1:** MMIM 501, 502, 503

**Part 2:** MMIM 590 or 592

**Part 3:** Electives from the MIM schedule.
- (b) A candidate who has failed any course on two occasions may re-enrol for the degree only with the permission of the Director.
3. A candidate shall normally complete the degree within four years of first enrolling in it. The Director may extend this period in special cases.
4. (a) A candidate who has completed the equivalent of Part 1 for another postgraduate qualification may be exempted from Part 1.
- (b) A candidate who has passed up to three courses listed in Column 1 below may credit those passes to the MIM degree with exemptions from the corresponding courses in Column 2.

*Column 1*

GBGM 806 (or MMBA 507 or MMPM 507)  
 INFO 861  
 INFO 862  
 INFO 863  
 INFO 864

*Column 2*

MMIM 501  
 MMIM 511  
 MMIM 513  
 MMIM 512  
 MMIM 510

INFO 865	MMIM 571
INFO 866 (or MMBA 574 in 2001)	MMIM 520
INFO 868	MMIM 590
INFO 869	MMIM 592

5. (a) A candidate who has completed a Postgraduate Diploma in Information Systems Management may credit to the MIM degree all passes in courses listed in Column 1 of the table in section 4 with exemptions from the corresponding courses in Column 2.
- (b) A candidate who has completed a PGDipIM shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the MIM.

### Specialisations

6. A candidate may complete an MIM without a specialisation or elect a specialisation by including in Part 3 courses as shown below:

#### Communications

Four or more courses from MMIM 511, 524, 541, 542, 551-554.

#### e-Business

- (a) MMIM 520;  
 (b) three courses from MMIM 521-524, 580.

#### Information Systems

- (a) MMIM 510;  
 (b) three courses from MMIM 511-514, 580.

#### Information Services

- (a) MMIM 530;  
 (b) three courses from (MMIM 531-534, 580, INFO 532, 534, 535, 549).

### Substitution of Courses

7. With the permission of the Director, a candidate may replace up to three courses in Parts 1 or 3 with substitute courses selected from those prescribed for postgraduate Honours or Master's degrees at this University. (See the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses in Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.)
8. Candidates enrolled in the MComms degree in or before 2004 will be permitted to transfer to the MIM degree, crediting the courses shown in column 1 below to the MIM in place of those shown in column 2:

<i>Column 1</i>	<i>Column 2</i>
COMM 501 and 502	MMIM 501, 511 and 551
COMM 503 and 504	MMIM 502, 522 and 552
COMM 505 and any of 506-509 or 517	MMIM 503, 553 and 580

### Award of Distinction or Merit

9. The MIM may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Schedule to the MIM Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
MMIM 501	Information Systems and Technologies	15	X GBGM 806, MMBA 507, MMPM 507
MMIM 502	Managing in the Information Age	15	
MMIM 503	Knowledge Management	15	
MMIM 510	Information Systems Management	15	X INFO 864
MMIM 511	Emerging Information Technologies	15	X INFO 861
MMIM 512	Strategic Information Management	15	X INFO 863
MMIM 513	Managing IT-related Change	15	X INFO 862
MMIM 514	Management of Information Systems Projects	15	
MMIM 520	Managing e-Business	15	X INFO 866; MMBA 574 in 2001
MMIM 521	Strategy and the e-Enterprise	15	
MMIM 522	ICT and Global Commerce	15	X COMM 503
MMIM 523	Cyberspace Marketing	15	
MMIM 524	Multimedia Tools and Technologies	15	
MMIM 530	Knowledge Organisation and Discovery	15	
MMIM 531	Building Digital Collections	15	
MMIM 532	Information Policy	15	
MMIM 533	Document Management	15	
MMIM 534	Web and Intranet Content Management	15	
MMIM 541	Cross-cultural Information Management	15	
MMIM 542	Organisational Communication	15	
MMIM 551	Introduction to Communications Theory	15	X COMM 501
MMIM 552	Research Methods	15	X COMM 504
MMIM 553	Communication and Design	15	X COMM 505
MMIM 554	Education Business	15	X COMM 506 from 1998
MMIM 571	Legal and Ethical Issues in Information Management	15	X INFO 865
MMIM 580-82	Special Topics in Information Management	15	
MMIM 590	Case Study in Information Management	30	
MMIM 592	Research Project in Information Management	30	P INFO 403 or INFO/LIBR 528

## PGCertIM and PGDipIM

### Statute for the Postgraduate Certificate in Information Management and the Postgraduate Diploma in Information Management

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGCertIM or the PGDipIM shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree; and
  - (ii) had at least three years of relevant work experience at a level acceptable to the MIM Director; and

- (iii) been accepted by the Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as permitted in section 7, the course of study for the PGCertIM shall comprise MMIM 501, 502, 503.
- (b) The course of study for the PGDipIM shall consist of courses worth 120 points, including
- (i) Part 1 of the MIM as specified in section 2 of the MIM statute;
- (ii) electives worth 75 points from the MIM schedule.
3. (a) A candidate for the PGCertIM shall normally complete the certificate within two years of first enrolling in it.
- (b) A candidate for the PGDipIM shall normally complete the diploma within three years of first enrolling for the certificate or the diploma.
- (c) The Director may extend the maximum period in (a) or (b) in special cases.
4. A candidate who has been awarded the PGCertIM shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the PGDipIM.

### Specialisations

5. A candidate for the PGDipIM may elect a specialisation by including courses as shown below:

#### Communications

Four or more courses from MMIM 511, 524, 541, 542, 551-554

#### e-Business

MMIM 520; three courses from MMIM 521-524, 580

#### Information Systems

MMIM 510; three courses from MMIM 511-514, 580

#### Information Services

MMIM 530; three courses from (MMIM 531-534, 580, INFO 532, 534, 535, 549).

6. Candidates enrolled in the MComms degree in or before 2004 will be permitted to transfer to the PGDipIM, crediting the courses shown in column 1 below to the PGDipIM in place of those shown in column 2:

#### Column 1

COMM 501 and 502  
 COMM 503 and 504  
 COMM 505 and any of 506-509 or 517

#### Column 2

MMIM 501, 511 and 551  
 MMIM 502, 522 and 552  
 MMIM 503, 553 and 580

## MBA

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Business Administration

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MBA degree shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree;
  - (ii) been accepted by the MBA Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (b) or in sections 4 and 5, the course of study for the MBA shall consist of six days of programmed skills workshops and courses worth 240 points, including
    - Part 1:** MMBA 502, 503, 505, 507, 508, 509
    - Part 2:** MMBA 516, 518, 519, 520
    - Part 3:** MMBA 534
    - Part 4:** Five further approved courses from MMBA 531-599.
  - (b) A candidate who has passed for another qualification a course or courses approved by the Director as equivalent to any of those prescribed for Parts 1 and 2 may substitute further electives from MMBA 531-599.
  - (c) To enrol in Part 3 or 4 a candidate must normally either have completed Parts 1 and 2 or be concurrently enrolled to do so.
  - (d) A failure in one course shall not prevent a candidate being awarded the degree. However, a candidate who fails two or more courses in any one trimester or who has failed any course on two occasions will need the permission of the Director to re-enrol.
  - (e) A candidate who has been awarded the Postgraduate Diploma in Human Resource Management (after 2003), the Certificate in Management Studies or the Postgraduate Diploma in Business Administration shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded an MBA.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least four trimesters of full-time study or three years of part-time study, and shall complete the degree within four years of first enrolling in it. The Director may extend the maximum period in special cases.
  4. A candidate who has passed any of the courses listed in column 1 below may credit the points to the MBA degree and receive exemptions from the corresponding courses in column 2.

<i>Column 1</i>	<i>Column 2</i>
CMSP 801 or GBGM 804	MMBA 508
CMSP 802 or GBGM 805	MMBA 505
CMSP 803 or GDBA 822	MMBA 518
CMSP 804 or GDBA 823	MMBA 520
CMSP 805 or GDBA 831	MMBA 519
GDBA 824	MMBA 531
GDBA 832	MMBA 535
GDBA 833	MMBA 559
GDBA 834	MMBA 534

### Substitution of Courses

5. With the approval of the Director, a candidate may replace up to three Part 4 courses with relevant postgraduate courses of equivalent standard. (See the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses in Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.)

### Award of Distinction or Merit

6. The MBA may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Schedule to the MBA Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions
MMBA 502	Commercial Law	15	
MMBA 503	Economics, Organisation and Markets	15	GBGM 803
MMBA 505	Organisational Behaviour	15	GBGM 805
MMBA 507	Information Systems	15	GBGM 806
MMBA 508	Problem Solving and Decision Making	15	GBGM 804
MMBA 509	Accounting for Managers	15	GBGM 801, MMBA 501
MMBA 516	Corporate Finance	15	MMBA 517
MMBA 518	Marketing Management	15	GDBA 822
MMBA 519	Human Resource Management	15	GDBA 831
MMBA 520	Operations and Services Management	15	GDBA 823
MMBA 531	An Introduction to Research in Business	15	
MMBA 532	A Business Research Paper or Project	15	
MMBA 533	Business Environment	15	
MMBA 534	Strategic Management	15	GDBA 834
MMBA 535	Advanced Strategic Management	15	
MMBA 540	Asia Business Environment	15	
MMBA 541	Strategic Modelling	15	
MMBA 545	Creative Leadership	15	
MMBA 546	Cross Cultural Management	15	
MMBA 547	Management Skills	15	
MMBA 548	Advanced Human Behaviour	15	
MMBA 549	Systems Thinking and Creative Problem Solving	15	
MMBA 551	Strategic Cost Accounting	15	
MMBA 553	Project Management	15	

**Schedule to the MBA Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions
MMBA 555	Marketing Communication	15	
MMBA 556	Financial Statement Analysis	15	
MMBA 558	International Business	15	
MMBA 559	Managing Service Operations	15	GDBA 833
MMBA 560	Leading Change	15	
MMBA 561	Strategic/ International Human Resource Management	15	
MMBA 562	Managing Employment Relations	15	GDBA 821
MMBA 563	Business Decision Systems	15	
MMBA 565	Innovation and Entrepreneurship	15	
MMBA 570	Marketing Strategy	15	
MMBA 571-79	Special Topics	15	
MMBA 581	Applied Commercial Law	15	MMBA 601

**IMBA****Statute for the Degree of International Master of Business Administration**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the IMBA degree shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the MBA Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has
  - (i) had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind; or
  - (ii) completed at an overseas tertiary institution a business studies qualification judged by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration to be equivalent to a postgraduate diploma offered by this University.

**General Requirements**

2. (a) Except as provided in (b) or (c) or in section 4, the course of study for the IMBA degree shall consist of courses worth 240 points, including
  - Part 1:** IMBA 502, 503, 505, 507, 508, 509
  - Part 2:** IMBA 516, 518, 519, 520
  - Part 3:** IMBA 534
  - Part 4:** Five further approved courses from IMBA 531-599.

- (b) A candidate may, with the approval of the Director, replace up to five of the courses in Parts 1-3 with correspondingly numbered courses from the MBA Schedule
  - (c) With the approval of the Director, a candidate who has completed a qualification as specified in section 1(b)(ii) may be credited with up to 90 points towards the IMBA degree and given appropriate exemptions from courses listed in (a).
  - (d) To enrol in Part 3 or 4 a candidate must normally either have completed Parts 1 and 2 or be concurrently enrolled to do so.
  - (e) A failure in one course shall not prevent a candidate being awarded the degree. However, a candidate who fails two or more courses in any one teaching period or who has failed any course on two occasions will need the permission of the Director to re-enrol.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least four trimesters of full-time study or three years of part-time study, and shall complete the requirements of the degree within one continuous programme cycle of course offerings unless otherwise permitted by the Director.

#### **Substitution of Courses**

4. A candidate may, with the approval of the Director, replace up to three of the courses in Part 4 with relevant courses offered by this University or other institutions at graduate level and accepted by the Director as being of equivalent standard. (See the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses in Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.)

#### **Award of Distinction or Merit**

5. The IMBA may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Schedule to the IMBA Statute**

Course	Title	Pts
IMBA 502	International Business Law	15
IMBA 503	Economics, Global Organisations and International Markets	15
IMBA 505	Organisational Behaviour – Cross-Cultural Perspectives	15
IMBA 507	Information Systems within Global Networks	15
IMBA 508	Multiple Perspectives in Management Decision Making	15
IMBA 509	International Financial and Management Accounting	15
IMBA 516	Financial Management – an International Perspective	15
IMBA 518	Marketing Management in a Global Business Environment	15
IMBA 519	Human Resource Management in International Business	15
IMBA 520	Operations Management for Global Competitive Advantage	15
IMBA 531	An Introduction to Research in Business	15
IMBA 532	A Business Research Paper or Project	15
IMBA 533	Business Environment	15
IMBA 534	Strategic Management	15
IMBA 535	Advanced Strategic Management	15

**Schedule to the IMBA Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts
IMBA 540	Asia Business Environment	15
IMBA 541	Strategic Modelling	15
IMBA 545	Creative Leadership	15
IMBA 546	Cross-cultural Management	15
IMBA 547	Management Skills	15
IMBA 548	Advanced Human Behaviour	15
IMBA 549	Systems Thinking and Creative Problem Solving	15
IMBA 551	Management Accounting and Control Systems	15
IMBA 552	International Accounting/ Financial Management	15
IMBA 553	Project Management	15
IMBA 555	Marketing Communication	15
IMBA 557	International Marketing	15
IMBA 558	International Business	15
IMBA 559	Managing Service Operations	15
IMBA 560	Leading Change	15
IMBA 561	Strategic / International Human Resources Management	15
IMBA 562	Managing Employment Relations	15
IMBA 563	Business Decision Systems	15
IMBA 565	Innovation and Entrepreneurship	15
IMBA 570	Marketing Strategy	15
IMBA 571-79	Special Topics	15
IMBA 581	Advanced Business Law	15

**CertMS, PGDipBusAdmin and PGDipHRM****Statute for the Certificate in Management Studies, the Postgraduate Diploma in Business Administration and the Postgraduate Diploma in Human Resource Management**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute and the statute for the MBA degree.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the CertMS shall have
  - (i) had at least three years of practical experience in management or administration at a level acceptable to the Programme Director; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Programme Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGDipBusAdmin or the PGDipHRM shall have
  - (i) completed a degree or postgraduate diploma from a New Zealand university, or the CertMS;
  - (ii) had at least three years of practical experience in management or administration at a level acceptable to the Programme Director; and

- (iii) been accepted by the Programme Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (c) Requirement (b)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (b),
- (i) the course of study for the CertMS shall consist of courses worth 60 points, including CMSP 801, 802, 803 and either CMSP 804 or 805;
  - (ii) the course of study for the PGDipBusAdmin shall consist of courses worth 120 points, including MMBA 503, 505, 507, 508, 509, 518, 520, 534;
  - (iii) the course of study for the PGDipHRM shall consist of courses worth 120 points, including MMBA 505, 508, 509, 518, 519, 560, 561, 562.
- (b) (i) A candidate who has passed but not credited to another qualification any of the courses listed in column 1 below may credit those to the CertMS in place of the corresponding courses in column 2:
- | <i>Column 1</i> | <i>Column 2</i> |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| GBGM 804        | CMSP 801        |
| GBGM 805        | CMSP 802        |
| GDBA 822        | CMSP 803        |
| GDBA 823        | CMSP 804        |
| GDBA 831        | CMSP 805        |
- (ii) A candidate who has passed but not credited to another qualification any of the courses listed in column 1 below may credit those passes to the PGDipBusAdmin or PGDipHRM in place of the corresponding courses in column 2:
- | <i>Column 1</i>      | <i>Column 2</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| CMSP 801 or GBGM 804 | MMBA 508        |
| CMSP 802 or GBGM 805 | MMBA 505        |
| CMSP 803 or GDBA 822 | MMBA 518        |
| CMSP 804 or GDBA 823 | MMBA 520        |
| CMSP 805 or GDBA 831 | MMBA 519        |
| GBGM 803             | MMBA 503        |
| GBGM 804             | MMBA 508        |
| GBGM 806             | MMBA 507        |
| GDBA 821             | MMBA 562        |
- (c) A candidate who holds a Diploma in Business Administration or Human Resource Management under the 1993-97 statutes and abandons it may be awarded the corresponding Postgraduate Diploma.
3. (a) A candidate for the CertMS shall normally complete it within two years of first enrolment.
- (b) A candidate for the PGDipBusAdmin or the PGDipHRM shall normally complete it within three years of first enrolling in either diploma or the CertMS.

- (c) The Programme Director may extend the maximum period in (a) or (b) in special cases.
4. A candidate who has been awarded the CertMS shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the PGDipBusAdmin or PGDipHRM.

## CertExecDev

### Statute for the Certificate in Executive Development

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the CertExecDev shall have
  - (i) had at least three years of relevant work experience; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of Victoria Management School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived if the Head of School is satisfied that the candidate is likely to benefit from the course of study.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) The course of study for the CertExecDev shall consist of courses worth at least 60 points from EXEC 801-849, including
    - (i) at least 12 points from EXEC 801-829;
    - (ii) at least 32 points from EXEC 830-849.
  - (b) A candidate shall not offer for the CertExecDev two courses which, in the opinion of the Head of School, are substantially equivalent.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the certificate within four years of first enrolling in it. The Head of School may extend that maximum period in special cases.

#### Schedule to the CertExecDev Statute

Course	Title	Pts
EXEC 801	Employment Legislation	4
EXEC 802	Finance for Non-Financial Managers	4
EXEC 803	Leadership	4
EXEC 804	Managing Information Technology for Strategic Advantage	4
EXEC 805	Managing People Performance	4
EXEC 806	Negotiating and Influencing Skills for Managers	4
EXEC 807	Occupational Safety and Health - Aspects of legislative compliance	4
EXEC 808	Risk Management in the Public Sector	4
EXEC 809-19	Special Topics	4
EXEC 830	Managerial Problem Solving and Decision Making	8
EXEC 831	Managing Strategic Alliances	8
EXEC 832	Marketing Strategy and Planning	8
EXEC 833	Project Management	8
EXEC 834-39	Special Topics	8

## MMS

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Management Studies

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MMS degree shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a university in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the MMS Programme Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.
- (c) Entry to MMMS 591 for Part 2 is at the discretion of the Programme Director and normally requires a B+ pass or better in MMMS 530.

#### General Requirements

2. Except as provided in section 6, the course of study for the MMS shall comprise
  - Part 1*
    - (a) MMMS 505, 511, 512, 514, 530;
    - (b) three further courses from MMMS 500-589 or MGMT 400-489;
  - Part 2*

Either a Master's thesis, MMMS 591, or 120 points from two of

    - (a) 60 points from further courses listed under Part 1(b);
    - (b) MMMS 595;
    - (c) MMMS 596.
3. (a) A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least four trimesters and shall complete the degree within four years of first enrolling in it.
  - (b) (i) MMMS 595 and 596 shall each be completed in at most two trimesters.
  - (ii) MMMS 591 shall normally be completed in at least two and not more than four trimesters.
  - (iii) The Programme Director may extend the maximum periods in (i) and (ii) in special cases.
4. Study for the research practicum MMMS 596 shall be carried out in an organisation approved by the Programme Director.
5. A candidate who has failed more than one course by the end of the first trimester (or, in the case of part-time students, who has failed more than one course by the end of the first two trimesters) may re-enrol for the MMS only with the permission of the Programme Director.

#### Substitution of Courses

6. With the permission of the Programme Director, a candidate may replace up to two optional courses in Part 1 or any of the courses in Part 2(a) with approved substitutes of an equivalent points value.

**Award of Distinction or Merit**

7. The MMS may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Schedule to the MMS Statute**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
MMMS 502	Strategic Management of Technology	15	
MMMS 503	Emerging Technologies	15	
MMMS 504	Quality Management	15	
MMMS 505	Research Methods	15	
MMMS 506	Technology Management and Government Policy	15	
MMMS 507-08	Special Topics	15	
MMMS 509	Management of Technological Projects	15	X MMMS 501
MMMS 511	Managerial Decision Processes	15	
MMMS 512	Organisation Dynamics	15	
MMMS 514	Strategic Management	15	
MMMS 521	Policy Modelling	15	
MMMS 522	Problem Structuring Methodologies	15	
MMMS 530	Research Paper	15	P MMMS 505
MMMS 591	Thesis	120	P B+ pass in MMMS 530
MMMS 595	Research Project	60	
MMMS 596	Research Practicum	60	

**MMgt****Statute for the Degree of Master of Management**

*Note: This qualification will not be offered to new students from 2006. See the 2005 Calendar for the current statute.*

**CertMBus****Statute for the Certificate in Māori Business**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

- Before enrolment, a candidate for the CertMBus shall have been accepted by the Associate Dean (Undergraduate Students) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration as having sufficient education and experience to proceed with the proposed course of study and as being likely to benefit from the course of study.

**General Requirements**

- (a) Except as provided in section 4, the course of study for the CertMBus shall comprise
  - MGMT 101, MAOR 123, MBUS 201, 202, 203;

- (ii) one course from ACCY 111, ECON 130, INFO 101, COMM 101, MARK 101, MAOR 101, 102, 121, 122, 124, or another course approved by the Associate Dean.
  - (b) A candidate who has been awarded the CertMBus may credit up to 44 points towards the BCA degree.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters of full-time study or the part-time equivalent.

#### **Substitution of Courses**

4. A candidate who has passed a course regarded by the Associate Dean as substantially equivalent to any of the courses listed in section 2(a) may substitute another approved course at the same level.

## **BTM**

### **Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Tourism Management**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statutes.

#### **General Requirements**

1. (a) The personal course of study of a candidate for the BTM degree shall, except as provided in section 2 below and the Credit Transfer Statute, consist of courses from the BTM schedule and the schedules of any other first degree of this University. The total points value shall be at least 360, of which
- (i) at least 204 points shall be for courses numbered 200-399; and
  - (ii) at least 72 points shall be for courses numbered 300-399, with at least 48 of those selected from the BTM schedule.
- (b) Every personal course of study shall include
- Part 1**
- (i) TOUR 101, 104, 108, 110;
  - (ii) TOUR 230, 240, 250;
  - (iii) two courses from TOUR 300-399.
- Part 2**
- (i) Three courses from ACCY 111, ECON 113 or 130, INFO 101, MARK 101, MGMT 101, QUAN 102;
  - (ii) one course from ACCY 211, COML 203, HRIR 201, MARK 204, MGMT 202, QUAN 201.
- Part 3**
- At least 102 points, including at least 24 at 300 level, in further courses selected from the BCA or BTM schedules.
- (c) At the discretion of the Director of Undergraduate Tourism Studies, a candidate who has previously completed a period of industry experience may be exempted from the Tourism Practicum (TOUR 110). In any such case the candidate shall substitute an approved course of at least equivalent point value.

**Cross-crediting**

2. At the discretion of the Associate Dean,
- a candidate completing a BTM degree combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;
  - a candidate completing a BTM degree combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the BTM and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of section 1 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Schedule to the BTM Statute****Part A**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C), Restrictions (X)
ACCY 111	Accountancy	18	
ACCY 211	Accounting for Tourism	22	P ACCY 111
COML 203	Legal Environment of Business	22	P 18 pts; X LAWS 101, two of LAWS 121-123
ECON 130	Economic Principles and Issues	18	X ECON 102, (110 and 120), 113
HRIR 201	Managing Human Resources	22	P MGMT 101 or 36 pts from the BA, BCA or BTM schedules; X INRC 202, 211, MGMT 305
INFO 101	Foundations of Information Systems	18	X INFO 211
MARK 101	Introduction to Marketing	18	X MARK 151, 201
MARK 204	Tourism Marketing	22	P MARK 101 (or 151 or 201); X MARK 312
MGMT 101	Introduction to Management	18	X MGMT 201
MGMT 202	Organisational Behaviour	22	P MGMT 101, 36 pts
QUAN 102	Statistics for Business	18	X STAT 193
QUAN 201	Introduction to Econometrics	22	P 18 100-level ECON pts, QUAN 102 (or STAT 131 or 193), QUAN 111 (or 103 or one of MATH 103-114)
TOUR 101	Introduction to Tourism	18	
TOUR 104	Business Environment of Tourism	18	C TOUR 101
TOUR 108	Tourism in New Zealand	18	X TOUR 107
TOUR 110	Tourism Practicum	14	P TOUR 101, 104, 108 (or 107), at least 44 200/300-level TOUR pts
TOUR 230	Visitor Management	22	P 36 TOUR pts
TOUR 240	Principles of Tourism Management	22	P 36 TOUR pts
TOUR 250	Managing Visitor Impacts	22	P 36 TOUR pts
TOUR 301	Tourism Planning and Policy	24	P TOUR 240 (or 220), 22 200-level TOUR pts
TOUR 345	Tourist Behaviour	24	P TOUR 240 (or 220), 22 200-level TOUR pts

**Schedule to the BTM Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C), Restrictions (X)
TOUR 370	Special Topic	24	P 44 200-level TOUR pts
TOUR 380	Tourism Research	24	P TOUR 240 (or 220), 22 200-level TOUR pts
TOUR 390	Applied Tourism Management	24	P TOUR 240 (or 220), 22 200-level TOUR pts

**Part B**

Courses in the following subjects from the BA schedule:

ANTH, ASIA, CHIN, DEAF, ENVI, EURO, FREN, GEOG, GERM, HIST, ITAL, JAPA, KORE, MAOR, PASI, POLS, SAMO, SPAN

or other approved courses from that schedule.

**BTM(Hons)****Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Tourism Management with Honours**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. Before enrolment, a candidate for the BTM(Hons) degree shall have
  - (a) completed a BTM degree or, at the discretion of the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration, another degree including material similar to that constituting a BTM, or a GDipCom with a specialisation in Tourism Management; and
  - (b) been accepted by the Head of Victoria Management School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.

**General Requirements**

2. A candidate shall normally be enrolled full-time for two trimesters, or up to four trimesters if part-time.
3. (a) The course of study for the BTM(Hons) shall be Part 1 of the MTM degree, with such substitutions as may be approved under section 5 of the MTM statute.
  - (b) A candidate who is enrolled in the MTM and has met the requirements for Part 1 of that degree, may be awarded a BTM(Hons) in place of the MTM. For the purpose of this statute such a candidate shall be deemed to have commenced a course of study for BTM(Hons) when first enrolling in the MTM.

### Award of Honours

4. A candidate shall become eligible for the award of Honours by completing the requirements for the BTM(Hons) within one year of first enrolment for the degree; this period may be extended pro rata up to a maximum of two years for part-time students. (See sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions covering the award of Honours.)

## MTM

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Tourism Management

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MTM degree shall have
  - (i) completed a BTM or BTM(Hons), or, at the discretion of the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration, another degree including material similar to that constituting a BTM or BTM(Hons), or a GDipCom with a specialisation in Tourism Management; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of Victoria Management School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.
2. A candidate enrolled in a BTM(Hons) who has not yet been awarded that degree may transfer to the MTM at any date. Such a candidate shall be deemed to have commenced the MTM on the date of first enrolment for the BTM(Hons).

#### General Requirements

3. (a) Except as provided in (c) and in section 6, the course of study for MTM shall consist of courses worth at least 240 points, including

##### Part 1

- (i) TOUR 401, 402, 410;
- (ii) at least two further courses from TOUR 403-419;
- (iii) further courses selected from ACCY 401-413, COML 401-405, ECON 401-419, HRIR 401-402, MARK 401-406, MGMT 401, MOFI 401-489, PUBL 402-415, and other approved honours courses in relevant disciplines within Victoria University, to make a total of 120 points for Part 1;

##### Part 2

Thesis (TOUR 591).

- (b) Except as provided in (c), Part 1 shall be completed at a B level or better before a candidate enters Part 2.

- (c) At the discretion of the Head of School, a candidate who has completed a BTM(Hons) at a B level or better or who has substantial professional or scholarly experience may omit Part 1 and be admitted directly to Part 2.
- (d) A candidate enrolled in the MTM who has met the Part 1 requirements but is not continuing on to Part 2 may be awarded a BTM(Hons) in place of the MTM.
4. A candidate shall normally be enrolled in Part 1 for two trimesters and shall normally present the thesis within one year of first enrolling in Part 2. The Associate Dean may extend the maximum period for Part 2 in special cases.

#### Substitution of Courses

5. A candidate may, with the approval of the Head of School, replace up to four elective courses in Part 1 with approved postgraduate courses of at least the equivalent points value. (See the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses in Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.)

#### Award of Honours, Distinction or Merit

6. The MTM may be awarded with Honours, or with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19-21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.
- (a) A candidate shall become eligible for the award of Honours by completing the requirements for both Parts 1 and 2 within two years of first enrolling for Part 1 or the BTM(Hons); this period may be extended pro rata up to a maximum of four years for part-time students.
- (b) A candidate admitted directly to Part 2 shall become eligible for the award of Distinction or Merit by completing the thesis within one year of first enrolling in Part 2.

#### Schedule to the MTM Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Restrictions (X)
TOUR 401	Recent Advances in Tourism	15	P 24 300-level TOUR pts or approved substitute
TOUR 402	Tourism Research Methods	15	P 24 300-level TOUR pts or approved substitute
TOUR 403	Consumer Perspectives in Tourism	15	P TOUR 345 or approved substitute
TOUR 404	Resource Management for Tourism	15	P TOUR 370 or approved substitute
TOUR 405	Tourism and International Development	15	P 24 300-level TOUR pts or approved substitute
TOUR 406	Managing the Tourism Workforce	15	P 24 300-level TOUR pts
TOUR 407	Special Topic	15	P 24 300-level TOUR pts
TOUR 408	Tourism: Integration and Globalisation	15	P 24 300-level TOUR pts; X TOUR 406 in 2000
TOUR 409	Strategy and Tourism Organisation in the Global Economy	15	P 24 300-level TOUR pts
TOUR 410	Dissertation	15	P TOUR 402
TOUR 411	Special Topic	15	P 24 300-level TOUR pts
TOUR 591	Thesis	120	

## PGDipMkt

### Statute for the Postgraduate Diploma in Marketing

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute and the MBA and MIM Statutes.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGDipMkt shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree or a postgraduate diploma from a New Zealand university or the CertMS;
  - (ii) had at least three years of practical experience in management, sales or marketing at a level acceptable to the Programme Director; and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Programme Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies and Research) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (b) or (c) or section 5, the course of study for the diploma shall consist of courses worth 120 points, including
 

**Part 1:** MMBA 505, 508, 509, 518, 520, 555, 570;

**Part 2:** one further course from (MMBA 557-558, MMIM 523).
  - (b) Any course listed in column 1 below and not credited to a qualification other than the CertMS may be credited to the diploma in place of the corresponding course in column 2:
 

<i>Column 1</i>	<i>Column 2</i>
CMSP 801 or GBGM 804	MMBA 508
CMSP 802 or GBGM 805	MMBA 505
CMSP 803 or GDBA 822	MMBA 518
CMSP 804 or GDBA 823	MMBA 520
  - (c) A candidate who has passed any courses which are identical or substantially equivalent to any Part 1 courses may substitute other approved postgraduate courses.
3. A candidate for the diploma shall normally complete it within three years of first enrolling in it or the CertMS. The Programme Director may extend this maximum period in special cases.
  4. A candidate who has been awarded the CertMS shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the diploma.

#### Substitution of courses

5. With the approval of the Programme Director, a candidate may replace the Part 2 course with an approved postgraduate course offered by this University or other institutions and not credited to another qualification.

*Note:* See the Schedule to the MBA Statute for course details.

## Faculty of Education

### BTeach (Conjoint)

#### Statutes for the Conjoint Bachelor of Teaching Programmes

*Note: These statutes facilitate the study of the BTeach degree in combination with the BCA, BA and BSc, enabling students who complete a conjoint programme to graduate with both degrees. The BTeach degree is not offered separately. For details of each conjoint BTeach programme, see statutes as shown under the Faculty of Commerce, the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences and the Faculty of Science respectively. The following Schedule for the BTeach degree applies to all three conjoint programmes.*

#### BTeach Schedule

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites
CUST 131	Principles of Literacy and Numeracy	18	
CUST 132	Teaching Health and Physical Education	18	
CUST 133	Curriculum Content for Primary Teaching	18	
CUST 134	Teaching the Arts	9	CUST 133
CUST 135	Teaching Technology	9	CUST 133
CUST 153	Extension Studies for Secondary Teachers	18	
CUST 231	Literacy	11	CUST 131
CUST 232	Numeracy	11	CUST 131
CUST 233	Teaching Science and the Social Sciences	22	CUST 133
CUST 251	English Curriculum Study 1	18	
CUST 252	Languages Other than English Curriculum Study 1	18	
CUST 253	Mathematics Curriculum Study 1	18	
CUST 254	Music Curriculum Study 1	18	
CUST 255	Performing Arts Curriculum Study 1	18	
CUST 256	Science Curriculum Study 1	18	
CUST 257	Social Sciences Curriculum Study 1	18	
CUST 258	Technology Curriculum Study 1	18	
CUST 259	Visual Arts Curriculum Study 1	18	
CUST 331	Teaching English	12	CUST 133, 231
CUST 332	Teaching Mathematics	12	CUST 133, 232
CUST 351	English Curriculum Study 2	24	CUST 251 or 331
CUST 352	Languages Other than English Curriculum Study 2	24	CUST 252
CUST 353	Mathematics Curriculum Study 2	24	CUST 253 or 332
CUST 354	Music Curriculum Study 2	24	CUST 254
CUST 355	Performing Arts Curriculum Study 2	24	CUST 255
CUST 356	Science Curriculum Study 2	24	CUST 256 or 233
CUST 357	Social Sciences Curriculum Study 2	24	CUST 257 or 233
CUST 358	Technology Curriculum Study 2	24	CUST 258 or 135
CUST 359	Visual Arts Curriculum Study 2	24	CUST 259
TEAP 131	Teaching – What's it all about?	18	
TEAP 132	Building New Learning Communities in New Zealand	18	TEAP 131

**BTeach Schedule (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites
TEAP 231	Teaching and Learning for Success	22	TEAP 131
TEAP 232	The Learner at the Centre of Teaching	22	TEAP 231
TEAP 253	Managing Adolescents in a Secondary School Classroom	22	TEAP 232
TEAP 331	Becoming a Skilled Professional	24	TEAP 232

**Conjoint BA/BTeach(ECE)****Statute for the Conjoint Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Teaching (Early Childhood Education) Programme**

*Note: This statute facilitates the study of the BA and BTeach(ECE) degrees in combination. Students completing the conjoint programme graduate with both degrees. The BTeach(ECE) degree is not offered separately. For details of the conjoint programme, refer to statutes under the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences.*

**BEd(Tchg)EC****Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Education (Teaching) Early Childhood**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

- To enter the BEd(Tchg)EC degree, a candidate must meet entry requirements, which include the good character and fitness to teach requirements of the NZ Teachers Council.

*Note: Students are required to familiarise themselves with the College of Education's policies on Ethical Behaviour and Suspension, Student Review and Cancellation of Enrolment.*

**General Requirements**

- (a) Except as provided in section 3 below and the Credit Transfer Statute, the personal course of study of a candidate shall consist of courses from the BEd(Tchg)EC schedule and the schedules to other first degrees of this University having a total value of at least 360 points, of which at least 222 points shall be for courses numbered 200-399.
- (b) The personal course of study of each candidate shall include

**Part 1: Education Studies**

EDUC 153, 154, 253, 355, 356

**Part 2: Curriculum Knowledge and Practice**

At least 60 points from CUST 110-129, at least 80 points from CUST 210-229 and at least 20 points from CUST 310-329

*Note: THEO 302 from Wellington College of Education will be accepted as a substitute for CUST 311.*

**Part 3: Teaching and Professional Studies**

At least 20 points from TEAP 110-129, and at least 60 points from TEAP 210-329 including at least 30 points from TEAP 300-399

**Part 4: Personal Studies**

At least one elective course selected from the schedule to any first degree.

- (c) A candidate shall normally complete the requirements for the BEd(Tchg)EC within six years of first enrolling in it. The Programme Director or the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences may extend this period in special cases.
3. (a) A candidate who holds registration as a teacher and has been awarded a Diploma of Teaching (ECE) from any of the following institutions:  
 Auckland College of Education; Christchurch College of Education; Dunedin College of Education; Hamilton Teachers' College; Massey University College of Education; Palmerston North College of Education; University of Waikato; Wellington College of Education  
 may enrol for the BEd(Tchg)EC and be credited with up to 240 points at 100 and 200-level in Parts 1-4 as determined by the Associate Dean. Students who have completed a course equivalent to EDUC 355 may be credited with 20 EDUC points at 300-level as part of the 240 points.
- (b) A candidate who holds registration as a teacher and who has been awarded a 2-year Kindergarten Diploma of Teaching may enrol for the BEd(Tchg)EC and be credited with CUST 111, 112, TEAP 112, 113, 212, 213 and such additional specified or unspecified credit at 100 and 200-level, as the Associate Dean may determine, up to a total of 200 points.
- (c) A candidate who holds registration as a teacher and who has been awarded an NZQA-accredited ECE qualification equivalent to the Diploma of Teaching (EC), or a Diploma of Teaching (ECE) from a New Zealand institution other than those listed in (a) above before the year 2000, may be credited with CUST 111, 112, TEAP 112, 113, 212, 213 and such additional specified and unspecified credits at 100 and 200-level, as the Associate Dean may determine, up to a total of 180 points.
- (d) A candidate who holds registration as a teacher and who has been awarded a Diploma of Teaching (ECE) from a New Zealand institution other than those listed in (a) above in the year 2000 or later, may be credited with CUST 111, 112, TEAP 112, 113, 212, 213 and such additional specified or unspecified credits at 100 and 200-level, as the Associate Dean may determine, up to a total of 220 points.
- (e) With the approval of the Head of the School of Early Childhood Teacher Education, a candidate who has completed, with a B+ average or better, the normal Year 1 for (i) the Diploma of Teaching (Early Childhood Education) or (ii) the Diploma of Teaching (Early Childhood Education) Whāriki Papatipu may enter the BEd(Tchg)EC.
- (f) A candidate admitted under section 3(e)(i) above may transfer CUSE 101/THEO 101 and CUSE 102/PROF 101 to the BEd(Tchg)EC as 20 CUSE 100 points.

*Note: The CUST, EDUC and TEAP courses in Year 1 of the DipTchg(ECE) are included in the courses required for BEd(Tchg)EC, and may be credited to either programme.*

- (g) A candidate admitted under section 3(e)(ii) above may transfer CUSE 121-129 to the BEd(Tchg)EC as 60 CUST 100 points, 20 TEAP 100 points and 40 EDUC 100 points, with exemptions from CUST 111, 112, 113, TEAP 112, 113 and EDUC 153, 154.

### Cross-crediting

4. At the discretion of the Associate Dean,
- a candidate completing a BEd(Tchg)EC degree combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;
  - a candidate completing a BEd(Tchg)EC degree combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the BEd(Tchg)EC and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of section 2 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Transition from Earlier Regulations

5. Candidates who began their course of study for BEd under the regulations in force before 1998 may transfer to the BEd(Tchg)EC degree.

### Schedule to the BEd(Tchg)EC Statute

*Note: A student may enrol in the courses listed in this schedule only with the approval of the Head of School of Early Childhood Teacher Education*

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
CUST 111	Te Whāriki	20	
CUST 112	Children's Well-being and Belonging	20	C CUST 111
CUST 113	Whakapapa: Our Living Cultures	20	
CUST 211	The Communicating Child	20	P CUST 111
CUST 212	The Expressive Child	20	P CUST 111
CUST 213	Te Ao Māori	20	P CUST 113
CUST 214	An Inclusive Early Childhood Curriculum	20	P CUST 113, 213; X CUST 312
CUST 311	The Thinking Child	20	P CUST 211, 212
CUST 315	Early Childhood Curriculum Studies	30	P 20 200-level CUST pts; X CUST 211, 212, 311
EDUC 153	The Discovery of Early Childhood	20	
EDUC 154	Understanding Children	20	X EDUC 112
EDUC 253	The Early Years Debates	22	P any one of EDUC 151, 152, 153, 154 (or 111 or 112)
EDUC 355	Quality Programmes in Early Childhood	20	P EDUC 253, CUST 311; X EDUC 352
EDUC 356	Learning Together: Young Children and Adults in Early Years Settings	20	P EDUC 253, CUST 211, 212; X EDUC 252, 254, 357

**Schedule to the BEd(Tchg)EC Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
TEAP 112	Introduction to the Early Childhood Teaching Profession	12	X TEAP 111
TEAP 113	Early Childhood Centre Experience Year 1	8	C TEAP 112; X TEAP 111
TEAP 212	Developing Professional Partnerships in Early Childhood Education	10	P CUST 111, 112, TEAP 112, 113; X TEAP 211
TEAP 213	Early Childhood Centre Experience Year 2	20	P TEAP 112, 113; C TEAP 212; X TEAP 211
TEAP 312	Early Childhood Centre Experience Year 3	8	P TEAP 211 or (TEAP 212, 213); CUST 211, 212, 213; X TEAP 311
TEAP 313	Becoming Professional (ECE)	22	P TEAP 211 or (TEAP 212, 213); CUST 211, 212, 213; C CUST 214, 311; EDUC 355, 356; TEAP 312; X TEAP 311
TEAP 314	Professional Early Childhood Teaching Portfolio	60	P a Diploma of Teaching (Early Childhood) from a recognised tertiary institution; X TEAP 212, 213, 311, 312, 313
TEAP 316	Professional Teaching Experience	30	P CUST 211, 212, 311 or 315; CUST 213; C CUST 214, EDUC 355; EDUC 356 or 357; X TEAP 211, 212, 213, 311, 312, 313

**MEd****Statute for the Degree of Master of Education**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MEd degree shall have
  - (i) completed a BA with a major in Education, or a BEd, BEd(Tchg), BA/BTeach, BSc/BTeach or BCA/BTeach; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the School of Education.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Deputy Dean of the Faculty of Education for a candidate who has
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree and either holds a Diploma of Teaching from an approved institution for teacher training or has produced evidence of sufficient educational training and experience to proceed with the proposed course of study; or
  - (ii) completed an Advanced Diploma of Teaching or a Postgraduate Diploma of Teaching; or
  - (iii) had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

**General Requirements**

2. Except as provided in sections 3 and 7, the course of study for the MEd shall comprise either
  - (a) eight courses from EDUC 501-589, including EDUC 580 or 587; or
  - (b) four courses from EDUC 501-589 and a Master's thesis (EDUC 592 or 594).
3.
  - (a) A candidate who holds a Postgraduate Diploma or Certificate in Education Studies, a Postgraduate Diploma in Education and Professional Development (PGDipEdPD) or a Postgraduate Certificate in Education and Professional Development (PGCertEdPD) may, with the permission of the Head of School, credit the courses passed for any of those qualifications to the MEd, provided the candidate abandons the relevant certificate or diploma upon being awarded the MEd.
  - (b) With the permission of the Head of School, a candidate who holds a Postgraduate Diploma of Teaching, may meet the requirements of the MEd
    - (i) by passing EDUC 580 (or 587) and three further courses from the MEd schedule; or
    - (ii) by completing EDUC 592 or 594, provided the candidate abandons the diploma upon being awarded the MEd.
  - (c) A candidate who holds a WCE BEd(Hons) degree that includes either WCE MAST 500 or WCE TEAC 502, may, with the permission of the Deputy Dean, complete the MEd by passing
    - (i) EDUC 580 (or 587) and three further courses from the MEd schedule; or
    - (ii) EDUC 592 or 594.
  - (d) A candidate who holds a WCE BEd(Hons) degree that does not include either WCE MAST 500 or WCE TEAC 502, may, with the permission of the Deputy Dean, complete the MEd by passing an approved 30-point 500-level Research Methods in Education course, and either
    - (i) EDUC 580 (or 587) and two further courses from the MEd schedule; or
    - (ii) EDUC 592 or 594.
4. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least four trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the MEd within six years of first enrolling in it. The Head of School may extend the maximum period in special cases.
5.
  - (a) With the approval of the Head of School, a candidate who has passed four courses, including the minimum requirement for at least one specialisation listed in the MEd Schedule, but does not complete the MEd may be awarded a PGDipEdPD.
  - (b) A candidate who has passed two courses from the MEd Schedule but does not complete the MEd or PGDipEdPD may, with the permission of the Head of School, be awarded a PGCertEdPD.

**Specialisations**

6. The personal course of study of each candidate shall satisfy the requirements for one of the following specialisations by including courses as listed below:

**Human Development, Counselling and Educational Psychology**

At least two courses from EDUC 514, 535, 545, 548, 550, 551

**Early Childhood Education**

At least two courses from EDUC 528, 557, 574

**Māori and Pacific Nations Education**

At least two courses from EDUC 525, 529, 541, 542

**Curriculum, Learning and Assessment**

At least two courses from EDUC 521, 547, 559, 573

**Policy and Leadership**

At least two courses from EDUC 501, 502, 553, 570

**Classroom Pedagogy**

At least two courses from EDUC 565, 566, 567, 568

**Information Communication Technology (ICT)**

At least two courses from EDUC 570, 571, 572

**Education and Training for Professional Development**

EDUC 547, 559, 569

**Special Needs Resource Teaching**

EDUC 561, 562, 563, 564

**General Education**

A combination of courses including a research methods course, a thesis and/or a research paper, selected from the MEd Schedule and approved by the Head of School.

**Substitution of Courses**

7. With the approval of the Head of School, a candidate may replace optional courses worth up to 60 points with substitutes chosen from those prescribed for any other Honours or Master's programme. (See the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses in Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.)

**Award of Distinction or Merit**

8. The MEd may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Transitional Arrangements**

9. (a) A candidate who first enrolled for the MEd prior to 1998 and wishes to complete the degree must transfer to this statute.  
 (b) Students enrolled for the MEd degree at Wellington College of Education who have completed up to four courses may transfer to this statute, receiving credit for the courses already passed.

### Schedule to the MEd statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
EDUC 501	Contemporary Education Policy (Comparative)	30	X EDUC 401
EDUC 502	Contemporary Education Policy (New Zealand)	30	X EDUC 402
EDUC 505	Theoretical Foundations of Education Studies	30	X EDUC 405, X EDUC 513 in 2000
EDUC 513	Special Topic	30	
EDUC 514	Child Abuse and Neglect	30	X EDUC 414
EDUC 515	Teaching the NESB Student	30	
EDUC 516	Language of the Classroom	30	P EDUC 515
EDUC 521	Curriculum and Assessment	30	X EDUC 421
EDUC 525	Education for the Indigenous People of the Pacific	30	X EDUC 425
EDUC 528	Early Childhood Care and Education	30	X EDUC 428
EDUC 529	Māori Education	30	X EDUC 429
EDUC 532	Research Methods in Education	30	X EDUC 416, TEAC 502
EDUC 535	Counselling Principles and Practice	30	X EDUC 409
EDUC 541	Research as Praxis: Māori and Pacific Nations Education	30	X EDUC 441
EDUC 542	Whakaakoranga Māori: Māori Learning and Pedagogies	30	X EDUC 442
EDUC 545	Developmental and Educational Psychology	30	X EDUC 404
EDUC 547	Assessment and Evaluation in Action	30	
EDUC 548	Difference and Diversity: Frameworks	30	X EDUC 448
EDUC 550	Issues in Special Education	30	X EDUC 450
EDUC 551	Special Education Practice	30	
EDUC 553	Educational Leadership and Management	30	
EDUC 557	Developmental Issues in Early Childhood Education	30	X EDUC 457
EDUC 559	Learning, Motivation and Professional Development	30	X EDUC 582 in 1997-98
EDUC 561	Special Needs Resource Teaching: Students in Contexts	30	X SNRT 801; EDUC 583 in 1999
EDUC 562	Special Needs Resource Teaching: Classroom Contexts	30	X SNRT 802; EDUC 586 in 1999
EDUC 563	Special Needs Resource Teaching: School and Community Contexts	30	X SNRT 803
EDUC 564	Special Needs Resource Teaching: Professional Practice Portfolio	30	X SNRT 804
EDUC 565^	Literacy: The NZ Approach to Reading	30	
EDUC 566^	Literacy: Knowing the Learner, Knowing the Text	30	
EDUC 567^	Numeracy: The Foundation for Learning and Teaching Mathematics	30	
EDUC 568^	Numeracy: The NZ Approach to Numeracy	30	
EDUC 569	The Design of Professional Development Programmes	30	
EDUC 570	ICT Usage and Policy	30	
EDUC 571^	ICT and Information Literacy	30	
EDUC 572^	ICT in Schools and Centres: Theory, Practice and Implementation	30	
EDUC 573	Programme Evaluation	30	
EDUC 574	Debating the Early Childhood Curriculum	30	

**Schedule to the MEd statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
EDUC 580	Classroom Research Paper	30	P EDUC 532 or TEAC 502; X EDUC 587
EDUC 582	Special Topic	30	
EDUC 583	Special Topic	30	
EDUC 586	Special Topic	30	
EDUC 587	Research Paper	30	P EDUC 532; X EDUC 580
EDUC 592	Education Thesis	120	P EDUC 532
EDUC 594	Professional Practice Thesis	120	P EDUC 532 or TEAC 502
TEAC 502	Research and Professional Inquiry	30	X EDUC 416, 532, MAST 500

^ Distance delivery

*Note: A candidate enrolling in a 30-point research paper or a 120-point thesis shall have previously passed a 30-point 500-level research methods in Education course, unless otherwise permitted by the Head of School. Under special circumstances a candidate may be permitted to enrol concurrently in the research methods course and the thesis or research paper, with the approval of the candidate's supervisor and the Head of School.*

**GDipTchg (Primary)****Statute for the Graduate Diploma of Teaching (Primary)**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipTchg (Primary) shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand;
  - (ii) demonstrated through the assessment centre the qualities necessary for a satisfactory teacher; and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Head of the School of Primary and Secondary Teacher Education as a candidate for the diploma.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Head of School for a candidate who has adequate training and experience to proceed with the proposed course of study.

**General Requirements**

2. The course of study for the GDipTchg (Primary) shall comprise all of the courses included in the schedule to this statute.
3. A candidate shall be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall normally complete the requirements of the diploma within three years of first enrolling for it. The Head of School may extend this maximum period in special cases. A candidate who wishes to take a leave of absence from the programme requires the approval of the Head of School.

4. The Head of School may cancel the enrolment of a candidate whose progress is unsatisfactory, including students who fail a mandatory teaching experience for the second time.
5. Courses from the GDipTchg (Primary) statute are excepted from the Aegrotat Pass provisions in the Assessment Statute. In the event that a candidate is prevented from completing such a course by one of the circumstances specified in section 4.5 of that Statute, the candidate will be granted an extension to complete the assessment.

### Schedule to the GDipTchg (Primary) Statute

*Note: A student may enrol in the courses listed in this schedule only with the approval of the Head of the School of Primary and Secondary Teacher Education. The qualification to which the course is to be credited must be specified at the time of enrolment.*

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Corequisites (C)
CUST 831	An Introduction to English Education	12	C CUST 833, TEAP 831
CUST 832	More on English Education	8	P CUST 831
CUST 833	Introductory Mathematics and Numeracy Education	12	C CUST 831, TEAP 831
CUST 834	Teaching Primary Mathematics and Numeracy	6	C TEAP 833
CUST 835	Engaging Learners in Society	12	C CUST 831, 833, TEAP 831, 832
CUST 836	Mātauranga Māori in the Classroom	7	C CUST 831, 833, TEAP 831, TEAP 832
CUST 837	Science Education	12	C CUST 831, 833, TEAP 831, 832
CUST 838	Teaching and Learning in the Arts	12	C CUST 831, 833, 835, 836, 837, TEAP 832
CUST 839	Health Education and Physical Education	18	C CUST 831, 833, 835, 836, 837, TEAP 832
CUST 840	Teaching Technology	9	C CUST 831, 833, 835, 836, 837, TEAP 832
TEAP 831	Principles of Teaching and Learning	12	C CUST 831, 833
TEAP 832	General Pedagogical Knowledge	15	P TEAP 831; C CUST 831, 833
TEAP 833	Organising for Teaching and Learning	21	P CUST 831, 833, 835, 836, 837, TEAP 832; C CUST 832, 834

## GDipTchg (Secondary)

### Statute for the Graduate Diploma of Teaching (Secondary)

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipTchg (Secondary) shall have completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand which includes
  - (i) two teaching subjects, one to 300 level and the other to at least 200 level;
  - (ii) demonstrated through the assessment centre the qualities necessary for a satisfactory teacher; and

- (iii) been accepted by the Head of the School of Primary and Secondary Teacher Education as a candidate for the diploma.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Head of School for a candidate who has adequate training and experience to proceed with the proposed course of study.

### General Requirements

2. (a) The course of study for the GDipTchg (Secondary) shall comprise a minimum of 156 points including
  - (i) TEAP 851, 852, 853, 854, 855 and 856
  - (ii) A minimum of 52 points selected from CUST 851-872
  - (iii) One course from CUST 873-894 or TEAP 857-863.
- (b) A candidate may include either CUST 853 and 854 or CUST 865 and 866.
3. A candidate shall be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall normally complete the requirements of the diploma within three years of first enrolling for it. The Head of School may extend this maximum period in special cases. A candidate who wishes to take a leave of absence from the programme requires the approval of the Head of School.
4. The Head of School may cancel the enrolment of a candidate whose progress is unsatisfactory, including students who fail a mandatory teaching experience for the second time.
5. Courses from the GDipTchg (Secondary) statute are excepted from the Aegrotat Pass provisions in the Assessment Statute. In the event that a candidate is prevented from completing such a course by one of the circumstances specified in section 4.5 of that Statute, the candidate will be granted an extension to complete the assessment.

### Schedule to the GDipTchg (Secondary) Statute

*Note: A student may enrol in the courses listed in this schedule only with the approval of the Head of the School of Primary and Secondary Teacher Education. The qualification to which the course is to be credited must be specified at the time of enrolment.*

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
CUST 851*	English Curriculum Study 1	13	C TEAP 851
CUST 852	English Curriculum Study 2	13	P CUST 851; C TEAP 852
CUST 853	Education Outside the Classroom Curriculum Study 1	13	C TEAP 851
CUST 854	Education Outside the Classroom Curriculum Study 2	13	P CUST 853; C TEAP 852
CUST 855*	ESOL Curriculum Study 1	13	C TEAP 851
CUST 856	ESOL Curriculum Study 2	13	P CUST 855; C TEAP 852
CUST 857*	Languages Other Than English Curriculum Study 1	13	C TEAP 851
CUST 858	Languages Other Than English Curriculum Study 2	13	P CUST 857; C TEAP 852

**Schedule to the GDipTchg (Secondary) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
CUST 859*	Mathematics Curriculum Study 1	13	C TEAP 851
CUST 860	Mathematics Curriculum Study 2	13	P CUST 859; C TEAP 852
CUST 861*	Music Curriculum Study 1	13	C TEAP 851
CUST 862	Music Curriculum Study 2	13	P CUST 861; C TEAP 852
CUST 863*	Visual Arts Curriculum Study 1	13	C TEAP 851
CUST 864	Visual Arts Curriculum Study 2	13	P CUST 863; C TEAP 852
CUST 865	Performing Arts Curriculum Study 1	13	C TEAP 851
CUST 866	Performing Arts Curriculum Study 2	13	P CUST 865; C TEAP 852
CUST 867*	Science Curriculum Study 1	10	C TEAP 851, one of CUST 874-876
CUST 868	Science Curriculum Study 2	10	P CUST 867; C TEAP 852; C one of CUST 874-876
CUST 869*	Social Sciences Curriculum Study 1	10	C TEAP 851, one of CUST 877-882 or CUST 894
CUST 870	Social Sciences Curriculum Study 2	10	P CUST 869; C TEAP 852, one of CUST 877-882
CUST 871*	Technology Curriculum Study 1	10	C TEAP 851, one of CUST 883, 886, 887, 893
CUST 872	Technology Curriculum Study 2	10	P CUST 871; C TEAP 852, one of CUST 883, 886, 887, 893
CUST 873*	Senior Drama	6	C CUST 865, 866
CUST 874*	Teaching Senior Biology	6	C CUST 867, 868
CUST 875*	Teaching Senior Physics	6	C CUST 867, 868
CUST 876*	Teaching Senior Chemistry	6	C CUST 867, 868
CUST 877*	Teaching Senior History	6	C CUST 869, 870
CUST 878*	Teaching Senior Geography	6	C CUST 869, 870
CUST 879*	Teaching Senior Economics	6	C CUST 869, 870
CUST 880*	Teaching Senior Accounting	6	C CUST 869, 870
CUST 881*	Teaching Senior Art History	6	C CUST 869, 870
CUST 882*	Teaching Senior Classics	6	C CUST 869, 870
CUST 883*	Unit Standards in Technology	6	C CUST 871, 872
CUST 884*	Health Education Curriculum Study 1	7	C TEAP 851
CUST 885*	Health Education Curriculum Study 2	6	P CUST 884; C TEAP 852
CUST 886*	Teaching Graphics	6	C CUST 871, 872
CUST 887*	Teaching Senior Information and Communication Technology	6	C CUST 871, 872
CUST 888*	Physical Education Curriculum Study 1	7	C CUST 884, TEAP 851
CUST 889*	Physical Education Curriculum Study 2	6	P CUST 888; C CUST 885, TEAP 852
CUST 890	Sports Coaching	6	
CUST 891	Junior Secondary Physical Education	6	
CUST 892	Te Reo Māori me Nga Tikanga	6	
CUST 893*	Teaching Senior Home Economics	6	C CUST 871, CUST 872
CUST 894*	Teaching Senior Social Studies	6	C CUST 869, CUST 870
TEAP 851	Teaching for Learning 1	24	C one of CUST 851, 853, 855, 857, 859, 861, 863, 865, 867, 869, 871, or CUST 884, 888

**Schedule to the GDipTchg (Secondary) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
TEAP 852	Teaching for Learning 2	24	P TEAP 851; C as for TEAP 851
TEAP 853	Teaching for Learning 3	25	P TEAP 852, one of CUST 851, 853, 855, 857, 859, 861, 863, 865, 867, 869, 871, or CUST 884, 888; C one of CUST 852, 854, 856, 858, 860, 862, 864, 866, 868, 870, 872, or CUST 885, 889
TEAP 854	Mātauranga Māori in the Classroom	7	C TEAP 851
TEAP 855	Language and Literacy across the Curriculum	6	C TEAP 851
TEAP 856	Facing the Classroom with Confidence	6	P TEAP 851
TEAP 857	Effective Communication	6	
TEAP 858	Being an Effective Professional	6	
TEAP 859	Teaching Outside the Classroom	6	X CUST 853, CUST 854
TEAP 860	Information Literacy	6	
TEAP 861	Teaching as Performance	6	X CUST 865, CUST 866
TEAP 862	Fostering Creative Thinking Skills	6	
TEAP 863	Special Project	6	

*\* Students must have completed a relevant content course to at least 200 level in their qualifying degree before enrolling in this course.*

**PGCertEdPD and PGDipEdPD****Statute for the Postgraduate Certificate in Education and Professional Development and the Postgraduate Diploma in Education and Professional Development**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGCertEdPD or the PGDipEdPD shall have met either
  - (i) one of the conditions in section 1(a)(i) of the MEd statute; or,
  - (ii) if intending to satisfy the Special Needs Resource Teaching specialisation, the entry requirements listed in section 1 of the DipSNRT statute.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Deputy Dean of the Faculty of Education for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

**General Requirements**

2. (a) The course of study for the PGCertEdPD shall consist of two approved courses from the MEd schedule.

- (b) A candidate for the certificate shall normally complete the requirements within two years of first enrolling in it. The Deputy Dean may extend this period in special cases.
- 3. (a) Except as provided in section 5, the course of study for the PGDipEdPD shall consist of four approved courses selected from the MEd schedule and satisfying the requirements for a specialisation as described in section 6 of the MEd statute.
- (b) A candidate for the diploma shall normally complete the requirements within four years of first enrolling in it. The Deputy Dean may extend this period in special cases.
- 4. A candidate who has been awarded the Postgraduate Certificate in Education Studies shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the diploma.

#### **Substitution of Courses**

- 5. With the approval of the relevant Head of School, a candidate for the diploma may replace one course with a substitute course chosen from those prescribed for any other Honours or Master's programme.

## MTeach and PGDipTeach

### **Statute for the Degree of Master of Teaching and the Postgraduate Diploma in Teaching**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Entry Requirements**

- 1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MTeach degree shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree and hold a Diploma of Teaching from an approved institution for teacher training or completed one of the following conjoint teaching programmes: BA/BTeach, BCA/BTeach or BSc/BTeach;
  - (ii) completed a minimum of 2 years teaching;
  - (iii) met the University's entry requirements, which include the good character and fitness to teach requirements of the NZ Teachers Council; and
  - (iv) been accepted by the Dean of Education as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Dean for a candidate who has adequate educational training and experience.

#### **General Requirements**

- 2. (a) Except as provided in (b), the course of study for the MTeach shall consist of courses worth at least 180 points, including
  - Part 1**
  - (i) TEAC 501, 502;
  - (ii) 30 points from approved 400/500-level courses
  - Part 2**
  - TEAC 594.

- (b) Part 1 should normally be completed before a candidate enters Part 2. However, with the permission of the Dean a candidate may omit Part 1 and be admitted directly to Part 2.
  - (c) A candidate who has failed any course shall re-enrol for the degree only with the permission of the Dean.
  - (d) To remain in the programme, a candidate must continue to meet the NZ Teachers Council requirements to have personal qualities suitable for becoming a teacher.
3. The Aegrotat Pass provisions in the Assessment Statute will not apply to TEAC courses. In the event that a candidate is prevented from completing such a course by one of the circumstances specified in section 4.5 of that Statute, the candidate will be granted an extension to complete the assessment.
  4. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least four trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the degree within five years of first enrolling in it. The Dean may extend the maximum period in special cases.
  5. (a) A candidate who has completed Part 1 of the degree but does not proceed to or complete Part 2 may be awarded a PGDipTeach upon completion of a further 30 points from approved 400/500-level courses;  
(b) A candidate who holds the diploma shall abandon it upon being awarded the MTeach.

#### Award of Distinction or Merit

6. The MTeach may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Schedule to the MTeach Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Restrictions (X)
TEAC 501	The Teacher as Professional	30	
TEAC 502	Research and Professional Inquiry	30	X MAST 500, EDUC 532
TEAC 503	Internship in Teacher Education	60	P TEAC 501, 502 and 60 approved 400/500-level pts (available only for candidates who commenced MTeach before 2006)
TEAC 594	Professional Inquiry Thesis	90	P TEAC 501, 502 and 30 approved 400/500-level points

#### GDipSNRT

#### Statute for the Graduate Diploma in Special Needs Resource Teaching

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipSNRT shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree and a Diploma of Teaching;

- (ii) had at least three years of work experience of a kind acceptable to the Programme Director; and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Programme Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived for a candidate who has completed
- (i) the Advanced Diploma of Teaching; or
  - (ii) the Diploma of Teaching and the Diploma in Education of Students with Special Teaching Needs; or
  - (iii) produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Deputy Dean of the Faculty of Education of qualification for entry through extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

### General Requirements

2. The course of study for the GDipSNRT shall consist of SNRT 801, 802, 803, 804.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the diploma within four years of first enrolling in it. The Head of School may extend this maximum period in special cases.

### Schedule to the GDipSNRT Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions (X)
SNRT 801	Students in Contexts	30	X EDUC 561
SNRT 802	Classroom Contexts	30	X EDUC 562
SNRT 803	School and Community Contexts	30	X EDUC 563
SNRT 804	Professional Practice Portfolio	30	X EDUC 564

## DipEdProfDev

### Statute for the Diploma in Education and Training for Professional Development

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. Before enrolment, a candidate for the DipEdProfDev shall have
  - (a) had at least two years of relevant work experience;
  - (b) been accepted by the Head of the School of Education Studies as likely to benefit from the course of study and capable of proceeding with it.

#### General Requirements

2. The course of study for the DipEdProfDev shall consist of courses worth at least 120 points, including
  - (a) EDUC 811, 812, 813, 814; and
  - (b) one approved course selected from the schedule for any first degree.

3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the diploma within four years of first enrolling in it. The Head of School may extend the maximum period in special cases.

#### Schedule to the DipEdProfDev Statute

Course	Title	Pts
EDUC 811	Introduction to the Design of Education and Training	24
EDUC 812	Introduction to Learning Theories in Education and Training	24
EDUC 813	Evaluation of Professional Development Programmes	24
EDUC 814	Professional Development Project	30

#### Other approved qualifications

*The qualifications below were approved as Wellington College of Education qualifications in 2004. On 1 January 2005, Wellington College of Education merged with Victoria University of Wellington to form the Victoria University of Wellington College of Education. Until formal CUAP approval, Victoria University has interim approval to offer these Wellington College of Education accredited qualifications:*

#### Diploma in the Education of Students with Special Needs Teaching

No new students will be accepted into this programme. Existing students should inquire about the courses required to complete their qualification or options for transferring to other programmes.

#### Diploma of Teaching (Early Childhood Education) Whāriki Papatipu

##### Subject/Classification:

Teacher Education: Early Childhood (Pre-service)

##### Credit:

365

##### Outcome statement:

The Diploma of Teaching (ECE) Whāriki Papatipu is a three-year early childhood teacher education programme designed to prepare graduates to teach in te kōhanga reo, Māori immersion, bi-lingual services, and other early childhood education services.

##### Content:

There are five strands to the programme: Te reo Māori, Teaching experience, Curriculum studies, Whānau and community, Professional studies.

#### Diploma of Teaching (Early Childhood Education)

##### Subject/Classification:

Teacher Education: Early Childhood (Pre-service)

##### Credit:

364

**Outcome statement:**

The Diploma of Teaching (ECE) is a professional teaching qualification which aims to equip beginning teachers to work effectively within the diversity of early childhood education services that involve young children, their families and whānau.

**Content:**

There are four streams: 1) Educational theory, curriculum and practice, 2) Family, whānau, community & society; 3) Professional teaching practice, 4) Selected studies.

Further information about these qualifications can be obtained from the School of Early Childhood Teacher Education, on 04-463-9550.

**BEd (Teaching) Primary**

This qualification is no longer offered except in Upgrade and Honours formats (see below).

**BEd (Teaching) Primary Upgrade****Subject/Classification:**

Teacher Education

**Credit:**

120

**Content**

This programme is for practising teachers with a Diploma of Teaching or equivalent who wish to upgrade to a degree qualification. The BEd (Teaching) Upgrade is available by online delivery. Previous professional development can be credited towards the qualification. All students undertake a Professional Practice Portfolio (Course title TEAP 332).

Further information about these qualifications can be obtained from the School of Primary and Secondary Teacher Education, on 04-463-9660.

**BEd (Hons)****Subject/Classification:**

Teacher Education

**Credit**

120

**Content**

This programme is for practising teachers with a three year qualification who want a four year qualification. The course of study for a BEd(Hons) requires 120 credits, with 60 of these completed through TEAC 504 Practical Enquiry. Other courses are worth 30 points and students can choose from a variety of teaching specialisations. This programme takes one year full time to complete but can be undertaken part time.

Further information about this qualification can be obtained from Postgraduate Office of the Faculty of Education, on 04-463-9728.

---

## Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences

---

### BA

#### Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### General Requirements

1. The personal course of study of a candidate for the BA degree shall, except as provided in section 3 below and the Credit Transfer Statute, consist of courses from the schedules of any first degree of this University, having a total value of at least 360 points of which
  - (a) at least 72 points shall be for courses numbered 300-399, including at least 48 points from the BA schedule;
  - (b) at least 180 points shall be for courses numbered 200-399;
  - (c) at least 192 points (including no more than 80 points from MUSI 102, 191, 192, 202, NZSM 110, 111, 112, 114, 116, 120, 212, 216, 220, 312, 320) shall be from courses listed in Part A of the BA schedule; and
  - (d) at least 312 points (including no more than 80 points from MUSI 102, 191, 192, 202, NZSM 110, 111, 112, 114, 116, 120, 212, 216, 220, 312, 320) shall be for courses listed in Part A or B of the BA schedule.

#### Subject Requirements

2. A candidate shall satisfy the requirements for at least one major subject as listed below. (Any approved alternatives must be signed off by the relevant Head of School/Programme Director.) No course numbered 200-399 may be used to satisfy the requirements for more than one major subject unless the candidate is intending to complete a combined major, in which case a minimum of 24 points at 300 level shall be exclusive to each major.

##### Anthropology

- (a) Two courses from ANTH 200-299;
- (b) two courses from ANTH 300-399;
- (c) two further ANTH courses.

##### Applied Statistics

- (a) STAT 193 or QUAN 102; 18 further 100-level MATH, STAT or QUAN points;
- (b) STAT 291, 338, 392;
- (c) 22 further 200-level STAT, OPRE or MATH points, or one of (BIOL 214, ENVI 214, GEOG 215, GEOL 214, LING 211, 325, MAOR 211, 222, MGMT 206, PSYC 325, PUBL 306, QUAN 201, 202, 203, SOSC 203, 212, SPOL 205, 207, STAT 339).

##### Architectural Studies

- (a)\* ARCH 171, 172; one of (CLAS 102, DESN 171, 18 ARTH or HIST points);
- (b)\* ARCH 271, 272; ARCH 372 or 379;

- (c) two courses, of which at least one is at 300 level, selected from one of the following groups: ARCH 371, 373; ARTH 200-399; CLAS 202, 302, CLAS 209, 309; HIST 200-399; IDDN 271, 371; ITDN 271, 371; LADN 271, 371.

\* An approved alternative course or courses may be substituted for any course listed under (a) or (b).

#### **Art History**

Six ARTH courses including two 300-level ARTH courses (one may be replaced by MAOR 312).

#### **Asian Languages**

- (a) CHIN 311, JAPA 301;  
 (b) two courses from LING 200-399.

#### **Asian Studies**

- (a) ASIA 101, 301;  
 (b) three further approved advanced courses with significant content in Asian Studies, at least one of which shall be at 300 level.

#### **Chinese**

- (a) CHIN 312, one other 300-level CHIN course;  
 (b) three further courses from CHIN 200-399.

#### **Classical Studies**

- (a) Two courses from CLAS 100-199 (one may be replaced by an approved GREE or LATI course);  
 (b) two courses from (CLAS 200-299, CRIT 201);  
 (c) two CLAS 300-level courses.

such that the overall programme includes at least one course from each of the following groups:

- (i) CLAS 101, 203, 204, 210, 211, 303, 304, 310, 311;  
 (ii) CLAS 102, 202, 209, 302, 309;  
 (iii) CLAS 104, 105, 207, 208, 307, 308.

*The Programme Director may approve the inclusion of CLAS 212/312 in one or more of the groups (i)-(iii) depending on the subject of the course in any given year, and may approve the inclusion of CLAS 213/313 in any of the three groups.*

#### **Computing**

- (a) 60 300-level COMP points;  
 (b) three courses from (COMP 201-206, MATH 214).

#### **Criminology**

- (a) CRIM 211 or 214;  
 (b) four further CRIM courses, including three at 300-level.

#### **Design Studies**

- (a) DESN 101, 111, 112, 141, 171, 389;  
 (b) one of the following:  
 (i) two of (DESN 170, 172, 272-273, DMDN/IDDN/ITDN/LADN 271, LADN 273), and either one of (DESN 311, DMDN/IDDN/ITDN/LADN 371) or an approved course from DESN 383-388; or

- (ii) two of (DESN 211, DMDN/IDDN/ITDN/LADN 201, DMDN 206, 304, IDDN/LADN 213, ITDN 214, 215, 332, DMDN/IDDN/ITDN/LADN 211, 212), and either one of ITDN 315 or an approved course from DESN 383-388; or
- (iii) two of (DESN 103, 104, 114, 203, 204, 205, 231), and either one of (DESN 303, 305) or an approved course from DESN 383-388.

#### **Development Studies**

- (a) GEOG 112, 212, 312, 316;
- (b) five further approved courses with significant relevance to development studies and/or development studies content, comprising
  - (i) one regional-based course and one subject-based course at 100 level;
  - (ii) one regional-based course and one subject-based course at 200 level;
  - (iii) one 300 level course.

*Note: A list of approved courses is included in the Development Studies Prospectus.*

#### **Early Childhood Studies**

- (a) EDUC 153, 154, 253, 357, 358;
- (b) one further course from EDUC 200-399.

#### **Economics**

- (a) QUAN 102 (or STAT 131 or 193); QUAN 111 (or MATH 113 and 114);
- (b) at least three of ECON 201, 202, MOFI 202, QUAN 201 (or 203 or STAT 231);
- (c) at least two 300-level ECON, MOFI, QUAN or approved ECHI courses.

#### **Education**

- (a) Two courses from EDUC 300-399;
- (b) a further four EDUC courses, including at least two from EDUC 200-399.

#### **English Language**

- (a) (i) ENGL 215, 224 (one of which may be replaced by a second course from (a)(ii), with permission of the Head of School);
- (ii) one of ENGL 214, LING 211, 223;
- (b) (i) ENGL 320 or 321;
- (ii) one of ENGL 307, 322, LING 322;
- (c) at least 36 points comprising
  - (i) a course or courses in a second language or languages; and/or
  - (ii) introductory literature course(s) such as ENGL 111-120, CLAS 101.

#### **English Literature**

At least five courses from ENGL 200-399 (excluding ENGL 322), including

- (a) two courses from ENGL 300-399;
- (b) two courses from ENGL 200-229, 300-329.

*The Head of School may approve the substitution of an alternative course at 200/300 level. Up to two CREW courses may be included, provided not more than one is at 300 level.*

#### **English Studies**

At least seven courses from ENGL, FILM, LING, MDIA, THEA, THFI 200-399, including two courses at 300 level.

**Environmental Studies**

- (a) ECON 130; STAT 193 or an equivalent background in statistics; 18 points from BIOL 132, CHEM 100-199, ESCI 111, ESCI 132, PHYS 131;
- (b) one course from (MAOR 214, 215, PUBL 207) or an approved course in environmental law or political science;
- (c) ENVI/GEOG 314, BIOL/GEOL 214, one of BIOL 327, 328, 371.

**European Studies**

- (a) EURO 101, 301; one of FREN 311, GERM 316, 321, ITAL 316, SPAN 316;
- (b) one approved advanced course with significant content of comparative European Studies.

**Film**

- (a) FILM 231, one 300-level FILM course;
- (b) one further 300-level FILM or THFI course;
- (c) two further 200/300-level FILM or THFI courses, for one of which another approved course may be substituted.

**French**

FREN 316 (or 311), one course from FREN 331, 332, 333.

**Gender and Women's Studies**

Six GEND/WISC courses, including at least two at 300-level.

*The Convener of the Board of Studies may approve the substitution of up to two alternative courses, provided that no more than one of these is at 300 level.*

**Geography**

- (a) At least 48 points in 300-level GEOG courses;
- (b) at least 44 further points in 200/300-level GEOG courses.

**German**

GERM 316 or 321 and either 314 or 318.

**Greek**

CLAS 104; two GREE 300-level courses.

**History**

At least five courses from (HIST 200-399, ECHI 200-399, CLAS 207, 307, 208, 308, ECON 204, 205) of which

- (a) at least three courses shall be from HIST 200-399,
- (b) at least two courses shall be from (HIST/ECHI 300-399, CLAS 307, 308),
- (c) at least one course shall be from HIST 300-399.

**Information Systems**

- (a) INFO 101, 102, 201, 241;
- (b) two courses from INFO 300-399;
- (c) one further course from INFO 200-399.

**International Relations\***

- (a) INTIP 113 and one 100-level POLS course;
- (b) three courses from INTIP 200-399, including two at 300 level;
- (c) at least one further course from INTIP 200-299 or POLS 200-299.

*POLS courses may be substituted for INTIP courses with the same numbers.*

\* Subject to approval in November 2005.

**Italian**

ITAL 316 and either 306 or 308.

**Japanese**

114 points in JAPA courses numbered 200-399, including JAPA 302.

**Latin**

CLAS 105; six courses from LATI 100-399, including at least two courses from LATI 300-399\*.

\* *With approval, CLAS 101 may be included instead of LATI 103.*

**Linguistics**

- (a) LING 221, 325; one further course from LING 321-399;
- (b) one approved course in logic or computer science (with the exception of COMP 101 and 130) or a language other than English\*.

\* *A candidate whose language in the home or school is not English will be exempted from this requirement.*

**Māori Resource Management**

- (a) MAOR 121, 215, 313;
- (b) one of ENVI 314, GEOG 314, MBUS 302.

**Māori Studies**

- (a) MAOR 311, 313;
- (b) one further course from (MAOR 212-299, 312-399, HIST 317).

**Mathematics**

- (a) MATH 113, 114; one course from (COMP 102, STAT 131/193, QUAN 102);
- (b) 92 points from MATH 200-399 (excluding MATH 371), including at least 48 points numbered 300-399.

**Media Studies**

- (a) MDIA 201; one other 200-level MDIA course; two 300-level MDIA courses;
- (b) two further courses from MDIA 100-399.

*The Head of School may approve the substitution of an alternative course at 200/300 level.*

**Modern Languages**

- (a) Two courses\* from CHIN 311, FREN 316, GERM 316 or 321, ITAL 316, JAPA 301, MAOR 311, SAMO 301, SPAN 316;
- (b) two courses from LING 200-399.

\* *One of those courses may be replaced by an approved 300-level course in another language.*

**Music Studies\***

- (a) NZSM 130; NZSM 131 or 132 or 150;
- (b) 60 200-level NZSM points;
- (c) 50 300-level NZSM points.

\* *Subject to approval in November 2005, the Music major is replaced by Music Studies. From 2006, no new students will be accepted into the Music major. Existing students may complete under the 2005 regulations provided they do so before the end of 2010, and should contact the New Zealand School of Music regarding the required courses.*

**Operations Research**

- (a) OPRE 251; 22 points from MATH 200-269 or STAT 200-289;
- (b) at least 48 points from OPRE 300-399.

**Pacific Studies**

- (a) PASI 101, 201, 301;
- (b) at least 18 points in Samoan, Māori or French language;
- (c) three further approved advanced courses with significant content in Pacific Studies, at least one of which shall be at 300 level.

**Philosophy**

- (a) At least four courses from PHIL 200-399, including at least two at 300 level;
- (b) two further courses from PHIL 100-399.

*One course may be replaced by an approved alternative course.*

**Political Science**

- (a) One course from POLS 200-299, one further course taken from POLS 200-299 or INTIP 200-299;
- (b) one course from POLS 300-399, one further course taken from POLS 300-399 or INTIP 300-399;
- (c) at least one further POLS course, and one further POLS or INTIP course.

**Psychology**

- (a) 66 200-level PSYC points;
- (b) 72 300-level PSYC points.

**Public Policy**

- (a)\* ECON 130; POLS 111; QUAN 102 (or STAT 193 or SPOL 205);
- (b) PUBL 201, 202, 203, 306;
- (c) one further course from PUBL 300-399.

\* *One course in (a) may be replaced by an approved equivalent or higher-level course in the same area.*

**Religious Studies**

- (a) Two courses from RELI 200-299; two courses from RELI 300-399;
- (b) two further courses from RELI 100-399.

*Up to two courses may be replaced by approved substitutes.*

**Samoan Studies/Fa'asamoa**

SAMO 111, 301, 302.

**Science Subjects**

At least 120 BIOL, CHEM, GEOL, GPHS or PHYS points, including at least 48 at 300 level.

**Second Language Education**

Five courses including

- (a) LING 211, ALIN 201, LING 223;
- (b) ALIN 301 or an equivalent 300-level course approved by the Head of School;
- (c) one of ALIN 302, LING 321, LING 323 or another 300-level course approved by the Head of School.

**Social Policy**

- (a) Either SPOL 113 and one course from (SOSC 112, ECON 130, POLS 111) or, with approval, two 200-level SPOL courses;  
 (b) four further SPOL courses, including at least two from SPOL 300-399.

**Sociology**

- (a) SOSC 111, 112 (or, with approval, two 200-level SOSC courses);  
 (b) four further SOSC courses, including at least two from SOSC 300-399.

**Spanish**

SPAN 312, 316.

**Statistics**

- (a) STAT 231, 331;  
 (b) 24 further points from STAT 300-399.

**Te Reo Māori**

MAOR 221, 321, 322.

**Theatre**

- (a) THEA 201, one 300-level THEA course;  
 (b) one further 300-level THEA or THFI course;  
 (c) two further courses from (THEA or THFI 200-399, CRIT 201).

**Cross-crediting**

3. At the discretion of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences,  
 (a) a candidate completing a BA combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;  
 (b) a candidate completing a BA combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the BA and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 1 and 2 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

*Note: A candidate whose first enrolment at this University was for the Diploma in Māoritanga will be permitted to cross-credit up to 90 points between the diploma and a BA degree. A candidate whose first enrolment was for a different qualification may credit a maximum of 36 points to the diploma.*

**Schedule to the BA Statute****Part A**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ALIN 201	Language Teaching Methodology	22	P 36 pts including 18 pts in a language other than English or an equivalent second language learning experience; X ELIN 805
ALIN 202	Second Language Curriculum	22	P 36 pts; X ELIN 823

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ALIN 301	Pedagogical Description of English	24	P LING 211 or FHSS 170; X ELIN 804
ALIN 302	Language Education for Science and Technology		P ALIN 201
ANTH 101	Foundations of Society and Culture	18	
ANTH 102	Social and Cultural Diversity	18	
ANTH 201	Kin, Class and Caste	22	P 18 ANTH pts or 36 approved pts
ANTH 204	Modern Anthropological Thought	22	P as for ANTH 201
ANTH 208	Culture and Experience	22	P as for ANTH 201
ANTH 209	Conflict and Reconciliation	22	P as for ANTH 201
ANTH 213	Ritual in the Modern World	22	P as for ANTH 201; X ANTH 208 in 2003
ANTH 215	Special Topic	22	P as for ANTH 201
ANTH 308	Anthropology in Oceania	24	P 22 200-level ANTH pts
ANTH 309	Resistance and Power	24	P as for ANTH 308
ANTH 310	History of Anthropological Thought	24	P as for ANTH 308
ANTH 312	Representing Others: The Challenges of Ethnography	24	P as for ANTH 308
ANTH 313	Anthropology of the Modern World	24	P as for ANTH 308
ANTH 314	Special topic	24	P as for ANTH 308
ANTH 315	Selected topic	24	P as for ANTH 308
ANTH 316	Visual Anthropology	24	P as for ANTH 308; X ANTH 315 in 2004-05
ARCH 171	History of Architecture	18	
ARCH 172	History of Architecture	18	
ARCH 181	Architectural Technologies	18	
ARCH 222	Sustainable Architecture	20	P 72 pts; X ARCH 282 in 1998-2000, ARCH 382 in 1997
ARCH 271	History of Architecture	20	P ARCH 171 (or 172 or 181)
ARCH 272	Architectural Theory and Criticism	20	P ARCH 171 or 172, 40 200-level pts; X ARCH 380
ARCH 274	Pacific Architecture	20	P 36 pts
ARCH 371	Ideas and Forms of Cities	20	P ARCH 171 or 172 or 18 approved DESN/ARTH pts, 40 200-level pts
ARCH 372	Architecture and Critical Theory	20	P ARCH 272; X ARCH 480
ARCH 373	History, Theory and Methods in Urban Design	20	P ARCH 171 (or 172), 40 200-level pts
ARCH 379	History of Architecture	20	P ARCH 271 or 272 or 380
ARTH 111	Art History 1: Rock Art to Revolution	18	X ARTH 103
ARTH 112	Art History 2: After the Revolution	18	X ARTH 103
ARTH 113	Thinking through Art	18	
ARTH 213	Art in Aotearoa/NZ	22	P 36 100-level ARTH pts; X ARTH 102
ARTH 214	Art in the Pacific	22	P 36 100-level ARTH pts or PASI 101
ARTH 216	Byzantine and Medieval Art	22	P as for ARTH 213; X ARTH 333
ARTH 217	The Renaissance	22	P as for ARTH 213; X ARTH 220 and 330
ARTH 218	The Baroque	22	P as for ARTH 213; X ARTH 221
ARTH 219	Modernism and Postmodernism	22	P as for ARTH 213; X ARTH 332
ARTH 222	Neoclassicism to Impressionism	22	P as for ARTH 213
ARTH 225	Religious Art and Architecture	22	P as for ARTH 213; X RELI 225

## Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ARTH 226	Special Topic	22	P as for ARTH 213
ARTH 310	Topics in Colonial Art	24	P 44 200-level ARTH pts
ARTH 311	Topics in Contemporary New Zealand Art	24	P as for ARTH 310; X ARTH 411
ARTH 313	Topics in Renaissance Art	24	P as for ARTH 310; X ARTH 335 in 2002-03
ARTH 315	Topics in 18 <sup>th</sup> Century Art	24	P as for ARTH 310; X ARTH 415
ARTH 316	Topics in 19 <sup>th</sup> Century Art	24	P as for ARTH 310
ARTH 317	Topics in 20 <sup>th</sup> Century Art	24	P as for ARTH 310
ARTH 318	'Primitivism' and Post-Colonialism	24	P as for ARTH 310; X ARTH 335 in 2000
ARTH 335	Special Topic	24	P as for ARTH 310
ASIA 101	Introduction to Asian Studies	18	
ASIA 102	Introduction to the Cultures of Malaysia and Indonesia	18	
ASIA 201	Contemporary Asian Society	22	P ASIA 101 or 36 pts
ASIA 202	Malay World and Civilisation	22	P 36 pts
ASIA 203	Modern Korean Society	22	P as for ASIA 201
ASIA 204	Special Topic	22	P as for ASIA 201
ASIA 205	Selected Topic on Contemporary Asia	22	P as for ASIA 201
ASIA 206	Introduction to Asian Economic History	22	P 18 100-level ECON, ASIA, HIST, CHIN, JAPA, GEOG or POLS pts; X ECHI 201, ECON 204
ASIA 301	Selected Topics in the Study of Asia	24	P ASIA 101, 44 approved pts
ASIA 302	Selected Topic: Directed Individual Study	24	P 44 approved pts
ASIA 303	Selected Topics in the Study of Malaysia	24	P ASIA 101 or 102, 44 approved pts
BBSC 271	History of Building Technology	20	P ARCH 171 or 172
CHIN 111	Chinese Language 1	36	
CHIN 112	Introduction to Chinese Civilisation	18	
CHIN 211	Chinese Language 2A	22	P CHIN 111
CHIN 212	Chinese Language 2B	22	P CHIN 211
CHIN 213	Modern Chinese Literature	22	P CHIN 211
CHIN 311	Chinese Language 3A	24	P CHIN 212
CHIN 312	Chinese Language 3B	24	P CHIN 311
CHIN 313	Classical Chinese Language & Literature	24	P CHIN 212
CHIN 314	Advanced Chinese Composition and Translation	24	P CHIN 312 or approval of the Head of School/Programme
CLAS 101	Greek Literature, Myth and Society	18	
CLAS 102	Greek Art: Myth and Culture	18	
CLAS 104	Greek History: Government and Society	18	
CLAS 105	Roman History: Government and Society	18	
CLAS 202	Etruscan and Roman Art	22	P 36 pts; X CLAS 302
CLAS 203	Greek and Roman Drama	22	P 36 pts; X CLAS 303
CLAS 204	Greek Mythology	22	P 36 pts; X CLAS 304

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
CLAS 207	Roman Social History	22	P 36 pts; X CLAS 307
CLAS 208	Greek Society	22	P 36 pts; X CLAS 308
CLAS 209	Bronze Age Aegean Art and Archaeology	22	P 36 pts; X CLAS 309
CLAS 210	Greek and Roman Epic	22	P 36 pts; X CLAS 310
CLAS 211	Myth and Storytelling	22	P 36 pts; X CLAS 311
CLAS 212	Special Topic	22	P 36 pts; X CLAS 312
CLAS 213	Troy and the Trojan War	22	P 36 pts; X CLAS 313
CLAS 302	Etruscan and Roman Art	24	P 2 courses from (CLAS/GREE/LATI 200-299, CRIT 201); X CLAS 202
CLAS 303	Greek and Roman Drama	24	P as for CLAS 302; X CLAS 203
CLAS 304	Greek Mythology	24	P as for CLAS 302; X CLAS 204
CLAS 307	Roman Social History	24	P as for CLAS 302; X CLAS 207
CLAS 308	Greek Society	24	P as for CLAS 302; X CLAS 208
CLAS 309	Bronze Age Aegean Art and Archaeology	24	P as for CLAS 302; X CLAS 209
CLAS 310	Greek and Roman Epic	24	P as for CLAS 302; X CLAS 210
CLAS 311	Myth and Storytelling	24	P as for CLAS 302; X CLAS 211
CLAS 312	Special Topic	24	P as for CLAS 302; X CLAS 212
CLAS 313	Troy and the Trojan War	24	P as for CLAS 302; X CLAS 213
CLAS 320	Greek Field Trip	24	P as for CLAS 302; X CLAS 420
COMP 101	Introduction to Dynamic Web Development	18	X INET 101
COMP 102	Introduction to Computer Program Design	18	
COMP 103	Introduction to Data Structures and Algorithms	18	P COMP 102
COMP 202	Introduction to Formal Methods	22	P COMP 103, MATH 114
COMP 203	Computer Organisation	22	P COMP 103, MATH 114
COMP 205	Software Design and Engineering	22	P COMP 103
COMP 206	Program and Data Structures	22	P COMP 103; X COMP 201
COMP 301	Software Engineering Principles	15	P COMP 205 (or 201)
COMP 302	Database Systems	15	P (COMP 205, 206) or COMP 201; MATH 114
COMP 303	Design and Analysis of Algorithms	15	P COMP 202 and one of (201, 205, 206); MATH 214
COMP 304	Programming Languages	15	P COMP 202; COMP 205 or 206 (or 201); MATH 114
COMP 305	Operating Systems	15	P COMP 203, 206 (or 201), MATH 114
COMP 306	Computer Networks	15	P COMP 203 (or 204), 206 (or 201), MATH 114
COMP 307	Introduction to Artificial Intelligence	15	P COMP 205 or 206 (or 201); MATH 114
COMP 308	Computer Graphics	15	P COMP 205 or 206 (or 201); MATH 114
COMP 310	Concurrent Programming	15	P COMP 203, 206 (or 201), MATH 114
COMP 311	User Interface Design	15	P COMP 205 (or 201)
COMP 312	Simulation and Stochastic Models	15	P COMP 205 or 206 (or 201); STAT 131, MATH 114; X COMP 349 in 1998-2003, OPRE 352

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
COMP 348	Special Topic	15	P permission of the Head of School
COMP 349	Special Topic	15	P as for COMP 348
COMP 389	Software Engineering Project	15	P COMP 301
COOK 101	Introduction to Cook Islands Māori	18	X RARO 101, KUKI 101
COOK 102	Elementary Cook Islands Māori	18	X RARO 102, KUKI 102
COOK 104	Cook Islands Society: Past and Present	18	
COOK 201	Cook Islands Korero 1	22	P COOK 102; X RARO 121, KUKI 121
COOK 202	Cook Islands Korero 2	22	P COOK 201
CREW 253	Poetry Workshop	22	P 36 pts, an appropriate standard in written composition; X ENGL 253
CREW 254	Short Fiction Workshop	22	P as for CREW 253; X ENGL 254
CREW 255	Children's Writing Workshop	22	P as for CREW 253; X ENGL 255
CREW 256	Creative Writing Workshop	22	P as for CREW 253
CREW 257	Creative Non-Fiction Workshop	22	P as for CREW 253
CREW 351	Masterclass	36	P 44 pts, an appropriate standard in written composition
CREW 352	Creative Writing Workshop	36	P as for CREW 351
CRIM 211	Introduction to Criminological Thought	22	P 36 ANTH, LAWS, POLS, PSYC, PUBL, SOSC or SPOL pts or approved alternative; X CRIM 214
CRIM 212	Crime in New Zealand	22	P CRIM 211; X CRIM 214
CRIM 214	Introduction to Criminal Behaviour	22	P as for CRIM 211; X CRIM 211, 212
CRIM 215	Contemporary Issues in Policing	22	P CRIM 211 or 214 or an approved alternative; X CRIM 311, LAWS 309
CRIM 311	Policing	24	P CRIM 211 or 214 or an approved alternative; X CRIM 215, LAWS 309
CRIM 312	Punishment and Modern Society	24	P CRIM 211 or 214
CRIM 313	Women, Crime and Social Control	24	P CRIM 211 or 214
CRIM 314	Special Topic	24	P CRIM 211 or 214
CRIM 315	Youth and Crime	24	P CRIM 211 or 214
CRIM 316	Criminological Theory	24	P CRIM 211 or 214
CRIM 317	Researching Crime	24	P CRIM 211 or 214; X CRIM 314 in 1999
CRIM 318	Special Topic	24	P CRIM 211 or 214
CRIM 319	Special Topic	24	P CRIM 211 or 214
CRIM 321	Criminal Behaviour and Investigation: A Psychological Approach	24	P CRIM 211 or 214 or approved alternative; X PSYC 325
CRIM 322	Crime, Marginalisation and Popular Culture	24	P CRIM 211 or 214 or approved alternative
CRIT 201	European Tragedy	22	P 36 pts
CRIT 202	European Romanticism	22	P 36 pts
DEAF 101	Introduction to NZ Sign Language	18	
DEAF 102	Elementary NZ Sign Language	18	P DEAF 101 (or NZSL equivalent)
DEAF 201	Intermediate NZ Sign Language	22	P DEAF 102 (or NZSL equivalent)
DESN 101	Drawing and Modelling Fundamentals	18	
DESN 103	Life Drawing for Designers	18	
DESN 104	Introduction to Computers for Designers	18	

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
DESN 111	3D Ideas and Practices of Design	18	
DESN 112	3D Ideas and Practices of Design	18	P DESN 111; X DESN 113
DESN 114	Photography and Digital Imaging	18	
DESN 141	Design, Materials and Processes	18	X DESN 131
DESN 170	Māori Art and Contemporary Māori Design	18	
DESN 171	History and Theory of Design	18	
DESN 172	Māori Design Conventions and Social History	18	
DESN 203	Life Drawing for Designers	20	P DESN 103
DESN 204	Drawing for Design	20	P DESN 101 or C ARCH 211
DESN 211	Contemporary Māori Art and Design	20	P DESN 170
DESN 231	Designing with Photography	20	P DESN 114, (DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112)
DESN 271	History and Theory of Design	20	P DESN 171 or ANTH 101 or ARTH 111 or 112 or ARCH 171 or 172; X DESN 171 in 1997-99
DESN 272	New Zealand Design History	20	P DESN 171/172 or ARCH 171/172
DESN 273	Artefacts and Ritual in Design	20	P DESN 171 or ARCH 171 or 172 or ANTH 101
DESN 303	Life Drawing for Design	20	P DESN 203
DESN 305	Drawing for Design	20	P DESN 204 or ARCH 201
DESN 311	Contemporary Māori Art and Design	20	P DESN 211
DESN 383	Special Topic	20	
DESN 384	Special Topic	20	
DESN 385	Special Topic	20	
DESN 386	Special Topic	20	
DESN 387	Special Topic	20	
DESN 388	Special Topic	20	
DESN 389	Design Research Project	32	P 40 200-level DESN pts
DMDN 201	Drawing and Modelling for Digital Media Design	20	C DMDN 211 (or ARCH 211); X DESN 205
DMDN 206	Design and the Internet	20	P DESN 104, 112 (or DESN 113 or ARCH 112)
DMDN 211	Digital Media Design	20	P DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112
DMDN 212	Digital Media Design	20	P DMDN 211
DMDN 271	History of Digital Media Design	20	P DESN 171 or ARCH 171 or 172
DMDN 371	Digital Media Design Theory and Criticism	20	P DMDN 271
ECHI 303	Modern British Economic History	24	P 22 200-level ECHI, ECON or HIST pts
ECHI 305	The Rise of Modern Business	24	P 22 200-level ECHI, ECON, HIST, HRIR, MGMT, MARK or ACCY pts; X IBUS 305
ECON 130	Economic Principles and Issues	18	X ECON 102, (110 and 120), 113
ECON 140	Economics and Strategic Behaviour	18	P ECON 130; X any two of ECON 110, 120, 130 (or 113)
ECON 201	Microeconomics	22	P ECON 140 (or 110)

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ECON 202	Macroeconomics	22	P ECON 140 (or 120)
ECON 204	Introduction to Asian Economic History	22	P 18 100-level ECON, ASIA, HIST, CHIN, JAPA, GEOG or POLS pts; X ECHI 201, ASIA 206
ECON 205	The Development of the Modern International Economy	22	P 18 100-level ECON, HIST, GEOG or POLS pts; X ECHI 202, IBUS 202
ECON 224	Introduction to Public Economics	22	P ECON 130 (or 110 or 102); X PUBL 203
ECON 305	Macroeconomic Growth, Business Cycles and Sustainability	24	P ECON 202, QUAN 111 (or MATH 113, 114)
ECON 307	Public Sector Economics	24	P ECON 201 or PUBL 203; C ECON 201; X PUBL 303
ECON 309	International Economics	24	P ECON 201 or 202, QUAN 111 (or MATH 113, 114)
ECON 310	History of Economic Thought	24	P 22 200-level ECON or ECHI pts, 18 100-level ECON pts
ECON 314	Microeconomics: Information and Markets	24	P ECON 201, QUAN 111 (or MATH 113, 114)
ECON 328	Industry Structure and Business Strategy	24	P ECON 140 (or 110), 44 200-level pts
ECON 330	Special Topic	24	P ECON 140 (or 110) or COML 203
ECON 333	Economics of Work and Pay	24	P 18 100-level ECON pts, ECON 201 or HRIR 201 or INRC 202
ECON 334	Feminist Economics	24	P (18 100-level ECON pts, 22 approved 200-level pts) or GEND/WISC 201; X GEND/WISC 304
ECON 335	Managerial Economics	24	P ECON 140 (or 110); 22 200-level ACCY, ECON or MOFI pts
EDUC 112	Human Development and Learning	18	X EDUC 152
EDUC 113	Schooling Under Scrutiny: Education Policy and Practice	18	
EDUC 114	Understanding Behaviour: Working with People	18	
EDUC 121	Living and working well: an introduction to health education	18	
EDUC 153	The Discovery of Early Childhood	20	
EDUC 154	Understanding Children	20	X EDUC 112
EDUC 228	Young People, Education and Media	22	P 18 EDUC pts or MDIA 103
EDUC 229	Making Meaning: Young People, Society and School	22	P EDUC 111 or 113; X EDUC 226
EDUC 234	Educational Psychology	22	P EDUC 112 or 114 or 152 or 154
EDUC 236	Issues in Human Development	22	P EDUC 112 or 114 or 152 or 154
EDUC 241	Aims and Ideals of Māori Education	22	P 18 100-level EDUC pts
EDUC 243	Pacific Nations Education	22	P as for EDUC 241
EDUC 253	The Early Years Debates	22	P one of EDUC 111, 112, 151, 152, 153, 154
EDUC 305	Multi-ethnic Education	24	P 44 200-level EDUC, ANTH, GEND, HIST, MAOR, POLS, SOSC or WISC pts
EDUC 306	Education for Diversity and Social Justice	24	P 44 200-level pts including 22 200-level EDUC pts

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
EDUC 308	Classroom Studies	24	P as for EDUC 306
EDUC 310	Growing up in a Digital World	24	P 44 relevant 200-level pts
EDUC 311	Early Childhood Education	24	P 44 relevant 200-level pts
EDUC 312	Contemporary Issues in Indigenous Education Aotearoa	24	P 44 200-level pts including 22 EDUC pts; X EDUC 372 in 1994-96
EDUC 313	The Politics of Schooling	24	P 44 200-level pts including 22 EDUC pts
EDUC 332	Educational Psychology: Diverse Learners	24	P EDUC 234 and 22 200-level EDUC or PSYC pts; X EDUC 334
EDUC 340	Youth and Life Challenges	24	P 44 200-level pts including 22 EDUC pts; X EDUC 372 in 2002-03
EDUC 357	Learning Together: Young Children and adults in early years settings	24	P 44 200-level pts including EDUC 236 or 253
EDUC 358	Advocacy and Young Children	24	P 44 200-level pts including EDUC 253
EDUC 369	Education Research Methods	24	P 44 200-level pts
EDUC 370	Guidance and Counselling	24	P 44 200-level pts including EDUC 234 or 236
EDUC 372	Special Topic	24	P 22 relevant 200-level pts
ENGL 111	Past Masters	18	
ENGL 112	Cultural Encounters: The Literature and Theatre of Aotearoa New Zealand and the Pacific	18	X SEFT 101, THEA 112
ENGL 113	Introduction to Literature and Cultural Politics	18	
ENGL 114	Introduction to Literary Form	18	
ENGL 115	Literature and Visual Media	18	
ENGL 207	American Literature: the Emergence of a Tradition	22	P 18 100-level ENGL or SEFT pts, 18 further 100-level ENGL, FILM, MDIA, SEFT or THEA pts
ENGL 208	Shakespeare	22	P as for ENGL 207; X THEA 208
ENGL 209	The Novel	22	P as for ENGL 207
ENGL 214	The Chivalric Quest from Chaucer to Spenser	22	P as for ENGL 207 or 36 approved pts
ENGL 215	Old English Literature	22	P as for ENGL 214
ENGL 221	Classic Theatre	22	P as for ENGL 207; X THEA 204, 207; THEA 220 in 2001, ENGL 228 before 2006
ENGL 224	Literary History of English Language	22	P as for ENGL 214
ENGL 225	Classical Traditions in English Literature	22	P as for ENGL 207
ENGL 226	God and the Poets: Christian Traditions in English Poetry	22	P as for ENGL 214; X ENGL 229 in 2000-01
ENGL 227	Tolkien and Medieval Literature	22	P as for ENGL 214; X ENGL 229 in 2002-03
ENGL 228	Special Topic	22	P as for ENGL 207; X DRAM 205, 206, 305, 306, THEA 204; THEA 220 in 2001
ENGL 229	Special Topic	22	P as for ENGL 214
ENGL 231	Modern Poetry	22	P as for ENGL 207; X ENGL 216
ENGL 232	Theatrical Revolution: Drama from Realism to the Postmodern	22	P as for ENGL 207; X ENGL 217, THEA 201

## Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ENGL 234	New Zealand Literature	22	P as for ENGL 207; X ENGL 219
ENGL 235	Australian Literature	22	P as for ENGL 207; X ENGL 220
ENGL 236	Reading Women Writers	22	P as for ENGL 207; X ENGL 223
ENGL 237	Journalism and Literature	22	P as for ENGL 207
ENGL 238	Literature and New Media	22	P as for ENGL 207; X ENGL 249 in 2001 or 2003
ENGL 241	Dramaturgy of the Real	22	P as for ENGL 207; X ENGL 341, THEA 205, 305
ENGL 242	Dramaturgy of the Avant-Garde	22	P as for ENGL 207; X ENGL 342, THEA 206, 306
ENGL 247	Special Topic	22	P as for ENGL 207
ENGL 248	Special Topic	22	P as for ENGL 207; X THEA 221
ENGL 249	Special Topic	22	P as for ENGL 207
ENGL 307	Troy and Troilus	24	P 44 pts from ENGL 201-299; X ENGL 407
ENGL 308	Renaissance Literature	24	P as for ENGL 307
ENGL 311	Romantic Literature	24	P as for ENGL 307; X ENGL 316
ENGL 312	Victorian Literature	24	P as for ENGL 307
ENGL 315	Restoration and 18th Century Literature	24	P as for ENGL 307
ENGL 320	Beowulf	24	P ENGL 215 or, with the approval of the Head of School, demonstrated proficiency in foreign language learning; X ENGL 401
ENGL 321	Old English	24	P as for ENGL 320; X ENGL 405
ENGL 322	Middle English Language	24	P ENGL 215 or 320 or 321; X ENGL 318, ENGL 406 after 1999
ENGL 329	Special Topic	24	P as for ENGL 307
ENGL 330	Modern Fiction	24	P as for ENGL 307
ENGL 331	New Zealand Literature	24	P as for ENGL 307
ENGL 332	American Literature: 20th Century	24	P as for ENGL 307; X ENGL 218
ENGL 341	Dramaturgy of the Real	24	P as for ENGL 307; X ENGL 241, THEA 205, 305
ENGL 342	Dramaturgy of the Avant-Garde	24	P as for ENGL 307; X ENGL 242, THEA 206, 306
ENGL 348	Special Topic	24	P as for ENGL 307; X THEA 321
ENGL 349	Special Topic	24	P as for ENGL 307
ENVI 114	Environment and Resources: the Foundations	18	X GEOG 114
ENVI 214	Environment and Resources: NZ Perspectives	22	P ENVI/GEOG 114, GEOG 111; X GEOG 214
ENVI 314	Advanced Environment and Resources: Global Issues	24	P ENVI/GEOG 214 or approval of the Course Coordinator; X GEOG 314
EURO 101	Introduction to European Studies	18	
EURO 301	The Making of Modern Europe	24	P EURO 101, one of (FREN 211, 216, GERM 211, 216, 218, ITAL 211, 216, RUSS 205, SPAN 211, 216)
FHSS 111	Sexuality and Society	18	
FHSS 201	Special Topic	22	P, X to be set by FHSS Academic Committee

---

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**


---

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
FHSS 202	Special Topic	22	P, X as for FHSS 201
FHSS 203	Special Topic	22	P, X as for FHSS 201
FHSS 204	Special Topic	22	P, X as for FHSS 201
FHSS 205	Special Topic	22	P, X as for FHSS 201
FHSS 301	Leisure, Society and the Environment	24	P 44 approved 200-level pts
FHSS 302	Special Topic	24	P, X as for FHSS 201
FHSS 303	Special Topic	24	P, X as for FHSS 201
FHSS 304	Special Topic	24	P, X as for FHSS 201
FHSS 305	Special Topic	24	P, X as for FHSS 201
FHSS 306	Special Topic	24	P, X as for FHSS 201
FILM 101	Introduction to Film Studies	18	
FILM 220	Special Topic	22	P as for FILM 231
FILM 231	History and Criticism of Film	22	P FILM 101; 18 further 100-level ENGL, SEFT, MDIA or THEA pts; X DRAM 231
FILM 233	National Cinema A	22	P as for FILM 231; C FILM 231; X FILM 333
FILM 234	National Cinema B	22	P as for FILM 231; C FILM 231; X FILM 334
FILM 237	Cinema of Aotearoa/NZ	22	P 36 pts; X DRAM 311
FILM 238	Auteur Study	22	P as for FILM 231; X FILM 220 in 2000-2001
FILM 320	Special Topic	24	P FILM 231
FILM 331	Film Analysis	24	P FILM 231; X DRAM 331
FILM 332	Film Production	36	P FILM 231; X DRAM 332
FILM 333	National Cinema A	24	P FILM 231; X FILM 233
FILM 334	National Cinema B	24	P FILM 231; X FILM 234
FILM 335	Documentary Film	24	P FILM 231
FILM 336	Fem Film	24	P FILM 231 or GEND/WISC 202; X DRAM 322 in 1994 or 1995
FILM 337	Cinema of Aotearoa/NZ	24	P FILM 231; X DRAM 311, FILM 237
FILM 338	Genre Study	24	P FILM 231
FINM 371	Financial Mathematics	24	P MATH 113 or 115 or QUAN 111, 44 200-level MATH, OPRE, STAT, ECON, MOFI or QUAN pts; X FINM 365, FINM 861, QUAN 371
FREN 104	French Society and Culture	18	
FREN 112	French Language for Beginners	18	
FREN 113	Elementary French	18	P FREN 112, School Certificate or NCEA Level 1 in French (or equivalent)
FREN 123	French Language 1	18	P FREN 113 or NCEA Level 2 or 3 in French (or equivalent)
FREN 124	Introduction to Textual Studies	18	P FREN 113 or NCEA Level 2 or 3 in French (or equivalent)
FREN 215	French Language 2A	22	P FREN 123, C FREN 124; X FREN 211
FREN 216	French Language 2B	22	P FREN 215; X FREN 211
FREN 221	French Literary Studies	22	P FREN 123, 124

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
FREN 315	French Language 3A	24	P FREN 216 (or 211) or equivalent; X FREN 311
FREN 316	French Language 3B	24	P FREN 315 or equivalent; X FREN 311
FREN 331	19 <sup>th</sup> and 20 <sup>th</sup> Century French Literature	24	P FREN 211 or 216, C FREN 221
FREN 332	20 <sup>th</sup> Century French World Literature	24	P FREN 216 (or 211) and 221
FREN 333	17 <sup>th</sup> and 18 <sup>th</sup> Century French Literature	24	P FREN 216 (or 211) and 221
GEND 101	Introduction to Gender, Sexuality and Women's Studies	18	X WISC 101
GEND 201	Gender Analysis of Economic and Social Policy	22	P 18 GEND/WISC pts or approved alternative; X GEND/WISC 301
GEND 202	Reading Representations and Images	22	P as for GEND 201; X WISC 202
GEND 203	Oral History and Auto-biography	22	P as for GEND 201; X GEND/WISC 303
GEND 205	Gender, Power and Knowledge	22	P as for GEND 201; GEND/WISC 305
GEND 209	Special Topic	22	P as for GEND 201
GEND 213	Queer Sexualities, Histories and Politics	22	P as for GEND 201; X GEND/WISC 313, WISC 203
GEND 217	Feminist Theory	22	P 18 GEND, PHIL, POLS or WISC pts; X PHIL/POLS/WISC 217; PHIL/POLS 262 in 1999
GEND 301	Gender Analysis of Economic and Social Policy	24	P 22 GEND/WISC pts or approved alternative; X GEND 201, WISC 301
GEND 302	Feminist Writing	24	P as for GEND 301; X WISC 302
GEND 303	Oral History and Auto-biography	24	P as for GEND 301; X GEND 203, WISC 303
GEND 304	Feminist Economics	24	P as for GEND 301; X ECON 334, WISC 304
GEND 305	Gender, Power and Knowledge	24	P as for GEND 301; X GEND 205, WISC 305
GEND 306	Māori Women's Studies – Mana Wahine	24	P as for GEND 301; X WISC 306
GEND 307	Special Topic	24	P as for GEND 301
GEND 308	Special Topic	24	P as for GEND 301
GEND 313	Queer Sexualities, Histories and Politics	24	P as for GEND 301; X GEND 213, WISC 203
GEOG 111	Fundamentals of Geography	18	X GEOG 101
GEOG 112	Development in the Asia-Pacific	18	
GEOG 114	Environment and Resources: the Foundations	18	X ENVI 114
GEOG 212	Worlds of Development	22	P GEOG 112
GEOG 214	Environment and Resources: NZ Perspectives	22	P ENVI/GEOG 114, GEOG 111; X ENVI 214
GEOG 215	Introduction to GIS and Spatial Analysis	22	P 72 100-level pts
GEOG 216	Urban and Population Geography	22	P GEOG 111; GEOG 112 or GEOG/ENVI 114
GEOG 218	Landform Development and Coastal Processes	22	P GEOG 111; GEOG/ENVI 114 or 18 approved pts; C GEOG 223; X GEOG 213

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
GEOG 219	Climatic and Hydrological Processes	22	P as for GEOG 218; C GEOG 223; X GEOG 213
GEOG 223	Physical Environmental Processes: Field Methods	11	P GEOG 111; GEOG/ENVI 114 or ESCI 111 or 18 GEOL/BIOL pts
GEOG 311	Geography of NZ and Australia	24	P 44 200-level GEOG pts or (22 200-level GEOG pts, 22 approved pts)
GEOG 312	Gender and Development	24	P (GEOG 212, 22 other 200-level GEOG pts) or 44 approved 200-level pts
GEOG 314	Advanced Environment and Resources: Global Issues	24	P GEOG /ENVI 214 or the approval of the Course Coordinator; X ENVI 314
GEOG 315	Advanced Geographical Information Systems	24	P GEOG 215; 22 further approved 200-level pts
GEOG 316	Geographies of Globalisation	24	P 22 200-level GEOG pts
GEOG 318	Geomorphic Systems	24	P 44 200-level pts in GEOG 213, 218, 219 and 223 or approved GEOL or BIOL courses; C GEOG 323
GEOG 319	Atmospheric and Coastal Systems	24	P as for GEOG 318; C GEOG 323
GEOG 323	Advanced Physical Environmental Field Methods	12	P either GEOG 213, 223 or 33 200-level pts in a field science; X GEOG 318 in 1998
GERM 103	Introduction to the German Language	18	
GERM 104	Elementary German	18	P GERM 103 or equivalent
GERM 114	German Society and Culture 1	18	
GERM 115	Intermediate German	18	P GERM 104 or equivalent
GERM 214	German Economy, Society and Culture 2	22	P GERM 104 (or 112), 114; C GERM 217
GERM 217	German Language 2A	22	P GERM 104, Bursary or NCEA Level 3 German or equivalent; X GERM 112, 211, 215, 216
GERM 218	German Language 2B	22	P GERM 217; X GERM 211, 215, 216
GERM 314	German Society and Culture 3	24	P GERM 214, GERM 315 or 320; C GERM 316
GERM 315	German Language 3A	24	P GERM 218; X GERM 211, 215, 216, 311
GERM 316	German Language 3B	24	P GERM 315 or 320; X GERM 211, 215, 216, 311
GERM 318	German Literature 3	24	P GERM 211 or 216 or 218, GERM 213 or 214; C GERM 315 or 320
GERM 320	German Language 3C	24	P GERM 218; X GERM 211, 215, 216, 311
GERM 321	German Language 3D	24	P GERM 315 or 320; X GERM 211, 215, 216, 311
GREE 112	Introduction to Greek	18	
GREE 113	Elementary Greek	18	P GREE 112 or a required standard in Greek
GREE 215	Intermediate Greek	22	P GREE 113
GREE 216	Greek Literature	22	P GREE 215
GREE 315	Advanced Greek Literature A	24	P GREE 216; C CLAS 104
GREE 316	Advanced Greek Literature B	24	P GREE 216
HIST 111	Colonial Encounters: Pacific Experiences	18	

---

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**


---

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
HIST 112	Introduction to NZ History	18	X HIST 104
HIST 116	East meets West: Asia in the Age of European Expansion	18	
HIST 117	Europeans, Africans and Americans: Empires, Migrations and Encounters, 1400-1900	18	X HIST 105, 110, 113
HIST 118	Making Europe Modern: Citizens, States and Nations in the 19 <sup>th</sup> and 20 <sup>th</sup> Centuries	18	X HIST 105, 114, 115
HIST 215	Creating the United States, 1776-1890	22	P 36 pts from (HIST 100-199, CLAS 104, 105)
HIST 217	The US and Global Power, 1890-2000	22	P as for HIST 215
HIST 218	Historical Methods	22	P as for HIST 215
HIST 219	Pacific History	22	P as for HIST 215
HIST 220	Medieval History	22	P as for HIST 215
HIST 221	From Napoleon to the National Front: Revolution, War and Democracy in France since 1815	22	P as for HIST 215
HIST 222	Australian History	22	P as for HIST 215
HIST 224	NZ Labour History	22	P as for HIST 215
HIST 226	International History	22	P as for HIST 215
HIST 227	Māori and Pakeha in the 19 <sup>th</sup> Century	22	P as for HIST 215
HIST 228	Special Topic	22	P as for HIST 215
HIST 230	Gandhi, India and the World	22	P as for HIST 215; X HIST 216
HIST 231	Changing China: 1800 to the Present	22	P as for HIST 215; X HIST 225
HIST 232	The Worlds of Christopher Columbus	22	P 36 pts from (HIST 100-199, CLAS 104, 105, SPAN 212)
HIST 233	The Atlantic World, 1600-1850	22	P as for HIST 215; X HIST 228 in 1999 or 2000
HIST 234	Special Topic	22	P as for HIST 215
HIST 235	Special Topic	22	P as for HIST 215
HIST 236	Race and Racism in Modern European History	22	P as for HIST 215; X HIST 234 in 2004
HIST 237	Reconstruction and Representation: Politics, Identity and Film in post-1945 Europe	22	P as for HIST 215; X HIST 235 in 2003-04
HIST 309	Rural History – Rural Cultures	24	P 44 pts from HIST 200-299 or (22 pts from HIST 200-299 and one of CLAS 207, 208, ECON 204, 205)
HIST 310	Special Topic	24	P as for HIST 309
HIST 315	Media and the Modern USA: From Hiroshima to Hollywood	24	P as for HIST 309
HIST 316	New Zealand Social History	24	P as for HIST 309
HIST 317	New Zealand History	24	P as for HIST 309
HIST 318	Special Topic	24	P as for HIST 309; X POLS 373
HIST 321	International History	24	P as for HIST 309
HIST 323	Commonwealth History	24	P as for HIST 309
HIST 324	Comparative Labour History	24	P as for HIST 309
HIST 326	Chinese Intellectuals and Society from the 1600s to the 1990s	24	P as for HIST 309

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
HIST 327	Special Topic	24	P as for HIST 309
HIST 328	Women's History	24	P as for HIST 309
HIST 329	Special Topic	24	P as for HIST 309
HIST 330	Dissent and Resistance in Europe in the 19 <sup>th</sup> and 20 <sup>th</sup> Centuries	24	P as for HIST 309
HIST 331	Slavery and the Slave Trade	24	P as for HIST 309; X HIST 318 in 1999
HIST 332	The Holocaust and Genocide	24	P as for HIST 309
HIST 333	Crime in Fiction and Social History	24	P as for HIST 309; X HIST 416 in 1998
HIST 334	The Great Sacrifice: Social and Cultural Perspectives on World War One	24	P as for HIST 309; X HIST 327 in 2003-04
HIST 335	From Fascism to Forza Italia: a Cultural History of Italy	24	P as for HIST 309; X ITAL 235
HIST 363	A Topic in Political Philosophy	24	P as for HIST 309; X HIST 327 in 1995-2000; PHIL/ POLS 363
IDDN 211	Industrial Design	20	P DESN 113 or C ARCH 211
IDDN 212	Industrial Design	20	P IDDN 211
IDDN 213	Product Design	20	P DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112; X DESN 212
IDDN 271	History of Industrial Design	20	P DESN 171 or ARCH 171 or 172
IDDN 371	Industrial Design Theory and Criticism	20	P IDDN 271
INFO 101	Foundations of Information Systems	18	X INFO 211
INFO 102	Information Systems Development	18	C INFO 101; X INFO 212
INFO 201	Introduction to Information Systems Management	22	P INFO 101
INFO 221	Principles of Project Management	22	P 36 100-level pts; X BITT 301
INFO 222	Modern Systems Analysis	22	P INFO 102; X INFO 212
INFO 241	Introduction to Database Management and Programming	22	P INFO 102 or COMP 103; X INFO 213, COMP 302
INFO 301	Strategic Information Systems Management	24	P INFO 201 or ELCM 211; X INFO 311
INFO 320	Project in Information Systems	24	P 22 200-level INFO pts; X ELCM 320, INFO 314 in 1997-99
INFO 322	Information Systems Implementation	24	P 22 200-level INFO pts; X INFO 214
INFO 325	Telecommunications in Business	24	P 22 200-level INFO, ELCM or COMP pts; X INFO 314
INFO 341	Advanced Database Programming	24	P INFO 241; X INFO 312
INFO 381	Special Topic in Information Systems	24	P 22 200-level INFO pts
INFO 391	Research Paper in Information Systems	24	C 24 300-level INFO pts and permission of Head of School
INTP 113	Introduction to World Politics	18	X POLS 113
INTP 244	New Zealand in the World	22	P 36 pts from INTP 100-299 and/or POLS 100-299; X POLS 244
INTP 245	Foreign Policy Analysis	22	P as for INTP 244; X POLS 245
INTP 246	International Politics of Development	22	P as for INTP 244; X POLS 246
INTP 247	International Relations: Wealth and World Affairs	22	P as for INTP 244; X POLS 247
INTP 248	Conflict Analysis	22	P as for INTP 244; X POLS 248
INTP 249	Culture and International Relations	22	P as for INTP 244

## Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
INTP 351	Power and Policies in the European Union	24	P 44 pts from INTP 200-299 and/or POLS 200-299; X POLS 351
INTP 352	Globalisation, New Zealand and Australia	24	P as for INTP 351; X POLS 352
INTP 354	International Relations of East Asia	24	P as for INTP 351; X POLS 354
INTP 359	Directed Individual Study	24	P as for INTP 351; X POLS 359
INTP 362	A Topic in Political Philosophy	24	P 44 200-level HIST/ INTP/ PHIL/POLS pts; X PHIL/POLS 362
INTP 371	Conflict and Violence	24	P as for INTP 351; X POLS 371
INTP 372	International Organisations: Change and Continuity	24	P as for INTP 351; X POLS 372
INTP 374	International Relations Theory	24	P as for INTP 351; X POLS 374
INTP 375	Aid and Development	24	P as for INTP 351; X POLS 375
INTP 376	Special Topic in International Relations	24	P as for INTP 351
INTP 377	Non-state Actors in World Politics	24	P as for INTP 351
INTP 383	Researching Politics	24	P as for INTP 351; X POLS 383
ITAL 114	Introduction to the Italian Language	18	
ITAL 115	Elementary Italian	18	P ITAL 114
ITAL 206	Italy Through Fiction and Drama	22	P ITAL 115; C ITAL 215
ITAL 207	Italy Through Film	22	P ITAL 115; C ITAL 215
ITAL 215	Italian Language 2A	22	P ITAL 115; X ITAL 211
ITAL 216	Italian Language 2B	22	P ITAL 215; X ITAL 211
ITAL 235	From Fascism to Forza Italia: a Cultural History of Italy	22	P ITAL 115; C ITAL 215; X HIST 335
ITAL 306	Dante's Inferno	24	P ITAL 216 (or 211), either 206 or 207; C ITAL 316
ITAL 308	Contemporary Italian Literature	24	P as for ITAL 306; C ITAL 316
ITAL 315	Italian Language 3A	24	P ITAL 216; X ITAL 311
ITAL 316	Italian Language 3B	24	P ITAL 315; X ITAL 311
ITDN 211	Interior Architecture	20	P DESN 113 or C ARCH 211
ITDN 212	Interior Architecture	20	P ITDN 211
ITDN 214	Exhibition Design, Construction and Technologies	20	P DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112; X DESN 214
ITDN 215	Furniture Design, Construction and Technologies	20	P DESN 112 or 113 or ARCH 112; X DESN 215
ITDN 271	History of Interior Architecture	20	P DESN 171 or ARCH 171 or 172
ITDN 315	Furniture Design, Construction and Technologies	20	P ITDN 215 or DESN 215; X DESN 315
ITDN 332	Interior Architecture Colour and Lighting Technologies	20	P ITDN 211 or IDDN 211 or LADN 211 or ARCH 211; X DESN 234
ITDN 371	Interior Architecture Theory and Criticism	20	P ITDN 271
JAPA 104	Japanese Language 1	36	P JAPA 112, Bursary or NCEA Level 3 Japanese
JAPA 111	Introduction to Japanese Language	18	
JAPA 112	Elementary Japanese	18	P JAPA 111 or 6 <sup>th</sup> Form Certificate or NCEA Level 1 or 2 Japanese or equivalent
JAPA 201	Japanese Language 2	44	P JAPA 104

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
JAPA 211	Modern Japan	22	P 72 pts
JAPA 221	Readings in Japanese Culture and Society	22	P JAPA 104; C JAPA 201
JAPA 231	Japanese Linguistics	22	P JAPA 104
JAPA 301	Japanese Language 3A	24	P JAPA 201
JAPA 302	Japanese Language 3B	24	P JAPA 301
JAPA 311	Japanese Intellectual History	24	P JAPA 201; C JAPA 301
JAPA 321	Modern Japanese Literature	24	P JAPA 201; C JAPA 301
KORE 111	Introduction to the Korean Language	18	
KORE 112	Elementary Korean	18	P KORE 111
LADN 211	Landscape Architecture Design	20	P DESN 113 or C ARCH 211
LADN 212	Landscape Architecture Design	20	P LADN 211
LADN 213	Land Art Design and Construction	20	C LADN 211 or IDDN 211 or ITDN 211 or ARCH 211
LADN 271	History and Theory of Landscape Architecture	20	P DESN 171 or ARCH 171 or 172
LADN 273	Landscape Architecture Cultural Landscapes	20	P DESN 171 or ARCH 171 or 172; X DESN 274
LADN 371	Landscape Architecture Theory and Criticism	20	P LADN 271
LALS 101	Language and Communication	18	
LATI 103	Introduction to Latin	18	
LATI 104	Elementary Latin	18	P LATI 103 or a required standard in Latin
LATI 213	Latin Literature and Language A	22	P LATI 104 or a required standard in Latin
LATI 214	Latin Literature and Language B	22	P LATI 213
LATI 330	Advanced Latin Literature	24	P LATI 214
LATI 331	Advanced Latin Literature	24	P LATI 214
LATI 332	Advanced Latin Literature	24	P LATI 214
LATI 333	Advanced Latin Literature	24	P LATI 214
LING 211	Introduction to Linguistics	22	P 36 pts
LING 221	Sociolinguistics	22	P 36 pts
LING 223	Language Learning Processes	22	P 36 pts
LING 224	Interpersonal Communication	22	P LALS 101 or 54 pts; X COMM 202
LING 321	Discourse and Meaning	24	P LING 211 or 221
LING 322	New Zealand English	24	P LING 211
LING 323	Psycholinguistics	24	P LING 211 or PSYC 122
LING 324	Language Variation and Change	24	P LING 211; X LING 314
LING 325	Linguistic Analysis	24	P LING 211; X LING 220, 320
LING 326	Special Topic	24	P an approved 200-level LING course or approved alternative 200-level course
MAIN 101	Malay/Indonesian Language 1	36	X INDO 101, 121, 122
MAIN 111	Introduction to the Malay/Indonesian Language	18	X MAIN 101; INDO 101, 121
MAOR 101	Te Timatanga/Introduction to Māori Language	18	

## Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
MAOR 102	Te Arumanga/Elementary Māori Language 1	18	
MAOR 121	Wana Tū Te Wana/Māori Language	36	P MAOR 102
MAOR 122	Te Pūwhenuatanga o te Moana-nui-ā-Kiwa/The Peopling of Polynesia	18	
MAOR 123	Te Iwi Māori me āna Tikanga/Māori Society and Culture	18	
MAOR 124	Te Pūtaiao Māori/Science of the Māori	18	P 18 100-level MAOR pts or permission of the Head of School
MAOR 210	Kaupapa Tū Ngahuru / Special Topic	22	P as for MAOR 212
MAOR 211	Tū Te Wana Wana/Māori Language 2A	22	P MAOR 121 or permission of Head of School
MAOR 212	Te Ao Hangarau, ā Rehia/Culture, Performance and Technology	22	P 18 pts in Māori language and one of MAOR 122, 123, 124
MAOR 213	Te Kawa o te Marae/Marae Etiquette and Protocols	22	P MAOR 121 and one of MAOR 122, 123, 124
MAOR 214	Tikanga Whenua, Tikanga Moana/Māori Land and Sea Tenure	22	P as for MAOR 212
MAOR 215	Tā Te Māori Whakahaere Rauemi/Māori Resource Management	22	P 18 pts in Māori language and one of MAOR 123, ECON 130, ACCY 111; X ACCY 224
MAOR 216	Te Tiriti o Waitangi/The Treaty of Waitangi	22	P 36 100-level pts
MAOR 221	Tū Tū Te Wana/Māori Language 2B	22	P MAOR 211
MAOR 222	Te Aukorimiha, Te Auripomiha o te Reo/The Social and Political Development of the Māori Language	22	P 36 pts from MAOR 100-199
MAOR 311	Tiri Te Wana Wana/Māori Language 3	24	P MAOR 211
MAOR 312	Toi Māori/The Arts of the Māori	24	P MAOR 212 or 22 approved 200-level pts
MAOR 313	Ngā Tikanga Tuku Iho/Māori Customary Concepts	24	P 22 pts from MAOR 212-216
MAOR 316	Tōrangapū Māori/Māori Politics	24	P 22 200-level MAOR pts or POLS 206 or 353, or permission of Head of School
MAOR 321	Te Reo Karanga, Te Reo Whaikōrero/The Language of Karanga and Whaikōrero	24	P MAOR 311
MAOR 322	Te Tāhū o te Reo/Topics in the Structure of Māori Language	24	P MAOR 211, 222
MATH 103	Introductory Calculus	18	X MATH 113; QUAN 103, 111
MATH 104	Introductory Algebra and Discrete Mathematics	18	X MATH 114
MATH 113	Calculus 1	18	X MATH 114 and QUAN 111
MATH 114	Algebra and Discrete Mathematics	18	X MATH 113 and QUAN 111
MATH 206	Calculus 2	22	P MATH 113, 114 (or QUAN 203)
MATH 207	Linear Algebra	22	P MATH 114 (or QUAN 111, 203)
MATH 214	Discrete Mathematics 2	22	P MATH 114
MATH 223	Mathematical Modelling	22	P MATH 113, 114 (or QUAN 203); X MATH 209, (MATH 210 and 222)
MATH 301	Calculus 3	24	P MATH 206 or 209 or 222 or 223
MATH 308	Geometry	12	P MATH 113; C MATH 207; X MATH 217

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
MATH 309	Mathematical Logic	24	P MATH 207 or 214 or COMP 202; X MATH 409
MATH 311	Algebra	24	P MATH 207 or 214; X MATH 302, 303
MATH 312	Analysis	24	P MATH 206 or 207; X MATH 304, 305
MATH 314	Combinatorics	12	P MATH 207 or 214
MATH 322	Applied Mathematics	24	P MATH 206, 207 (or 209 or 210 or 223)
MATH 380	Special Topic	24	P 22 approved 200-level MATH pts
MATH 381	Special Topic	12	P as for MATH 380
MATH 382	Special Topic	12	P as for MATH 380
MDIA 101	Media: Texts & Images	18	
MDIA 102	Media, Society & Politics	18	
MDIA 103	Popular Media Culture	18	
MDIA 201	Media in Aotearoa New Zealand	22	P 18 100-level MDIA pts; 18 further 100-level ENGL, SEFT, MDIA, FILM or THEA pts or POLS 111 or SOSOC 112
MDIA 202	Television Studies	22	P as for MDIA 201
MDIA 203	Spectatorship and Commodity Culture	22	P as for MDIA 201
MDIA 204	Print, Communication and Culture	22	P 36 pts; X FHSS 221
MDIA 205	Popular Music Studies	22	P as for MDIA 201, or MUSI 181; X MDIA 220 in 2003
MDIA 206	Media and Digital Cultures	22	P as for MDIA 201; X MDIA 320 in 2003
MDIA 207	News Analysis	22	P as for MDIA 201
MDIA 220	Special Topic	22	P as for MDIA 201
MDIA 221	Special Topic	22	P as for MDIA 201
MDIA 301	Media Theory and Cultural Production	24	P 44 pts from MDIA 200-299
MDIA 302	Television Narrative	24	P as for MDIA 301
MDIA 303	Spectatorship and Public Space	24	P as for MDIA 301
MDIA 304	Journalism	24	P as for MDIA 301
MDIA 305	A Social History of Popular Music	24	P as for MDIA 301
MDIA 306	Media, Gender and Sexuality	24	P as for MDIA 301
MDIA 307	Digital Media Arts	24	P 44 pts from MDIA 200-299; X MDIA 220 in 2004-5
MDIA 320	Special Topic	24	P as for MDIA 301
MDIA 321	Special Topic	24	P as for MDIA 301
MOFI 201	Finance	22	P ECON 140 (or 110); QUAN 103 or 111 (or one of MATH 103-114); QUAN 102 (or STAT 131 or 191)
MOFI 202	Money and Banking	22	P ECON 140 (or 120)
MOFI 301	Corporate Finance	24	P MOFI 201 or FINM/QUAN 371
MOFI 302	Financial Policy and Management	24	P MOFI 201
MOFI 303	Monetary Economics	24	P MOFI 202, QUAN 111
MOFI 305	Investments	24	P MOFI 201 or FINM/QUAN 371
MOFI 306	Special Topic	24	P 22 200-level MOFI pts
<i>New Zealand School of Music courses – NB: courses marked with * are available to BA majors in Music Studies only.</i>			
NZSM 101	Composition 1	30	C NZSM 161, 162

## Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
NZSM 102	Sonic Arts 1 – Music Technology	15	
NZSM 103	Composition/Sonic Arts Second Study 1	15	C NZSM 161, 162
NZSM 110	Classical Performance 1	30	X NZSM 114
NZSM 111	Jazz Performance 1	30	C NZSM 115, 122, 163
NZSM 112	Performance Second Study	15	P audition
NZSM 114	Preparatory Musical Performance	10	P audition
NZSM 116	Improvisation for non-Jazz majors 1	10	X NZSM 111, 211, 311
NZSM 117	Improvisation for non-Jazz majors 2	10	P NZSM 116 or audition; X NZSM 111, 211, 311
NZSM 120	Large Ensemble 1	10	P audition
NZSM 125	Gamelan – Orchestras of Southeast Asia	10	
NZSM 130	Understanding Music	15	
NZSM 131	Hildegard to Avant Garde: Western Music 900-2005	15	X NZSM 135, C NZSM 162
NZSM 132	Jazz History	15	
NZSM 133	The Art of Jazz	15	X NZSM 111, 115
NZSM 150	Introduction to World Music	15	
NZSM 151	Music in NZ – Māori Music	15	
NZSM 152	Ragtime to Rap, African-American Music	15	
NZSM 160	Theory of Music: Basic Techniques	15	
NZSM 161	Musicianship 1	20	P entrance test
NZSM 162	Materials of Music 1	20	P entrance test
NZSM 163	Jazz Theory 1	15	
NZSM 170	Music Education 1	15	
NZSM 171	Workshops in Music Education 1	15	
NZSM 181	Sonic Arts 1 - Acoustics	15	
NZSM 201	Composition 2	30	P NZSM 101, 161, 162
NZSM 202*	Sonic Arts 2	30	P NZSM 102, 181; C NZSM 242, 265
NZSM 203	Composition Second Study 2	15	P NZSM 101 or 102 or 103
NZSM 212	Performance Second Study 2	20	P B- or better in NZSM 112 or audition
NZSM 216	Improvisation for Non-Jazz Majors 3	10	P NZSM 117 or audition; X NZSM 111, 211, 311
NZSM 217	Ethnomusicology Performance 1	20	P audition
NZSM 220	Large Ensemble 2	10	P NZSM 120 or audition
NZSM 225	Ethnomusicology Ensemble	15	P NZSM 125 or audition
NZSM 233	New Zealand Music	20	P One of NZSM 101-199
NZSM 234	Music in the Middle Ages and Renaissance	20	P NZSM 131, 162; X NZSM 334
NZSM 235	Music in the Baroque Era	20	P NZSM 131, 162; X NZSM 335
NZSM 236	Music in the Classical Era	20	P NZSM 131, 162; X NZSM 336
NZSM 237	Music in the Romantic Era	20	P NZSM 131, 162; X NZSM 337
NZSM 238	Western Music from the Late Romantic Era to 1939	20	P NZSM 131, 162; X NZSM 338
NZSM 239	Western Music from 1940	20	P NZSM 130, 162; X NZSM 339
NZSM 240	Free Jazz	15	P NZSM 132 or 133
NZSM 241	Jazz Rock Fusion	15	P NZSM 132 or 133

---

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**


---

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
NZSM 242	Electronic Music	20	P 15 100-level pts
NZSM 250	Ethnomusicology Techniques	20	P 30 100-level pts
NZSM 251	Pacific Islands Music and Dance 1	20	P 30 100-level pts
NZSM 252	Music of Asia 1	20	P 30 100-level pts
NZSM 253	Music in NZ Society	20	P NZSM 151 or 30 100-level pts
NZSM 261*	Musicianship 2	20	P NZSM 161; C NZSM 162
NZSM 262	Materials of Music 2	20	P NZSM 162; C NZSM 161
NZSM 263*	Jazz Theory 2	15	P NZSM 163
NZSM 265	Electronic Music: Theory and Analysis	20	P NZSM 242
NZSM 270	Theories of Music Education 2	20	P NZSM 130; C NZSM 271
NZSM 271	Workshops in Music Education 2	20	P NZSM 130 and audition; C NZSM 270
NZSM 302*	Sonic Arts 3	40	P NZSM 202, 242, 265; C NZSM 314, 341
NZSM 303	Composition Second Study 3	20	P NZSM 201 or 202 or 203
NZSM 312	Performance Second Study 3	25	P B- or better in NZSM 212 or audition
NZSM 314*	Electronic Performance	20	P NZSM 202 or 203
NZSM 317*	Ethnomusicology Performance 2	25	P NZSM 217
NZSM 320	Large Ensemble 3	10	P NZSM 220 or audition
NZSM 334	Music in the Middle Ages and Renaissance	25	P NZSM 262, one of NZSM 235-239; X NZSM 234
NZSM 335	Music in the Baroque Era	25	P NZSM 262, one of NZSM 234, 236-239; X NZSM 235
NZSM 336	Music in the Classical Era	25	P NZSM 262, one of NZSM 234, 235, 237-239; X NZSM 236
NZSM 337	Music in the Romantic Era	25	P NZSM 262, one of NZSM 234-236, 238, 239; X NZSM 237
NZSM 338	Western Music from the late Romantic Era to 1939	25	P NZSM 262, one of NZSM 234-237, 239; X NZSM 238
NZSM 339	Western Music from 1940	25	P NZSM 262, one of NZSM 234-238; X NZSM 239
NZSM 340	Historical Performance Practice	25	P NZSM 262, one of NZSM 235-239; X NZSM 440
NZSM 341*	Musical Multimedia	25	P one of NZSM 231, 233-254, 265
NZSM 344	Approaches to the Study of Music	20	P NZSM 262, two of NZSM 234-239; X NZSM 431
NZSM 350	Ethnomusicology	40	P NZSM 250
NZSM 351	Pacific Islands Music and Dance 2	25	P 40 200-level pts
NZSM 352	Music of Asia 2	25	P 40 200-level pts
NZSM 361*	Musicianship 3	20	P NZSM 261
NZSM 362*	Advanced Analysis	15	P NZSM 262
NZSM 363*	Jazz Theory 3	15	P NZSM 263
NZSM 370	Music Education 3	25	P NZSM 270; C NZSM 371
NZSM 371	Workshops in Music Education 3	25	P NZSM 271; C NZSM 370
NZSM 372	Quality Teaching in the Music Classroom: the Effective Teacher	25	P NZSM 270
OPRE 251	Operations Research	22	P STAT 131 or 193 or QUAN 102; one of (MATH 113, 114, QUAN 111)

## Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
OPRE 351	Operations Research	24	P OPRE 251, COMP 102, 22 pts from (MATH 200-269, STAT 231, QUAN 203)
OPRE 352	Simulation and Stochastic Models	24	P COMP 102; OPRE 251 or STAT 231 or 291 or QUAN 201 or 203; X COMP 349 in 1998-2003, COMP 312
OPRE 358	Special Topic	12	P OPRE 251 or 22 approved 200/300-level pts; MATH 113 or QUAN 111 or a comparable background in Calculus
OPRE 359	Special Topic	12	P as for OPRE 358
PASI 101	The Pacific Heritage	18	
PASI 201	Comparative History in Polynesia	22	P PASI 101 and 18 approved pts
PASI 202	Globalisation and Popular Culture in the Pacific	22	P as for PASI 201
PASI 301	Framing the Pacific: Theorising Culture and Society	24	P PASI 201, 18 pts in Māori, French or Samoan language
PASI 302	Special Topic	24	P PASI 201 or 44 200-level pts
PHIL 104	Argument and Analysis	18	
PHIL 105	The Big Questions	18	
PHIL 106	Contemporary Ethical Issues	18	
PHIL 107	Philosophy of Media and the Arts	18	
PHIL 111	Introduction to Logic	18	X PHIL 203
PHIL 123	Critical Thinking	18	
PHIL 201	Theory of Knowledge	22	P 36 PHIL pts; X PHIL 301
PHIL 202	Ethics	22	P 36 PHIL pts; X PHIL 302
PHIL 205	Indian Philosophy	22	P 36 PHIL pts or (18 PHIL pts, 18 RELI pts)
PHIL 208	Special Topic	22	P 36 PHIL pts
PHIL 209	Special Topic	22	P 36 PHIL pts
PHIL 210	Special Topic	22	P 36 PHIL pts
PHIL 211	Logic and Computation	22	P PHIL 111 or 203 or MATH 114
PHIL 215	Special Topic	22	P 36 PHIL pts; X PHIL 315 in 2006
PHIL 217	Feminist Theory	22	P 18 PHIL, GEND, WISC or POLS pts; X POLS 217, GEND/WISC 217; PHIL/POLS 262 in 1999
PHIL 222	Philosophy of Literature	22	P 36 PHIL pts; X PHIL 322
PHIL 224	Philosophy of Religion	22	P 36 PHIL pts or (18 PHIL pts, 18 RELI pts); X RELI 215, PHIL 324
PHIL 225	Metaphysics	22	P 36 PHIL pts; X PHIL 325
PHIL 226	Topics in Indian Philosophy	22	P as for PHIL 224; X PHIL 326
PHIL 227	Minds and Persons	22	P 36 PHIL pts; X PHIL 327
PHIL 228	Ethics and Genetics	22	P 36 PHIL/BIOL pts; X PHIL 328; PHIL 215/315 in 2002; PHIL 320 in 2001
PHIL 229	Philosophy of the Emotions	22	P 36 PHIL pts; X PHIL 329; PHIL 320 in 2003
PHIL 230	Ethics and Social Evolution	22	P 36 PHIL pts; X PHIL 330, PHIL 215/315 in 2003
PHIL 231	Philosophy of Language	22	P 36 PHIL pts; X PHIL 331

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
PHIL 233	Individuals, Societies and Cultures	22	P 36 PHIL pts; X PHIL 333
PHIL 234	Logic and Computation	22	P PHIL 111 or 235 or 335 (or 203 or 311) or MATH 114 or 309; X PHIL 211, 334
PHIL 235	Logic	22	P PHIL 111 or 234 or 334 (or 203) or MATH 114 or 309; X PHIL 311, 335
PHIL 261	Social and Political Philosophy	22	P 36 PHIL pts; X POLS 261
PHIL 262	Moral and Political Philosophy	22	P 36 PHIL pts; X POLS 262
PHIL 264	Ethics and International Affairs	22	P 36 PHIL/POLS pts; X PHIL 364, POLS 264; PHIL/POLS 361 in 2002
PHIL 269	Sex and Sexuality	22	P 18 PHIL pts or FHSS 111; X POLS 269, PHIL 369
PHIL 270	Philosophy of Film	22	P 36 PHIL/FILM pts; X PHIL 215/315 in 2004, PHIL 370
PHIL 301	Theory of Knowledge	24	P 40 PHIL pts including 22 from PHIL 200-399; X PHIL 201
PHIL 302	Ethics	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 202
PHIL 307	Theories of Existence	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 407
PHIL 308	Special Topic	24	P as for PHIL 301
PHIL 309	Special Topic	24	P as for PHIL 301
PHIL 310	Special Topic	24	P as for PHIL 301
PHIL 311	Logic	24	P PHIL 211 (or 203)
PHIL 312	Value	24	P as for PHIL 301
PHIL 313	Aesthetics	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 413
PHIL 314	Contemporary Philosophy	24	P as for PHIL 301
PHIL 315	Special Topic	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 215 in 2006
PHIL 316	Philosophy of Mind	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 416
PHIL 317	Feminist Philosophy	24	P 40 pts from (PHIL 100-399, GEND/WISC 201) including 22 at 200/300-level
PHIL 318	Philosophy of Science	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 418
PHIL 319	The Evolution of Life and Mind	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 419
PHIL 320	Selected Topic in Philosophy	24	P as for PHIL 301
PHIL 322	Philosophy of Literature	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 222
PHIL 324	Philosophy of Religion	24	P 18 PHIL pts, a further course from PHIL/RELI 200-399; X RELI 215, PHIL 224
PHIL 325	Metaphysics	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 225
PHIL 326	Topics in Indian Philosophy	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 226
PHIL 327	Minds and Persons	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 227
PHIL 328	Ethics and Genetics	24	P 44 PHIL/BIOL pts including 22 pts from PHIL 200-299; X PHIL 228; PHIL 215/315 in 2002; PHIL 320 in 2001
PHIL 329	Philosophy of the Emotions	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 229; PHIL 320 in 2003
PHIL 330	Ethics and Social Evolution	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 230, PHIL 215/315 in 2003
PHIL 331	Philosophy of Language	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 231

## Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
PHIL 333	Individuals, Societies and Cultures	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 233
PHIL 334	Logic and Computation	24	P PHIL 111 (with at least a B pass) or 235 or 335 (or 203 or 311) or MATH 114 (with at least a B pass) or 309; X PHIL 211, 234
PHIL 335	Logic	24	P PHIL 111 (with at least a B pass) or 234 or 334 (or 203) or MATH 114 (with at least a B pass) or 309; X PHIL 311, 235
PHIL 361	Ethics and Politics: A Selected Topic	24	P 40 PHIL pts including 22 pts from PHIL 200-299, or permission of the Head of School; X PHIL 461/POLS 361
PHIL 362	A Topic in Political Philosophy	24	P as for PHIL 301; X POLS 362
PHIL 363	A Topic in Political Philosophy	24	P as for PHIL 301; X HIST 327 in 1995-2000; HIST/POLS 363
PHIL 364	Ethics and International Affairs	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL/POLS 264; PHIL/POLS 361 in 2002
PHIL 369	Sex and Sexuality	24	P as for PHIL 301; X PHIL 269, POLS 269
PHIL 370	Philosophy of Film	24	P 40 PHIL/FILM pts, including 22 pts from PHIL 200-399; X PHIL 215/315 in 2004, PHIL 270
POLS 111	Introduction to Government and Politics	18	X POLS 110
POLS 112	Introduction to Political Ideas	18	X POLS 110
POLS 203	East Asian Politics	22	P 36 100-level POLS/INTP pts
POLS 205	The New Europe	22	P as for POLS 203
POLS 206	New Zealand Politics	22	P as for POLS 203
POLS 207	Modern American Politics	22	P as for POLS 203
POLS 208	Selected Topic	22	P as for POLS 203
POLS 209	Revolutions, Dictatorships and Ideologies	22	P as for POLS 203
POLS 210	Comparative Political Economy	22	P as for POLS 203
POLS 217	Feminist Theory	22	P 18 GEND, WISC, PHIL, POLS, INTP pts; X PHIL/GEND/WISC 217, PHIL/POLS 262 in 1999
POLS 218	Politics and the Media in New Zealand	22	P as for POLS 203
POLS 235	Institutions and the Policy Process	22	P POLS 111 or PUBL 201 or FCOM 110 or 18 LAWS pts; X PUBL 202
POLS 238	Power and Bureaucracy	22	P 36 CRIM, HRIR, IBUS, INTP, LAWS, MBUS, MGMT, POLS or PUBL pts; X PUBL 206
POLS 261	Social and Political Philosophy	22	P as for POLS 203; X PHIL 261
POLS 262	Moral and Political Philosophy	22	P as for POLS 203; X PHIL 262
POLS 264	Ethics and International Affairs	22	P 36 PHIL/POLS/INTP pts; X PHIL 264/364; PHIL/POLS 361 in 2002
POLS 269	Sex and Sexuality	22	P 36 pts from (INTP/POLS 100-299, FHSS 111); X PHIL 269/369
POLS 351	Power and Policies in the European Union	24	P 44 pts from POLS/INTP 200-299; X INTP 351
POLS 353	Growing Pains: NZ Politics 1975-2004	24	P as for POLS 351

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
POLS 355	Comparative Politics: Selected Topic	24	P as for POLS 351
POLS 356	Political Sociology	24	P as for POLS 351
POLS 357	Women and Equality in Politics	24	P as for POLS 351
POLS 358	How Democracies Vote	24	P as for POLS 351
POLS 359	Directed Individual Study	24	P as for POLS 351; X INTP 359
POLS 361	Ethics and Politics: A Selected Topic	24	P as for POLS 351; X PHIL 361/461
POLS 362	A Topic in Political Philosophy	24	P 44 200-level HIST/ INTP/ PHIL/ POLS pts; X PHIL 362, INTP 362
POLS 363	A Topic in Political Philosophy	24	P as for POLS 351; X HIST 327 in 1995-2000, HIST 363, PHIL 363
POLS 364	Transforming Politics: Democracy, Politics and the Media	24	P as for POLS 351
POLS 373	The Pacific Islands after 1945: The Creation of Pacific Nations	24	P as for POLS 351; X HIST 318 in 2004-05
POLS 381	Cabinet Government	24	P 22 200-level INTP/PUBL/POLS pts; X PUBL 304
POLS 382	Special Topic	24	P as for POLS 351
POLS 383	Researching Politics	24	P as for POLS 351; X INTP 383
PSYC 101	Popular Psychology	15	
PSYC 121	Introduction to Psychology 1	18	
PSYC 122	Introduction to Psychology 2	18	
PSYC 221	Social Psychology	18	P PSYC 121
PSYC 231	Cognitive Psychology	18	P PSYC 122
PSYC 232	Research Methods in Psychology	12	P PSYC 121 or 122; STAT 193 or 131 or QUAN 102 or approved equivalent
PSYC 233	Brain and Behaviour	18	P PSYC 122; X PSYC 231 before 2002
PSYC 234	Developmental Psychology	18	P PSYC 121; X PSYC 324 before 2003
PSYC 321	Abnormal Psychology	24	P STAT 193, PSYC 232, 18 further pts from PSYC 200-299
PSYC 322	Memory and Cognition	24	P STAT 193, PSYC 231 (or 233), 232
PSYC 325	Advanced Research Methods in Psychology	24	P as for PSYC 321
PSYC 326	Language, Thought and Social Behaviour	24	P as for PSYC 321
PSYC 327	Neuropsychology	24	P as for PSYC 322
PSYC 331	Visual Perception	24	P as for PSYC 322; X PSYC 224
PSYC 332	Behaviour Analysis	24	P as for PSYC 322; X PSYC 222
PSYC 333	Applied Social Psychology	24	P STAT 193, PSYC 221, 232
PSYC 334	Industrial and Organisational Psychology	24	P as for PSYC 321
PSYC 335	Psychology, Crime and Law	24	P as for PSYC 321; X CRIM 321
PSYC 336	Special Topic	24	P as for PSYC 321
PSYC 337	Family Psychology	24	P STAT 193, PSYC 232, 234
PSYC 338	Cross-cultural Psychology	24	P STAT 193, PSYC 232, 18 further pts from PSYC 201-299
PSYC 339	Special Topic	24	P as for PSYC 338
PUBL 113	Social and Public Policy: Values and Change	18	X SPOL 111, 112, 113

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
PUBL 201	Introduction to Public Policy	22	P ECON 130 (or 110 or 102) or POLS 111 or 36 pts
PUBL 202	Institutions and the Policy Process	22	P POLS 111 or PUBL 201 or FCOM 110 or 18 LAWS pts; X POLS 235
PUBL 203	Introduction to Public Economics	22	P ECON 130 (or 110 or 102) or PUBL 113 or 201; X ECON 224
PUBL 205	Development Policy and Management	22	P 36 POLS, PUBL, ECON, IBUS or MGMT pts; X POLS 236
PUBL 206	Power and Bureaucracy	22	P 36 CRIM, HRIR, IBUS, LAWS, MBUS, MGMT, POLS or PUBL pts; X POLS 238
PUBL 207	Environmental Policy	22	P 22 PUBL pts or 36 BIOL, ENVI, HIST, GEOG, LAWS, SOSOC or SPOL pts
PUBL 302	Public Management	24	P PUBL 202 or 44 200-level ECON, ECHI, HRIR, IBUS, LAWS, MBUS, MGMT, POLS or SPOL pts; X POLS 380
PUBL 303	Public Sector Economics	24	P PUBL 203 or ECON 201; C ECON 201; X ECON 307
PUBL 304	Cabinet Government	24	P PUBL 202, 22 200-level PUBL or POLS pts; X POLS 381
PUBL 305	Special Topic	24	P 44 pts from PUBL 200-299
PUBL 306	The Theory and Methods of Policy Analysis	24	P PUBL 201; X PUBL 301
QUAN 102	Statistics for Business	18	X STAT 193
QUAN 103	Introductory Mathematics for Business	18	X MATH 103, 113, 114, QUAN 111
QUAN 111	Mathematics for Economics and Finance	18	X MATH 103/113 and 104/114
QUAN 201	Introduction to Econometrics	22	P 18 100-level ECON pts, QUAN 102 (or STAT 131 or 193), QUAN 111 (or 103) or one of MATH 103-114; X QUAN 203 and STAT 231
QUAN 202	Business and Economic Forecasting	22	P one of QUAN 102, STAT 131, 193; one of QUAN 103, QUAN 111, MATH 103-114; X QUAN 302
QUAN 203	Quantitative Methods	22	P one of QUAN 102 or STAT 131 or 193; QUAN 111 (or MATH 113 or 114); X QUAN 201 and STAT 231
QUAN 301	Econometrics	24	P ECON 201 or 202; QUAN 201, 203 (or STAT 231)
QUAN 303	Applied Econometrics	24	P QUAN 203 or STAT 231 or 291; ECON 201 or 202
QUAN 304	Financial Econometrics	24	P QUAN 203 or STAT 231; ECON 201 or 202 or MOFI 201 or 202
QUAN 371	Financial Mathematics	24	P MATH 113 or QUAN 111; 44 200-level MATH, OPRE, STAT, ECON, MOFI or QUAN pts; X FINM 371
RELI 102	Contemporary Western Religions: From Jerusalem to Mecca via Rome	18	
RELI 103	Paths to Enlightenment: Introducing Asian Religions	18	

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
RELI 106	Prayer, Meditation, Trance and Ecstasy	18	
RELI 107	Religion, Law and Politics	18	
RELI 108	The World's Religions	18	
RELI 203	Civilisation and Cultures of Islam	22	P 18 RELI pts or 36 pts
RELI 205	Religions of India: Gods, Goddesses and the Sacred	22	P as for RELI 203
RELI 206	Buddhism: The Noble Path	22	P as for RELI 203
RELI 207	Judaism: Israel, Holocaust and Diaspora	22	P as for RELI 203
RELI 208	Christianity: The Search for Jesus in History, Text and Film	22	P as for RELI 203
RELI 210	Special Topic	22	P as for RELI 203
RELI 212	Religions, Culture and Politics in Aotearoa and the Pacific	22	P as for RELI 203; X RELI 202 and 319
RELI 221	Religion and Disenchantment: Politics, Power and the Sacred	22	P as for RELI 203
RELI 225	Religious Art and Architecture: Imagining the Divine, East and West	22	P as for RELI 203; X ARTH 225
RELI 226	Psychology of Religion	22	P as for RELI 203; X RELI 210 in 2000-01 or 2003
RELI 227	Special Topic	22	P as for RELI 203
RELI 250	Studies in Christian Theology: Jesus, the Gospels and the Coming of God	22	P 36 pts; X RELI 208
RELI 301	Spirituality and Nature	24	P 44 200-level RELI pts
RELI 302	Religion and Sex	24	P as for RELI 301; X RELI 315
RELI 303	Contemporary Spirituality	24	P as for RELI 301
RELI 305	Death, Dying and Religion	24	P as for RELI 301; X RELI 313 in 1995-96
RELI 310	Special Topic	24	P as for RELI 301
RELI 320	Religion, Political Violence and Terrorism	24	P as for RELI 301
RELI 322	Pilgrimage: Travellers, Trekkers and Tourists en route to the Sacred	24	P as for RELI 301
RELI 325	The Future of Religion: Spirituality and Globalisation	24	P as for RELI 301
RELI 326	Religion and Healing	24	P as for RELI 301; X RELI 310 in 2003
RELI 327	Special Topic	24	P as for RELI 301
RELI 328	Religion and Human Biology	24	P as for RELI 301; X RELI 210 in 2003, RELI 323 in 2003
RELI 329	Islam in the Contemporary World	24	P as for RELI 301; X RELI 327 in 2004
RELI 350	Studies in Christian Theology: Paul, the First Christian Theologian	24	P 44 200-level RELI pts
RUSS 102	Introduction to Russian Language	18	
RUSS 103	Elementary Russian	18	P RUSS 102
RUSS 113	Classical Russian Lit. in Translation	18	
RUSS 116	Russian Society and Culture A in Translation	18	X RUSS 216
RUSS 204	Russian Language 2A	22	P RUSS 103
RUSS 205	Russian Language 2B	22	P RUSS 204; X RUSS 310

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
RUSS 216	Russian Society and Culture A	22	C RUSS 204; X RUSS 116
RUSS 234	Modern Russian Literature in Translation	22	P 36 pts
RUSS 235	Classical Russian Literature	22	C RUSS 204; X RUSS 335
RUSS 236	Modern Russian Literature	22	C RUSS 204; X RUSS 336
RUSS 237	Russian Society and Culture B in Translation	22	P RUSS 116 or 36 pts; X RUSS 337
RUSS 304	Russian Language 3A	24	P RUSS 205
RUSS 305	Russian Language 3B	24	P RUSS 304
RUSS 334	Special Topic	24	C RUSS 304
RUSS 335	Classical Russian Literature	24	P RUSS 236; C RUSS 304; X RUSS 235
RUSS 336	Modern Russian Literature	24	P RUSS 235; C RUSS 304; X RUSS 236
RUSS 337	Russian Society and Culture B	24	P RUSS 216; C RUSS 304; X RUSS 237
SACS 301	Methods in Social and Cultural Research	24	P 44 200-level ANTH/CRIM/SOSC/SPOL pts or 44 approved 200-level pts
SAMO 101	Introduction to Samoan	18	
SAMO 102	Elementary Samoan	18	P SAMO 101
SAMO 111	Samoan Society and Culture	18	
SAMO 201	Gagana Samoa 2A	22	P SAMO 102 or equivalent
SAMO 202	Gagana Samoa 2B	22	P SAMO 201 or equivalent
SAMO 301	Gagana Samoa 3	24	P SAMO 202 or equivalent
SAMO 302	Interpreting and Translation	24	P SAMO 202 or other evidence of advanced Samoan, evidence of advanced English Proficiency
SEFT 101	The Literature, Film and Theatre of Aotearoa New Zealand and the Pacific	18	X ENGL 112
SOSC 111	Sociology: Foundations and Concepts	18	X SOSC 101
SOSC 112	New Zealand: Sociological Perspectives	18	X SOSC 101
SOSC 203	Population Studies	22	P (SOSC 111, 112) or 36 approved pts; X SPOL 207
SOSC 205	Sociology of Religion	22	P as for SOSC 203
SOSC 210	Biculturalism: Process and Policy	22	P as for SOSC 203; X SPOL 210, 310
SOSC 211	Interpreting Society	22	P as for SOSC 203
SOSC 212	Methods of Social Research	22	P as for SOSC 203; X SPOL 205
SOSC 214	Special Topic	22	P as for SOSC 203
SOSC 215	Gender: Politics and Policy	22	P as for SOSC 203; X SPOL 215, SOSC/SPOL 315
SOSC 216	Everyday Life: Time, Space, Bodies	22	P as for SOSC 203
SOSC 217	Special Topic	22	P as for SOSC 203
SOSC 303	Sociology of Deviance	24	P 44 pts from SOSC 200-299
SOSC 305	Social Organisation	24	P as for SOSC 303
SOSC 306	Special Topic	24	P as for SOSC 303
SOSC 313	Social Inequality	24	P as for SOSC 303; X SPOL 306

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
SOSC 314	Body, Health and Illness	24	P as for SOSC 303
SOSC 315	Gender: Politics and Policy	24	P as for SOSC 303; X SOSC/SPOL 215, SPOL 315
SOSC 316	Religion, Culture and Society	24	P as for SOSC 303; X SOSC 213
SOSC 317	Population and Policy	24	P as for SOSC 303; X SPOL 317
SPAN 111	Introduction to the Spanish Language	18	
SPAN 112	Elementary Spanish	18	P SPAN 111 or 6 <sup>th</sup> Form Certificate or NCEA Level 2 in Spanish
SPAN 113	Introduction to Hispanic Studies	18	X SPAN 212
SPAN 212	Hispanic Studies	22	P SPAN 112; C SPAN 215
SPAN 213	A Twist in the Tale: The Spanish and Latin American Short Story	22	P SPAN 113, 215; C SPAN 216
SPAN 215	Spanish Language 2A	22	P SPAN 112 or Bursary or NCEA Level 3 in Spanish; X SPAN 211
SPAN 216	Spanish Language 2B	22	P SPAN 215; X SPAN 211
SPAN 312	Hispanic Literary Studies: 20th-Century Texts	24	P SPAN 211 or 216, SPAN 212 or 213; C SPAN 316
SPAN 315	Spanish Language 3A	24	P SPAN 216; X SPAN 311
SPAN 316	Spanish Language 3B	24	P SPAN 315; X SPAN 311
SPOL 113	Social and Public Policy: Values and Change	18	X SPOL 111, 112, PUBL 113
SPOL 203	Special Topic	22	P as for SPOL 205
SPOL 205	Methods of Social Research	22	P either SPOL 113 and one course from (SOSC 112, ECON 130, POLS 111) or 36 approved pts; X SOSC 212
SPOL 207	Population Studies and Social Policy	22	P as for SPOL 205; X SOSC 203
SPOL 208	Ageing and Social Policy	22	P as for SPOL 205; X SPOL 308
SPOL 209	Social Policy and the Family	22	P as for SPOL 205; X SPOL 309
SPOL 210	Biculturalism: Process and Policy	22	P as for SPOL 205; X SOSC 210, SPOL 310
SPOL 214	Special Topic	22	P as for SPOL 205
SPOL 215	Gender: Politics and Policy	22	P as for SPOL 205; X SOSC 215, SOSC/SPOL 315
SPOL 217	Special Topic	22	P as for SPOL 205
SPOL 302	Social Policy and Administration	24	P 44 pts from SPOL 200-299
SPOL 304	Special Topic	24	P as for SPOL 302
SPOL 306	Social Inequality	24	P as for SPOL 302; X SOSC 313
SPOL 307	Special Topic	24	P 44 SPOL pts, including 22 pts from SPOL 200-299
SPOL 308	Ageing and Social Policy	24	P as for SPOL 302; X SPOL 206, 208
SPOL 309	Social Policy and the Family	24	P as for SPOL 302; X SPOL 202, 209
SPOL 315	Gender: Politics and Policy	24	P as for SPOL 302; X SOSC/SPOL 215, SOSC 315
SPOL 317	Population and Policy	24	P as for SPOL 302; X SOSC 317
STAT 131	Probability and Decision Modelling	18	

## Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
STAT 193	Statistics for Natural and Social Sciences	18	X QUAN 102, STAT 231
STAT 231	Statistics	22	P either MATH 113, 114, STAT 131 or a comparable background in mathematics and statistics; X QUAN 201 and 203
STAT 291	Applied Statistics	22	P STAT 193 or a comparable background in statistics
STAT 331	Statistics	24	P MATH 206, 207, STAT 231
STAT 333	Probability	24	P MATH 206, STAT 231
STAT 334	Special Topic	24	P 22 approved 200/300-level pts
STAT 338	Multivariate Statistics	24	P STAT 291
STAT 339	Special Topic	24	P 22 approved 200/300-level pts
STAT 392	Sample Surveys	24	P STAT 193 or equivalent, 44 approved 200/300 level pts; X STAT 439
THEA 101	The Live Act: Introduction to Theatre	18	
THEA 112	Cultural Encounters: the Literature and Theatre of Aotearoa NZ and the Pacific	18	X SEFT 101, ENGL 112
THEA 201	Theatrical Revolution: Drama from Realism to the Postmodern	22	P THEA 101, 18 further 100-level ENGL, FILM, MDIA, SEFT or THEA pts; X ENGL 217, 232
THEA 203	Space, Light and Text	22	P as for THEA 201; C THEA 201; X DRAM 203
THEA 204	Classic Theatre Workshop	22	P THEA 201, 203; X DRAM 205, 206, 305, 306; THEA 220 in 2001; ENGL 228 from 2001
THEA 205	Dramaturgy of the Real	22	P as for THEA 201; X THEA 305, ENGL 241, 341
THEA 206	Dramaturgy of the Avant-Garde	22	P as for THEA 201; X THEA 306, ENGL 242, 342
THEA 207	Classic Theatre	22	P THEA 101, 18 further 100-level ENGL, FILM, MDIA, SEFT or THEA pts; X ENGL 221, THEA 204, THEA 220 in 2001, ENGL 228 before 2006
THEA 208	Shakespeare	22	P THEA 101, 18 further ENGL, FILM, MDIA, SEFT or THEA pts; X ENGL 208
THEA 220	Special Topic	22	P 22 approved THEA or THFI or DRAM pts
THEA 221	Special Topic	22	P 18 approved pts
THEA 222	Special Topic	22	P as for THEA 221
THEA 301	Company	36	P DRAM 205 or 206 or THEA 204; X DRAM 301
THEA 302	Conventions of Drama and Theatre	36	P DRAM 205 or 206 or THEA 204; X DRAM 302
THEA 303	Composition, Production, Performance	36	P THEA 301 or 302; X DRAM 321
THEA 304	Directing	36	P THEA 301 or 302 or 323; X DRAM 304
THEA 305	Dramaturgy of the Real	24	P 44 pts from THEA 201-299; X THEA 205, ENGL 241, 341

**Schedule to the BA Statute, Part A (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
THEA 306	Dramaturgy of the Avant-Garde	24	P as for THEA 305; X THEA 206, ENGL 242, 342
THEA 307	Physical Theatre Methodologies	36	P THEA 204; X THEA 302 in 2004; THEA 323 in 2005
THEA 320	Special Topic	24	P 44 approved THEA pts
THEA 321	Special Topic	24	P 44 approved pts
THEA 322	Special Topic	24	P as for THEA 320
THEA 323	Special Topic	36	P as for THEA 301; X THEA 302 in 2004
THFI 221	Special Topic	22	P 22 approved THFI, THEA, DRAM or FILM pts
THFI 311	Collaborative Production	36	P THEA 301 or 302 or 323 or FILM 231; X THFI 323 before 2005; THEA 303
THFI 312	Topic in Theatre & Film	24	P as for THFI 221
THFI 313	Shakespeare on Film	24	P as for THFI 221
THFI 322	Special Topic	24	P as for THFI 221
THFI 323	Special Topic	36	P as for THFI 221
WRIT 101	Writing English	18	
WRIT 151	Academic Writing in ESL (English as a Second Language)	18	X WRIT 101
WRIT 202	Writing for Business	22	P WRIT 101 and 72 other pts or approval of course coordinator
WRIT 203	Writing for Print Media	22	P WRIT 101 and 72 other pts or approval of course coordinator

**Part B**

- (a) Courses from the BArch schedule not listed in Part A;
- (b) Courses from the BBSchedule not listed in Part A;
- (c) COMM, HRIR, IBUS, MARK, MBUS, MGMT courses from the BCA schedule;
- (d) Courses from the BDes schedule not listed in Part A;
- (e) Courses from the BEd(Tchg)EC schedule not listed in Part A;
- (f) Courses from the BSc schedule not listed in Part A;
- (g) LAWS 121.

*Note: As the BA degree must include at least 312 points from either Part A or Part B of the BA schedule, only the first 48 points from outside the BA schedule will count towards the degree.*

**BA(Hons)****Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts with Honours**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. Before enrolment, a candidate for the BA(Hons) shall have
  - (a) completed a degree of this University;

- (b) satisfied the prerequisites for the subject to be presented as listed in section 2, or been exempted from those prerequisites by the relevant Head of School;
- (c) been accepted by the relevant Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
2. The subjects for the BA(Hons) and their prerequisites are as follows:

**Group I**

**Anthropology, Art History, Classical Studies, Education, Film, Gender and Women's Studies, Geography, Greek, History, Japanese, Latin, Linguistics, Māori Studies, Media Studies, Modern Languages, Philosophy, Psychology, Public Policy, Religious Studies, Social Policy, Sociology, Theatre**

Prerequisite: the BA major requirements for this subject as listed in section 2 of the BA statute.

**Group II**

**Asian Studies, Chinese, Criminology, Economics, English, French, German, International Relations, Italian, Logic, Logic and Computation, Mathematics, Music Studies, Pacific Studies, Political Science, Spanish, Statistics and Operations Research**

Prerequisite as shown below:

**Asian Studies**

The BA major requirements for Asian Studies and for any other subject area in which a course is to be taken; either CHIN 212, INDO 211, JAPA 201 or, with the approval of the Director of the Asian Studies Institute, an equivalent level in another Asian language

**Chinese**

The BA major requirements for Chinese (or, with the approval of the Head of School, for Modern Languages or Asian Languages, including CHIN 311)

**Criminology**

The BA major requirements for Criminology, including CRIM 316

**Economics**

48 points in 300-level ECON courses

**English**

The BA major requirements for either English Language or English Literature

**French**

The BA major requirements for French (or, with the approval of the Head of School, for Modern Languages, including FREN 311 or 316)

**German**

The BA major requirements for German (or, with the approval of the Head of School, for Modern Languages, including GERM 311 or 316 or 321)

**History and Literature of Music**

The BA major requirements for Music

**International Relations**

The BA major requirements for International Relations, or with the approval of the Head of School, for Political Science

**Italian**

The BA major requirements for Italian (or, with the approval of the Head of School, for Modern Languages, including ITAL 311 or 316)

**Logic**

48 points in approved 300-level PHIL, MATH or COMP courses

**Logic and Computation**

48 points in approved 300-level PHIL, MATH or COMP courses

**Mathematics**

48 points in approved 300-level MATH courses excluding MATH 371

**Music Studies**

History and Literature Specialisation: the BA major requirements for Music Studies, including 50 points from NZSM 334-340

Ethnomusicology Specialisation: the BA major requirements for Music Studies, including 50 points from NZSM 350-352

**Pacific Studies**

The BA major requirements for Pacific Studies, including minimum competence in two Pacific Languages (e.g. Samoan, Māori or French)

**Political Science**

The BA major requirements for either Political Science or International Relations

**Spanish**

The BA major requirements for Spanish (or, with the approval of the Head of School, for Modern Languages, including SPAN 311 or 316)

**Statistics and Operations Research**

At least 48 points from OPRE 351, 352, STAT 331, 333

**General Requirements**

3. A candidate for this degree shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the degree within four years of first enrolling for it. In special cases this period may be extended by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences.
4. The course of study for BA(Hons) shall satisfy the requirements as specified in section 5 for the subject to be presented. The amount of practical work in a subject shall be as determined by the Head of School.

**Subject Requirements**

5. The personal course of study of a candidate shall satisfy the requirements for one of the subjects listed below, with such substitutions as may be approved under section 6:

**Anthropology**

Four courses from ANTH 401-489

**Art History**

Four courses from ARTH 401-489, including ARTH 401

**Asian Studies**

Four approved 400-level courses, including at least two from ASIA 401, 402, 489

**Chinese**

Four courses from CHIN 401-489, including CHIN 401

**Classical Studies**

Four courses from CLAS 401-489

**Criminology**

Four courses from CRIM 401-489

**Economics**

Eight courses from ECON 401-489, MMCA 401, MOFI 401-420, normally including either ECON 402, 403 or ECON 404, 405.

**Education**

Four courses from EDUC 401-489

**English**

Four courses from ENGL 401-489

**Film**

Four courses from FILM 401-489; one course may be replaced by an approved 400-level ENGL, THEA or THFI course

**French**

Four courses from FREN 401-489, including FREN 401

**Gender and Women's Studies**

Four courses from GEND/WISC 401-489

**Geography**

GEOG 489; 90 points in an approved combination from GEOG 401-488, PHYG 401-488

**German**

Four courses from GERM 401-489, including GERM 401

**Greek**

Four courses from GREE 401-489

**History**

Four courses from HIST 401-489

**International Relations**

Four courses from INTP 401-489

**Italian**

Four courses from ITAL 401-489, including ITAL 401

**Japanese**

Four courses from JAPA 401-489, including JAPA 401

**Latin**

Four courses from LATI 401-489

**Linguistics**

Four courses from LING 401-489

**Logic**

120 points in an approved combination including at least 60 points from PHIL 401-489 and at least 60 further points from COMP 425, 426, 432, MATH 409, 433, 434, 435, PHIL 402 or other approved courses

**Logic and Computation**

120 points in an approved combination from (COMP 401-489, MATH 401-489, PHIL 402) including at least 60 points from (COMP 425, 426, 432, MATH 409, 433, 434, 435, 439, PHIL 402); up to 30 points may be replaced by approved 300-level courses

**Māori Studies**

Four courses from MAOR 401-489

**Mathematics**

120 points in an approved combination from MATH 401-489; up to 30 points may be replaced by approved 300-level MATH courses

**Media Studies**

Four courses from MDIA 401-489

**Modern Languages**

- (a) Two courses from CHIN 401, FREN 401, GERM 401, ITAL 401, JAPA 401 MAOR 406 or SPAN 401;
- (b) one course from LING 401-489;
- (c) one course from CHIN 404 or 405, FREN 403, GERM 402, ITAL 407, JAPA 402, MAOR 404, SPAN 402 or one further course from LING 401-489 or an approved special topic

**Music Studies\***

History and Literature Specialisation: NZSM 431; 30 points from NZSM 433, 435, 436, 438, 439, 440 and 60 further 400-level points in an approved combination of courses

Ethnomusicology Specialisation: 60 points from NZSM 451, 453, 454 and 60 further 400-level points in an approved combination of courses

*\* Subject to approval in November 2005, the History and Literature of Music programme is replaced by Music Studies. From 2006, no new students will be accepted into the History and Literature of Music. Existing students may complete under the 2005 regulations provided they do so by December 2007, and should contact the New Zealand School of Music regarding the required courses.*

**Pacific Studies**

Four courses from PASI 401-489, including PASI 401

**Philosophy**

Four courses from PHIL 401-489

**Political Science**

Four courses from POLS 401-489

**Psychology**

PSYC 489; 90 points in an approved combination from PSYC 401-488

**Public Policy**

(a) PUBL 401-403 and MMCA 401

(b) 60 further points from PUBL 401-489

**Religious Studies**

Four courses from RELI 401-489

**Social Policy** (*Not offered in 2006*)

Four courses from SPOL 401-489

**Sociology**

Four courses from SOSC 401-489

**Spanish**

Four courses from SPAN 401-489, including SPAN 401

**Statistics and Operations Research**

(a) at least 60 points from 400-level OPRE, STAT or ORST courses;

(b)\* at least 60 further approved points from OPRE 401-489, ORST 401-489, STAT 401-489, ECON 406-409, 508, 509, FINM 467, SOSC 403

\* Up to 30 points in (b) may be replaced by approved 300-level STAT, OPRE, COMP, FINM, MATH or QUAN courses

**Theatre**

Four courses from THEA 401-489; one course may be replaced by an approved 400-level ENGL, FILM or THFI course.

**Substitution of Courses**

6. With the approval of the relevant Head of School, a candidate may replace up to 60 points worth of optional courses with substitute courses chosen from those prescribed for any Honours or Master's degree at this University. (See Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses.)

**Award of Honours**

7. A candidate shall become eligible for the award of Honours in a subject by completing the requirements for the degree within four years of first enrolling for the degree in that subject. (See sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions covering the award of Honours.)

**Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ANTH 406	Special Topic	30	
ANTH 407	Ideas and Approaches	30	
ANTH 408	Ethnographic Research	30	
ANTH 409	Perspectives and Problems	30	
ANTH 410	Current Directions in Anthropological Thought	30	

## Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ANTH 411	Topics in Social and Cultural Anthropology	30	
ANTH 412	Anthropological Perspectives on Development	30	
ANTH 489	Research Essay	30	
ARTH 401	Art History Methodology	30	
ARTH 402	Theory and Context in Art History	30	
ARTH 403	Collections-based Topic	30	
ARTH 404	Applied Topic in Art History	30	
ARTH 405	Special Topic	30	
ARTH 406	The Cultures of Collecting	30	X ARTH 405 in 2000-02
ARTH 411	Topics in Contemporary New Zealand Art	30	X ARTH 311
ARTH 415	Topics in 18 <sup>th</sup> Century Art	30	X ARTH 315
ARTH 489	Research Essay	30	
ASIA 401	Methods and Issues in Asian Studies	30	
ASIA 402	Studies in Contemporary Research on Asia	30	
ASIA 403	Asia and Europe	30	P ASIA 301 or 302 or EURO 301; X EURO 403
ASIA 489	Research Essay	30	
CHIN 401	Advanced Chinese Language	30	
CHIN 402	Classical Chinese Language and Literature	30	
CHIN 403	Traditional Chinese Fiction and Drama	30	
CHIN 404	Modern Chinese Literature and Society	30	
CHIN 405	Contemporary Chinese Literature and Culture	30	
CHIN 406	Special Topic 1	30	
CHIN 407	Special Topic 2	30	
CHIN 489	Research Essay	30	
CLAS 401	Literary Genre	30	
CLAS 402	Art	30	
CLAS 404	History and Historiography	30	
CLAS 405	Research Essay	30	
CLAS 406	Special Topic	30	
CLAS 420	Greek Field Trip	30	X CLAS 320
<i>For COMP courses see the BSc(Hons) Schedule</i>			
CRIM 413	Victims in the Criminal Justice System	30	X CRIM 515
CRIM 414	Issues in Crime Prevention	30	X CRIM 516
CRIM 416	The Sociology of Punishment	30	
CRIM 417	Special Topic	30	
CRIM 418	Researching Crime	30	
CRIM 419	Gender and Crime	30	
CRIM 420	Drug Use and Misuse	30	X CRIM 417 in 1999
CRIM 421	Special Topic	30	
CRIM 422	Race and Crime	30	X CRIM 417 in 2003
CRIM 423	Liberties, Rights and Justice	30	X CRIM 421 in 2003
CRIM 424	Trends in Policing, Security and Risk Management	30	P CRIM 311 or equivalent
CRIM 425	Environmental Criminology	30	X CRIM 318 in 2001-02, CRIM 320
CRIM 489	Research Paper	30	

## Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ECON 401	Topics in the Nature of Economic Inquiry	15	P MMCA 401
ECON 402	Advanced Macroeconomic Theory A	15	P QUAN 203, ECON 305; C ECON 403
ECON 403	Advanced Macroeconomic Theory B	15	P QUAN 203, ECON 305; C ECON 402
ECON 404	Advanced Microeconomic Theory A	15	P QUAN 203, ECON 314; C ECON 405
ECON 405	Advanced Microeconomic Theory B	15	P QUAN 203, ECON 314; C ECON 404
ECON 406	Economic Dynamics A	15	P 48 300-level ECON/QUAN/ OPRE pts
ECON 407	Economic Dynamics B	15	P ECON 406 or an approved economics or maths background
ECON 408	Advanced Econometrics A	15	P QUAN 301 or equivalent
ECON 409	Advanced Econometrics B	15	P ECON 408
ECON 410	Public Economics A	15	P ECON 307 or PUBL 303 or equivalent; X PUBL 410
ECON 411	Public Economics B	15	P ECON 201 or 410; X PUBL 411
ECON 412	International Economics A	15	P ECON 309 or 314 (or 201)
ECON 413	International Economics B	15	P ECON 309 (or 305)
ECON 414	Theories of Growth and Development	15	C ECON 415 (or ECHI 402)
ECON 415	Topics in Development Economics	15	P ECON 414 (or ECHI 401)
ECON 416	Labour Markets	15	
ECON 417	Labour Markets in the Global Economy	15	P ECON 333 or 416
ECON 418	Special Topic	15	
ECON 419	Special Topic	15	
ECON 420	Special Topic	15	
ECON 421	Asian Miracle Economies since 1945	15	P 24 300-level ECON, ECHI, HIST or IBUS pts; X ECON 419 in 2003
ECON 422	Industrial Organisation	15	P ECON 314; X ECON 418 in 2003
ECON 423	Macroeconomic Modelling of the New Zealand Economy	15	P ECON 305
EDUC 401	Contemporary Education Policy (Comparative)	30	X EDUC 501
EDUC 402	Contemporary Education Policy (NZ)	30	X EDUC 502
EDUC 404	Developmental and Educational Psychology	30	X EDUC 545
EDUC 405	Theoretical Foundations of Educational Studies	30	X EDUC 513 in 2000, EDUC 505
EDUC 409	Counselling Principles and Practice	30	P EDUC 370 and one 300- level EDUC or PSYC course; X EDUC 535
EDUC 413	Special Topic	30	
EDUC 414	Child Abuse and Neglect	30	X EDUC 514
EDUC 416	Research Methods in Education	30	X EDUC 532
EDUC 417	Special Topic	30	
EDUC 421	Curriculum and Assessment	30	X EDUC 521

## Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
EDUC 425	Education for the Indigenous People of the Pacific	30	X EDUC 525
EDUC 428	Early Childhood Care and Education	30	X EDUC 528
EDUC 429	Māori Education	30	X EDUC 529
EDUC 441	Research as Praxis: Māori and Pacific Nations Education	30	X EDUC 541
EDUC 442	Whakaakoranga Māori: Māori Learning and Pedagogies	30	X EDUC 542
EDUC 448	Difference and Diversity in Education	30	X EDUC 548
EDUC 450	Issues in Special Education	30	X EDUC 550
EDUC 457	Developmental Issues in Early Childhood Education	30	X EDUC 557
EDUC 459	Learning, Motivation and Professional Development	30	X EDUC 559
EDUC 489	Research Paper in Education	30	
ENGL 401	Medieval Studies: Beowulf	30	X ENGL 320
ENGL 402	Medieval Studies: Icelandic	30	
ENGL 403	Medieval Studies: Chaucer	30	
ENGL 404	Medieval Studies: Middle English Fictions	30	
ENGL 405	Medieval Studies: Old English	30	X ENGL 321
ENGL 406	Medieval Studies: Middle English Language to Early Modern English	30	X ENGL 322
ENGL 407	Medieval Studies: Troy and Troilus	30	X ENGL 307
ENGL 408	Medieval Studies: c.1400-c.1600 Cultural Revolutions	30	
ENGL 410	Renaissance Studies: Literature and Cultural Politics	30	X ENGL 407 before 1999
ENGL 411	Renaissance Studies: Spenser and Religious Controversy	30	X ENGL 408 before 1999
ENGL 412	Renaissance Studies: Political Shakespeare	30	X ENGL 409 (except in 1998), THEA 412
ENGL 413	Renaissance Studies: Milton	30	X ENGL 410 before 1999
ENGL 414	Renaissance Studies: Early Women Writers	30	X ENGL 458
ENGL 415	Renaissance Studies: Shakespeare's Classical Worlds	30	X ENGL 409 in 1998, THEA 415
ENGL 420	Modern Fiction: NZ Fiction for Children	30	
ENGL 422	Modern Poetry	30	
ENGL 423	New Zealand Literature	30	
ENGL 424	NZ Literature: James K. Baxter	30	
ENGL 426	Novel Studies: Biographical Fictions	30	
ENGL 427	18th Century and Romantic Studies	30	X ENGL 459
ENGL 430	Literary Scholarship	30	
ENGL 431	Literary Criticism	30	
ENGL 432	Post-Colonial Studies	30	X ENGL 457
ENGL 433	The Culture of Modernism	30	
ENGL 434	Modern Drama: Beckett and Churchill	30	X THEA 434
ENGL 435	The English Bible and English Literature	30	
ENGL 436	Inventing Ireland: Contemporary Irish Literature	30	

## Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ENGL 437	Literature and Technology	30	
ENGL 439	Journalism and Literature	30	
ENGL 441	A Special Genre	30	
ENGL 442	A Special Period	30	
ENGL 443	A Special Author	30	
ENGL 444	Special Topic	30	
ENGL 445	Special Topic	30	
ENGL 446	Special Topic	30	
ENGL 451	Drama and Theory	30	X THEA 401, 501
ENGL 452	Shakespearean Performance	30	X DRAM 402, THEA 402
ENGL 453	Drama and Theatre in Aotearoa NZ	30	X THEA 403
ENGL 489	Research Essay	30	
EURO 401	Europe and New Zealand	30	P EURO 301
EURO 403	Asia and Europe	30	P ASIA 301 or 302 or EURO 301; X ASIA 403
FILM 401	Studies in Film Theory and Aesthetics	30	
FILM 402	Film, Culture and Society	30	
FILM 403	National Cinema: Aotearoa New Zealand	30	
FILM 404	Video Production Project	30	
FILM 405	Scriptwriting	30	X THEA 405
FILM 406	Studies in Film Authorship	30	
FILM 407	Studies in Film Genre	30	
FILM 408	Avant-Garde/Independent Film and Video	30	
FILM 480	Special Topic	30	
FILM 481	Special Topic	30	
FILM 489	Research Project	30	
FINM 467	Actuarial Statistics	15	C STAT 331 or 333
FREN 401	Advanced French Language	30	
FREN 403	Advanced Translation	30	
FREN 406	17th and 18th Century French Literature	30	
FREN 407	19th Century French Literature	30	
FREN 408	20th Century French Literature	30	
FREN 410	Advanced Francophone Studies	30	
FREN 411	Special Topic 1	30	
FREN 412	Special Topic 2	30	
FREN 414	A Period of French Literature	30	
FREN 415	A Major French-Speaking Author	30	
FREN 418	Studies in French Society	30	
FREN 419	French Film Studies	30	
FREN 420	Introduction to Literary Theory	30	
FREN 489	Research Essay	30	
GEND 401	Feminist Theory and Methodology	30	X WISC 401
GEND 403	Recording Lives	30	X WISC 403
GEND 404	Gender, Work and the Economy	30	X WISC 404
GEND 406	Ngā Whakaaro Tohetohe o Ngā Wāhine Māori: Māori Feminist Theories	30	X WISC 406

**Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
GEND 407	Feminist Pedagogical Theory and its Application in Teaching Gender and Women's Studies	30	X WISC 407
GEND 408	Special Topic	30	
GEND 409	Special Topic	30	
GEND 410	Practicum in Gender, Sexuality and Women's Studies	30	X WISC 410
GEND 413	Queer Studies	30	X WISC 402
GEND 489	Research Essay	30	X WISC 489
GEOG 404	Geography of Development Studies	30	
GEOG 406	The Geography of Place, Power and Identity	30	
GEOG 409	New Zealand Resource Management	30	X ENVI 502
GEOG 410	Urban Studies	30	
GEOG 411	Special Topic	30	
GEOG 412	Economic and Political Change in Europe	30	
GEOG 414	Environment and Business	30	
GEOG 440	Directed Individual Study	30	P permission of Head of School
GEOG 489	Research Project	30	X GEOG 408
GERM 401	Advanced Language Study	30	
GERM 402	History of the German Language	30	
GERM 403	German Poetry	30	
GERM 404	German Drama	30	
GERM 405	The German Novelle	30	
GERM 406	The German Novel	30	
GERM 407	A Period of German Literature	30	
GERM 408	Medieval German Language and Literature	30	
GERM 409	A Major German Author	30	
GERM 410	A Major 20th-Century German Author	30	
GERM 411	Special Topic 1	30	
GERM 412	Special Topic 2	30	
GERM 489	Research Essay	30	
GREE 401	Greek Prose Texts	30	
GREE 402	Greek Tragedy	30	
GREE 403	Greek Verse Texts	30	
GREE 404	Research Essay	30	
GREE 405	Special Topic	30	
HIST 403	A Topic in Pacific History	30	
HIST 404	A Topic in the History of the United States	30	
HIST 407	A Topic in European History 1	30	
HIST 408	A Topic in Indian History	30	
HIST 411	A Topic in Historic Preservation	30	
HIST 412	A Topic in the History of Sport	30	
HIST 415	A Topic in Chinese History	30	
HIST 416	A Topic in the History of Crime	30	
HIST 418	A Topic in Public History	30	
HIST 419	A Topic in Historiography and Historical Method 1	30	

---

**Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute (contd)**


---

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
HIST 420	A Topic in the History of Race Relations in NZ	30	
HIST 421	A Topic in European History 2	30	
HIST 422	A Topic in NZ History 1	30	
HIST 423	A Topic in Historiography and Historical Method 2	30	
HIST 424	A Topic in Labour History	30	
HIST 425	A Topic in European History 3	30	
HIST 426	A Topic in Family History	30	
HIST 427	A Topic in NZ History 2	30	
HIST 489	Research Essay	30	
INTP 441	International Political Economy	30	X POLS 441
INTP 442	Armed Conflict and Human Security in the Asia Pacific	30	X POLS 442
INTP 443	International Relations Theory	30	X POLS 443
INTP 444	China and the World	30	X POLS 444
INTP 445	Global Civil Society	30	X POLS 445
INTP 446	A Research Paper in International Relations	30	X POLS 446
INTP 447	Global Governance	30	X POLS 447
INTP 448	Identity and World Politics	30	
INTP 449	Regional Integration in East Asia	30	
INTP 450	International Relations: Non-Western Political Theory	30	
ITAL 401	Advanced Italian Language	30	
ITAL 402	Italian Literature and Culture from Realism to Modernism	30	
ITAL 407	Special Topic	30	
ITAL 489	Research Essay	30	
JAPA 401	Advanced Japanese Language	30	
JAPA 402	Readings in Modern Japan	30	
JAPA 403	Modern Japanese Literature and Religions: Christianity and Buddhism	30	
JAPA 404	Japanese Intellectual History	30	
JAPA 405	Special Topic	30	
JAPA 406	Special Topic	30	
JAPA 407	Japanese Linguistics	30	
JAPA 489	Research Essay	30	
LATI 401	Latin Prose Texts	30	
LATI 402	Augustans	30	
LATI 403	Latin Verse Texts	30	
LATI 404	Research Essay	30	
LATI 405	Special Topic	30	
LING 401	Topics in Syntax and Semantics	30	
LING 402	Language in Culture and Society	30	
LING 403	Phonetics and Phonology	30	
LING 404	Psycholinguistics	30	
LING 406	Special Topic	30	
LING 407	Special Topic	30	

## Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
LING 408	Morphology	30	
LING 409	Pragmatics and Discourse Analysis	30	
LING 489	Research Essay	30	
MAOR 402	Ngā Āhuatanga Mahi Toi o Te Moana-nui-ā-Kiwa / Approaches to the Study of Oceanic Art	30	X MAOR 502
MAOR 404	Te Toi o Te Karanga me Te Whaikōrero / The Art of Karanga and Whaikōrero	30	X MAOR 504
MAOR 405	Ngā Kohinga Kōrero ā Iwi / Tribal Ethnographies	30	X MAOR 505
MAOR 406	Te Reo o Ngā Tohunga/The Language of the Masters	30	X MAOR 506
MAOR 407	Kaupapa Tūtahi / Special Topic	30	
MAOR 408	Tā Te Maori Rangahau/ Methodology of Māori Research	30	
MAOR 409	Te Ao Onamata / Issues in Traditional Māori Society	30	X MAOR 509
MAOR 410	Kaupapa Tūrua / Special Topic: Mātauranga Māori	30	X MAOR 510
MAOR 411	Te Ao Hurihuri / Issues in Contemporary Māori Society	30	X MAOR 511; MAOR 410 in 2001-03
MAOR 489	Kaupapa Rangahau / Research Essay	30	
MATH 409	Mathematical Logic	15	X MATH 309
MATH 431	Combinatorics 1	15	
MATH 432	Combinatorics 2	15	
MATH 433	Model Theory	15	
MATH 434	Set Theory	15	
MATH 435	Computability and Complexity	15	
MATH 436	Algebra 1	15	
MATH 437	Algebra 2	15	
MATH 439	Category Theory	15	
MATH 441	Analysis 1	15	
MATH 442	Analysis 2	15	
MATH 444	Nonstandard Analysis	15	
MATH 450	Geometry 1	15	
MATH 451	Geometry 2	15	
MATH 452	Topology 1	15	
MATH 453	Topology 2	15	
MATH 461	Differential Equations	15	
MATH 462	Chaotic Dynamics	15	
MATH 463	Wavelets	15	
MATH 464	Differential Geometry	15	P MATH 301 or equivalent
MATH 465	General Relativity and Cosmology	15	P MATH 464
MATH 468	Fluid Mechanics	15	
MATH 480	Special Topic	30	
MATH 481	Special Topic	30	
MATH 482	Special Topic	15	
MATH 483	Special Topic	15	
MATH 488	Project	15	C MATH 489
MATH 489	Project	30	C MATH 488

## Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
MDIA 401	Media Theory and Research Methods	30	
MDIA 402	Film, Culture and Society	30	
MDIA 403	Mass Media and Popular Culture	30	
MDIA 404	Television Drama	30	
MDIA 405	Diversity Reporting	30	
MDIA 406	Post modernity and Visual Culture	30	
MDIA 407	Media, Subjectivity and Identity	30	
MDIA 408	Media Policy	30	
MDIA 409	Special Topic	30	
MDIA 410	Special Topic	30	
MDIA 411	Print Culture Aotearoa/New Zealand	30	P MDIA 204; X LIBR 540 in 2000-01
MDIA 489	Research Project	30	
MMCA 401	Methodology	15	
MOFI 401	Options	15	P MOFI 201 (MOFI 301 strongly recommended), QUAN 203
MOFI 402	Corporate Finance	15	P MOFI 201 (MOFI 301 strongly recommended), QUAN 203
MOFI 403	Monetary Economics A	15	P MOFI 303 or ECON 305
MOFI 404	Monetary Economics B	15	P MOFI 303 or ECON 305
MOFI 405	Stock Prices and Volatility	15	P MOFI 301 or 305, QUAN 203
MOFI 406	Special Topic	15	
MOFI 407	Advanced Investments	15	P MOFI 201 (MOFI 301 strongly recommended), QUAN 203
NZSM 408	Composition/Sonic Arts Second Study	15	P NZSM 301-303, 308
NZSM 415	Small Ensemble Second Study	15	P audition
NZSM 416	Accompanying Second Study	15	P audition
NZSM 417	Opera Performance	15	P audition
NZSM 418	Large Ensemble	15	P audition
NZSM 421	Period Instrument Performance Studies	15	P audition; C 60 400-level NZSM pts
NZSM 431	Approaches to the Study of Music	30	P NZSM 262 and two of NZSM 235-254, 265; X NZSM 344
NZSM 432	Jazz Research	30	
NZSM 433	Twentieth-Century Music Studies	30	
NZSM 434	Research Project	30	C at least 30 NZSM 400-level pts
NZSM 435	Music in New Zealand	30	
NZSM 436	Schenkerian Analysis Seminar	30	P NZSM 262
NZSM 438	Studies in Early Music Notation	30	P NZSM 234 or 334
NZSM 439	Eighteenth Century Studies	30	P one of NZSM 235, 236, 335, 336
NZSM 440	Historical Performance Practice	30	P NZSM 262, two of NZSM 334-339

## Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
NZSM 441	Independent Project	15	
NZSM 443	Musical Multimedia	30	P 30 approved NZSM pts; X NZSM 341
NZSM 451	Ethnomusicology Fieldwork Theory and Technique	60	X NZSM 453
NZSM 453	Approaches to the Study of Ethnomusicology	30	
NZSM 454	Literature Review in a Selected Area in Ethnomusicology	30	
NZSM 456	Directed Independent Study	30	C at least 30 NZSM 400-level pts
NZSM 471	Research Methods in Music Education	30	
NZSM 472	Resourcing Music Education	30	
NZSM 491	Music Therapy Principles	30	
NZSM 492	Special Topic A	15	
NZSM 493	Special Topic B	15	
OPRE 454	Operations Research Applications	15	P OPRE 352, or COMP 312 or COMP 349 (in 1998- 2003);
OPRE 455	Network Applications in OR	15	P OPRE 351
OPRE 456	Optimisation in OR	15	P OPRE 351
ORST 457	Stochastic Models	15	P OPRE 352 or COMP 312 (or COMP 349 in 1998- 2003)
ORST 482	Special Topic 1	15	
ORST 483	Special Topic 2	15	
ORST 484	Special Topic	15	
ORST 485	Special Topic	15	
ORST 487	Project 1	15	
ORST 488	Project 2	15	
ORST 489	Project	30	
PASI 401	Theory and Methods in Pacific Studies	30	
PASI 402	Special Topic	30	
PASI 403	New Zealand Policy and Pacific People	30	
PASI 428	Internship	30	
PASI 489	Comparative Research Essay	30	
PHIL 401	History of Philosophy	30	
PHIL 402	Logic	30	
PHIL 403	Metaphysics and Epistemology	30	
PHIL 404	Philosophy of Values	30	
PHIL 405	Analytical Philosophy	30	
PHIL 406	Philosophy of Language	30	
PHIL 407	Theories of Existence	30	X PHIL 307
PHIL 408	Research Topic	30	
PHIL 409	Topics in Contemporary Philosophy	30	
PHIL 410	Special Topic	30	
PHIL 412	Readings in Historical and Contemporary Philosophy	30	
PHIL 413	Aesthetics	30	X PHIL 313

## Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
PHIL 416	Philosophy of Mind	30	X PHIL 316
PHIL 418	Philosophy of Science	30	X PHIL 318, 411
PHIL 419	The Evolution of Life and Mind	30	X PHIL 319
PHIL 461	Ethics and Politics: A Selected Topic	30	X PHIL/POLS 361
PHYG 401	Geomorphology and its Application	30	
PHYG 403	Special Topic	30	
PHYG 404	Hydrology and Water Resources	30	
PHYG 412	Natural Hazards	30	
PHYG 440	Directed Individual Study	30	P permission of Head of School
POLS 401	Some Aspects of Modern Social and Political Theory: Contemporary Political Thought	30	
POLS 402	A Selected Topic in Political Theory	30	
POLS 414	Selected Topic in Comparative Politics	30	
POLS 416	Culture, Institutions and Asian Development	30	
POLS 417	Comparative Politics: Europe	30	
POLS 418	Comparative Politics: Special Topic	30	
POLS 419	Government and Politics in New Zealand	30	
POLS 420	Selected Topic in Comparative Politics	30	
POLS 421	A Selected Topic in Political Sociology	30	
POLS 423	A Research Paper in Politics	30	
POLS 427	Special Topic	30	
POLS 428	Directed Individual Study: Parliamentary Internship	30	
POLS 432	Some Aspects of Policy Analysis	30	X PUBL 406, 407
POLS 433	Bureaucratic Power in Western Democracies	30	X PUBL 404, 405
POLS 436	State and the Economy	30	X PUBL 408, 409
PSYC 401	Theory and History of Psychology	15	
PSYC 402	Social Psychology	15	
PSYC 404	Abnormal Psychology	15	
PSYC 409	Fundamentals of Behaviour Analysis	15	
PSYC 411	Advanced Topics in Behaviour Analysis	15	P PSYC 332 or 409
PSYC 412	The Psychology of Criminal Conduct 1: Basic Concepts in Criminal Justice and Crime	15	
PSYC 413	Cognitive Psychology	15	
PSYC 415	Early Cognitive Development	15	
PSYC 417	Cognitive Neuropsychology 1: Perception, Attention and Memory	15	
PSYC 418	Language and Communication	15	
PSYC 421	False memories	15	P PSYC 322
PSYC 422	Drugs, Brain and Behaviour	15	P PSYC 233
PSYC 423	Culture and Social Behaviour	15	
PSYC 424	Drug Addiction	15	P PSYC 233
PSYC 425	Personality and Motivation	15	
PSYC 426	Social Psychology and Well-being	15	
PSYC 427	Discursive Social Psychology	15	
PSYC 428	Feminist Psychology	15	

## Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
PSYC 429	Psychology of Superstition	15	
PSYC 430	Political Psychology	15	
PSYC 431	Culture and Human Development	15	
PSYC 432	Applied Cross-cultural Psychology	15	P PSYC 338
PSYC 433	Current Issues in Cross-cultural Psychology	15	
PSYC 434	Conducting Research across Cultures	15	
PSYC 435	Traumatic Memories and Repression	15	P PSYC 322
PSYC 436	Autobiographical Memory	15	P PSYC 322
PSYC 437	Memory Errors	15	
PSYC 438	Theories of Violent Offending	15	
PSYC 439	Sexual Offending: Theories and Research	15	
PSYC 440	Directed Study	15	
PSYC 441	Family Psychology	15	P PSYC 337
PSYC 442	The Psychology of Criminal Conduct 2: Areas of Application	15	P PSYC 412
PSYC 443	Autism	15	
PSYC 444	Behavioural Neuroscience	15	
PSYC 445	Cognitive Neuroscience	15	P PSYC 233, 327, 444
PSYC 446	Cognitive Neuropsychology 2: Language and Higher Control	15	P PSYC 417
PSYC 447	Special Topic	15	
PSYC 448	Special Topic	15	
PSYC 449	Special Topic	15	
PSYC 451	Clinical Assessment of Adults	30	P PSYC 231, 233, 234, 321, 327, 332; X PSYC 450
PSYC 452	Child and Family Clinical Assessment	30	P PSYC 231, 233, 321, 327, 332; X PSYC 450
PSYC 489	Project	30	X PSYC 410
PUBL 401	Methodology in Public Policy	15	P MMCA 401
PUBL 402	Advanced Public Policy A	15	P PUBL 306 or equivalent
PUBL 403	Advanced Public Policy B	15	P PUBL 402
PUBL 404	Bureaucratic Power in Western Democracies	30	P PUBL 306 or equivalent; X POLS 433
PUBL 406	Some Aspects of Policymaking	30	P 48 300-level PUBL pts or equivalent; X POLS 432
PUBL 408	State and the Economy	30	P 48 300-level PUBL or POLS pts; X POLS 436
PUBL 410	Public Economics A	15	P PUBL 303 or ECON 307 or equivalent; X ECON 410
PUBL 411	Public Economics B	15	P ECON 201 or PUBL 410; X ECON 411
PUBL 412	Special Topic	15	
PUBL 413	Special Topic	15	
PUBL 414	Special Topic	15	
PUBL 415	Special Topic	15	
RELI 401	Methods and Issues in the Study of Religion	30	
RELI 418	Special Topic	30	
RELI 419	Special Topic	30	

## Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
RELI 422	Advanced Studies in Religion and Politics	30	X RELI 417
RELI 423	Advanced Studies in Science and Religion	30	
RELI 424	Advanced Studies in Religion and Society	30	X RELI 407
RELI 425	Advanced Studies in Asian Religions	30	X RELI 405
RELI 426	Advanced Studies in Western Religions	30	X RELI 415
RELI 427	Advanced Studies in Religious Texts	30	
RELI 428	Advanced Studies in the Language of Religious Texts	30	X RELI 409
RELI 489	Research Essay	30	
SACS 401	Methods in Social Science Research	30	X SACS 501, SSRE 511, 521
SOSC 401	Rethinking the Social	30	
SOSC 402	Religion, Deviance and Identity	30	
SOSC 403	Demography	30	
SOSC 404	The Body and Society	30	
SOSC 407	Social Inequality	30	
SOSC 409	Gender, Sexuality and Health	30	
SOSC 410	Culture and Ideology	30	
SOSC 412	Family and Intimate Relations	30	
SOSC 413	Special Topic	30	
SOSC 414	Special Topic	30	
SOSC 489	Research Paper	30	
SPAN 401	Advanced Spanish Language	30	
SPAN 402	19th and 20th Century Spanish Narrative	30	
SPAN 403	19th and 20th Century Latin American Literature	30	
SPAN 404	Spanish Golden Age Literature	30	
SPAN 405	Special Topic 1	30	
SPAN 406	Special Topic 2	30	
SPAN 489	Research Essay	30	
SPOL 401	Theories of Welfare	30	
SPOL 402	Social Policy Analysis	30	
SPOL 403	Social Policy and Population Trends	30	
SPOL 404	Policy and Programme Implementation	30	
SPOL 405	Special Topic	30	
SPOL 406	Social Analysis in Policy-Making	30	
SPOL 489	Research Essay	30	
STAT 434	Statistical Inference	15	P STAT 331
STAT 435	Time Series	15	P STAT 331 or STAT 333
STAT 436	Forecasting	15	P 48 approved 300-level OPRE, QUAN or STAT pts
STAT 437	Probability	15	P STAT 333; MATH 301 or 312 recommended
STAT 438	Applied Statistics	15	P STAT 331
STAT 439	Sample Surveys	15	P STAT 193 or equivalent; 44 further approved 200/300 level pts; X STAT 392
STAT 441	Stochastic Processes	15	P STAT 331 or 333
THEA 401	Drama and Theory	30	X THEA 501, ENGL 451

**Schedule to the BA(Hons) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
THEA 402	Shakespearean Performance	30	X DRAM 402, ENGL 452
THEA 403	Drama and Theatre in Aotearoa NZ	30	X ENGL 453
THEA 404	Community Theatre	30	
THEA 405	Scriptwriting	30	X FILM 405
THEA 406	Special Topic	30	
THEA 412	Renaissance Studies: Political Shakespeare	30	X ENGL 412
THEA 415	Renaissance Studies: Shakespeare's Classical Worlds	30	X ENGL 415
THEA 434	Modern Drama: Beckett and Churchill	30	X ENGL 434
THEA 480	Special Topic	30	
THEA 489	Research Project	30	
THFI 480	Special Topic	30	
THFI 489	Research Project	30	

**MA****Statute for the Degree of Master of Arts**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MA degree shall have
  - (i) completed a BA(Hons) degree with First or Second Class Honours;
  - (ii) satisfied the prerequisites listed in section 2 for the subject to be presented or been exempted from those prerequisites by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences; and
  - (iii) been accepted by the relevant Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) In exceptional circumstances, requirement (a)(i) may be waived if the candidate has either
  - (i) completed a BA(Hons) degree with Third Class Honours (or a BA or another degree of a New Zealand university); or
  - (ii) produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Associate Dean of extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.
2. The subjects for the MA are as follows:
 

Anthropology, Applied Linguistics, Art History, Asian Studies, Chinese, Classical Studies, Classics, Communications, Creative Writing, Criminology, Economic History, Economics, Education, English, Film, French, Gender and Women's Studies, Geography, German, History, International Relations, Italian, Japanese, Library and Information Studies, Linguistics, Logic, Logic and Computation, Māori Studies, Mathematics, Mathematics Education, Media Studies, Midwifery, Modern Languages, Museum and Heritage Studies\*, Musicology\*, New Zealand

Literature, New Zealand Studies\*, Nursing, Pacific Studies, Philosophy, Political Science, Psychology, Public Policy, Recreation and Leisure Studies, Religious Studies, Social Policy, Sociology, Spanish, Statistics and Operations Research, TESOL, Theatre

\* *Subject to approval*

Candidates for the MA shall, before enrolment, have completed

- (a) a BA(Hons) degree in the subject being presented, or in a subject from which a course was included in the personal course of study for the BA(Hons), or, with the approval of the Associate Dean, an approved alternative BA(Hons) degree; or
- (b) in the case of MA in Applied Linguistics (or TESOL) by coursework, a Bachelor's degree (or equivalent qualification) in Linguistics, English Language, Education or a language other than English (or another relevant degree), and at least two years of professional experience in language education or other aspects of applied linguistics; or
- (c) in the case of MA in Communications, a degree of a New Zealand university and a Diploma in Communications or Master of Communications, or other qualification as approved by the Head of School; or
- (d) in the case of MA in Creative Writing, a university degree and provided satisfactory written and/or published evidence of appropriate literary ability in English; or
- (e) in the case of MA in Library and Information Studies, a degree of a New Zealand university and a DipLIS or MLIS, or other qualification as approved by the Head of School; or
- (f) in the case of MA in Linguistics by coursework, a Bachelor's degree (or equivalent qualification) in Linguistics, English Language or a language other than English, and at least two years of professional experience in dealing with linguistic matters.

### General Requirements

3. (a) The course of study for the MA shall be a thesis or a combination of courses, and/or research projects worth at least 120 points, as prescribed in section 5 for the subject being presented.
- (b) The Head of School shall determine at enrolment the values of marks for the different components. If a thesis is presented, it shall contribute at least 60% of the total marks.
4. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters (at least three trimesters for thesis students) and shall complete the degree within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may vary these periods in special cases.

### Subject Requirements

5. Except as provided in section 6, the personal course of study of a candidate shall satisfy the requirements for one of the subjects listed below:

#### **Anthropology**

Thesis (ANTH 591)

**Applied Linguistics**

- (a) Thesis (ALIN 591); or
- (b) 180 points from LALS 510-584, including LALS 540 and 541\*; or
- (c) (for candidates with a DipTESOL or equivalent qualification, or with a BA(Hons) or equivalent in a relevant subject) 120 points from LALS 510-584, including LALS 540 and 541\*.

\* *The Head of School may approve the substitution in (b) of up to 60 points of appropriate 400, 500 or 800-level courses from this University or equivalent courses at another university. The Head of School may also permit substitution in (b) or (c) of other 500-level LALS courses for LALS 540 and/or 541 where a candidate has already covered equivalent material.*

**Art History**

Thesis (ARTH 591)

**Asian Studies**

Thesis (ASIA 591)

**Chinese**

Thesis (CHIN 591)

**Classical Studies**

- (a) Thesis (CLAS 591); or, where appropriate to a student's research,
- (b) Thesis (CLAS 591) and one or two approved courses from the BA(Hons) schedule; the assessment for the course(s) shall not exceed 40% of the total.

**Classics**

Thesis (CLAS 592)

**Communications**

Thesis (COMM 591)

**Creative Writing**

Portfolio - CREW 591 (Creative Writing) or CREW 592 (Scriptwriting)

**Criminology**

Thesis (CRIM 591)

**Economic History**

Thesis (ECHI 591)

**Economics**

Thesis (ECON 591)

**Education**

Thesis (EDUC 591)

**English**

- (a) Thesis (ENGL 591); or
- (b) Thesis (ENGL 592) [75%] and one approved course from ENGL 401-460\* [25%]; or
- (c) Research project (ENGL 595) [50%] and two approved courses from ENGL 401-460\* [50%].

\* *The Head of School may approve the substitution of another course at 400/500 level for one of the courses in (b) or (c).*

**Film**

Thesis (FILM 591), which may be based on practical work

**French**

Thesis (FREN 591)

**Gender and Women's Studies**

Thesis (GEND 591)

**Geography**

Thesis (GEOG 591)

**German**

Thesis (GERM 591)

**History**

Thesis (HIST 591)

**International Relations**

- (a) Thesis (POLS 592); or, where appropriate to a student's research, either
- (b) Thesis (POLS 592) and an internship (POLS 594); or
- (c) Thesis (POLS 592) and one or two approved courses from the BA(Hons) schedule; the assessment for the courses shall not exceed 40% of the total.

**Italian**

Thesis (ITAL 591)

**Japanese**

Thesis (JAPA 591)

**Library and Information Studies**

- (a) Thesis (LIBR 591); or, where appropriate to a student's research,
- (b) Thesis (LIBR 591) and up to four approved courses from the MLIS schedule; the assessment for the course(s) shall not exceed 40% of the total.

**Linguistics**

- (a) Thesis (LING 591); or
- (b) 180 points from LALS 510-584, including at least two courses from LALS 561-563\*; or
- (c) (for candidates with a BA(Hons) or equivalent in a relevant subject) 120 points from LALS 510-584, including at least two courses from LALS 561-563.

\* *The Head of School may approve the substitution in (b) of up to 60 points of appropriate 400, 500 or 800-level courses from this University or equivalent courses at another university. The Head of School may also permit substitution in (b) or (c) of other 500-level LALS courses for any of LALS 561-563 where a candidate has already covered equivalent material.*

**Logic**

Thesis (LOGI 591)

**Logic and Computation**

Thesis (LOCO 591)

**Māori Studies**

- (a) Thesis (MAOR 591); or
- (b) Thesis (MAOR 592) [75%] and MAOR 408\* [25%]; or

- (c) Research project (MAOR 595) [50%], MAOR 408\* [25%] and one course from MAOR 502-511 [25%]; or  
 (d) Research paper (MAOR 589) [25%], MAOR 408\* [25%] and two courses from MAOR 502-511 [50%].

\* If MAOR 408 has already been passed for BA(Hons), it may be replaced in (b), (c) or (d) by an approved course from MAOR 502-511; one optional course in (b), (c) or (d) may be replaced by an approved Honours or Master's course.

#### **Mathematics**

- (a) Thesis (MATH 591); or  
 (b) Thesis (MATH 591) and MATH 548 and/or 549; or  
 (c) Advanced Course of Study (MATH 592) comprising an approved combination of reading and lecture courses together with a research project.

#### **Mathematics Education**

Thesis (MXED 591)

#### **Media Studies**

Thesis (MDIA 591)

#### **Midwifery\***

Thesis (MIDW 591)

\* No new enrolments from 2004

#### **Modern Languages**

- (a) Thesis (LANG 591); or, where appropriate to a student's research,  
 (b) Thesis (LANG 591) and one or two approved courses from the BA(Hons) schedule or LANG 501 and /or 502; the assessment for the course(s) shall not exceed 40% of the total.

#### **Museum and Heritage Studies\***

Thesis (MHST 591)

\* Subject to approval in November 2005

#### **Musicology**

Thesis (NZSM 591)\* which may include a supplementary research component relevant to the topic of the thesis (comprising 25% of the final grade).

\* Subject to approval in November 2005

#### **New Zealand Literature**

- (a) Thesis (NZLI 591); or  
 (b) Thesis (NZLI 592) [75%] and one approved 400 or 500-level course; or  
 (c) Thesis (NZLI 593) [50%] and two approved 400 or 500-level courses.

#### **New Zealand Studies\***

Thesis (NZST 591)

\* Subject to approval

#### **Nursing\***

Thesis (NURS 591)

\* No new enrolments from 2004

**Pacific Studies**

Thesis (PASI 591)

**Philosophy**

Thesis (PHIL 591)

**Political Science**

- (a) Thesis (POLS 591); or, where appropriate to a student's research, either
- (b) Thesis (POLS 591) and an internship (POLS 594); passing the internship is a mandatory requirement; or
- (c) Thesis (POLS 591) and one or two approved courses from the BA(Hons) schedule; the assessment for the course(s) shall not exceed 40% of the total.

**Psychology**

Thesis (PSYC 591)

**Public Policy**

Thesis (PUBL 591)

**Recreation and Leisure Studies\***

Thesis (RECN 591)

*\* Not offered in 2006***Religious Studies**

Thesis (RELI 591)

**Social Policy**

- (a) Thesis (SPOL 591); or, where appropriate to a student's research,
- (b) Thesis (SPOL 591) and one or two approved courses from the BA(Hons) schedule; the assessment for the course(s) shall not exceed 40% of the total.

**Sociology**

- (a) Thesis (SOSC 591); or, where appropriate to a student's research,
- (b) Thesis (SOSC 591) and one or two approved courses from the BA(Hons) or MA schedule; the assessment for the courses shall not exceed 40% of the total.

**Spanish**

Thesis (SPAN 591)

**Statistics and Operations Research**

- (a) Thesis (ORST 591); or
- (b) Thesis (ORST 592) with the addition of 30 points from approved courses\*; or
- (c) Thesis (ORST 595) with the addition of 60 points from approved courses\*; or
- (d) Research Project (ORST 588) and 90 points from approved courses\*.

\* ORST 501-506, all 400-level OPRE, ORST or STAT courses, ECON 406-409, 508, 509, FINM 467, SOSC 403.

**Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages (TESOL)**

- (a) Thesis (ALIN 592); or
- (b) 180 points from LALS 510-584\*, including LALS 510-515; or
- (c) (for candidates with a DipTESOL or equivalent qualification, or with a BA(Hons) or equivalent in a relevant subject) 120 points from LALS 510-584\*, including LALS 510-515.

\* *The Head of School may approve the substitution in (b) of up to 60 points of appropriate 400, 500 or 800-level courses from this University or equivalent courses at another university. The Head of School may also permit substitution in (b) or (c) of other 500-level LALS courses for any of LALS 510-515 where a candidate has already covered equivalent material.*

### Theatre

Thesis (THEA 591), which may be based on practical work

### Substitution of Courses

6. With the approval of the relevant Head of School, a candidate may replace optional courses worth up to 60 points with courses of at least an equivalent points value. (See Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses.) Unless otherwise specified in section 5, substitute courses are restricted to those prescribed for Honours or Master's degrees at this University.

### Award of Distinction or Merit

7. The MA may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Schedule to the MA Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions (X)
ENGL 592	Thesis	90	
ENGL 595	Research Project	60	
LALS 510	Methodology 1	15	X ELIN 805
LALS 511	Methodology 2	15	
LALS 512	Description of English 1	15	
LALS 513	Description of English 2	15	
LALS 514	Language Learning Processes	15	X ELIN 803 from 2000
LALS 515	Language Curriculum Design	15	X LALS 505
LALS 516	Special Topic	15	
LALS 517	Special Topic	15	
LALS 518	Special Topic	15	
LALS 519	Special Topic	15	
LALS 520	Studies in Second Language Development	15	X LALS 502
LALS 521	Language for Specific Purposes	15	
LALS 522	Teaching and Learning Vocabulary	15	X LALS 508
LALS 523	Language Assessment	15	X ELIN 823
LALS 524	Language Testing	15	X LALS 504
LALS 540	Evaluating Research in Applied Linguistics	15	
LALS 541	The Research Process	15	
LALS 542	Sociocultural Theories of Language Teaching and Learning	15	
LALS 543	Language in the Workplace	15	X LALS 536
LALS 544	Discourse Analysis	15	
LALS 561	Syntactic Analysis	15	
LALS 562	Phonetics and Phonology	15	
LALS 563	Sociolinguistics	15	
LALS 580	Research Paper	15	

**Schedule to the MA Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions (X)
LALS 581	Research Paper	15	
LALS 582	Research Project	30	
LALS 583	Research Dissertation	60	
LALS 584	Research Dissertation	90	
LANG 501	Special Topic	30	
LANG 502	Special Topic	30	
MAOR 502	Ngā Āhuatanga Mahi Toi o Te Moana-nui-ā-Kiwa / Approaches to the Study of Oceanic Art	30	X MAOR 402
MAOR 504	Te Toi o Te Karanga me Te Whaikōrero / The Art of Karanga and Whaikōrero	30	X MAOR 404
MAOR 505	Ngā Kohinga Kōrero ā Iwi / Tribal Ethnographies	30	X MAOR 405
MAOR 506	Te Reo o Ngā Tohunga / The Language of the Masters	30	X MAOR 406
MAOR 507	Kaupapa Tūtahi / Special Topic	30	
MAOR 509	Te Ao Onamata / Issues in Traditional Māori Society	30	X MAOR 409
MAOR 510	Kaupapa Tūrua / Special Topic Mātauranga Māori	30	X MAOR 410
MAOR 511	Te Ao Hurihuri / Issues in Contemporary Māori Society	30	X MAOR 410 in 2001-03, MAOR 411
MAOR 589	Kaupapa Rangahau / Research Paper	30	
MAOR 591	Thesis	120	
MAOR 592	Thesis	90	
MAOR 595	Rangahau Pūtahi / Research Project	60	
MATH 548	Special Topic	24	
MATH 549	Special Topic	24	
ORST 501	Directed Individual Study	15	
ORST 502	Directed Individual Study	15	
ORST 503	Special Topic	15	
ORST 504	Special Topic	15	
ORST 505	Directed Individual Study	30	
ORST 506	Special Topic	30	
ORST 588	Research Project	30	
ORST 592	Thesis	90	
ORST 595	Thesis	60	
POLS 594	Internship	40	
SACS 501	Methods in Social Science Research	30	X SACS 401, SSRE 511, 521

*Note: The MA schedule lists taught courses and 60 and 90-point theses; 120-point theses are listed in section 5 of the MA statute.*

**MA(Applied)****Statute for the Degree of Master of Arts (Applied)**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MA(Applied) degree shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree;

- (ii) passed at least 48 points or their equivalent in approved 300-level courses in one of the subjects listed in section 2; and
- (iii) been accepted by the relevant Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirements (a)(i) and (ii) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has
  - (i) had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind; or
  - (ii) in the case of Recreation and Leisure Studies, completed the Diploma in Physical Education (Otago) or an equivalent qualification.
- (c) At the discretion of the Associate Dean, a candidate may be exempted from any prerequisite or similar condition prescribed by this statute.

### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in sections 3 or 7, the course of study for the MA(Applied) shall consist of courses worth at least 240 points as prescribed in section 6 for one of the following subjects:

**Midwifery**

**Nursing**

**Recreation and Leisure Studies** (*not offered in 2006*)

**Social Science Research**

The course of study shall include

**Part 1**

Three courses and one unit of practice;

**Part 2**

One course, one unit of advanced practice, and either

- (i) a 60-pt thesis; or
- (ii) a research paper and a course on an advanced topic.

In special circumstances, a candidate may substitute another course for the unit of advanced practice with the permission of the relevant programme director.

- (b) Practical work shall be carried out in agencies approved by the relevant Head of School and under the personal supervision of practitioners approved by the relevant programme director.
3. (a) Part 1 should normally be completed before the candidate enrolls in Part 2. However, a candidate who has completed
- (i) a Graduate Diploma in Arts (Applied) in the same subject, or,
  - (ii) courses worth 120 points equivalent to Part 1 in the appropriate subject to the satisfaction of the Associate Dean, or
  - (iii) in the case of Nursing or Midwifery, a Postgraduate Diploma of Nursing or Postgraduate Diploma of Midwifery, or
  - (iv) in the case of Social Science Research, a Diploma in Social Science Research,
- may omit Part 1 and be admitted directly to Part 2.
- (b) A candidate who has completed
    - (i) a Graduate Certificate in Arts (Applied) in the same subject, or

- (ii) the equivalent of two courses worth 60 points in the appropriate subject to the satisfaction of the Associate Dean, or
- (iii) in the case of Midwifery, a Postgraduate Certificate in Midwifery, or
- (iv) in the case of Nursing, a Postgraduate Certificate in Advanced Nursing or Postgraduate Certificate in Health,
- may with the permission of the Associate Dean be exempted from 60 points of Part 1. In any such case, the Programme Director may specify which courses are to be taken for Part 1.
4. (a) A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least four trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the degree within six years of first enrolling in it, except that
- (i) a candidate admitted directly to Part 2 under section 3(a)(iv) shall be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements within two years of first enrolment;
- (ii) other candidates admitted directly to Part 2 shall be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements within three years of first enrolment; and
- (iii) a candidate exempted from 60 points of Part 1 under section 3(b) shall complete the requirements within four years of first enrolment.
- (b) In special cases the Associate Dean may extend the maximum periods in (a).
5. (a) (i) A candidate who passes two courses for the degree and does not proceed further shall be awarded a Graduate Certificate in Arts (Applied) endorsed in Nursing, Midwifery, Recreation and Leisure Studies or Social Science Research.
- (ii) At the discretion of the relevant programme director, a candidate who holds a Graduate Certificate in Arts (Applied) endorsed in Nursing, Midwifery, Recreation and Leisure Studies or Social Science Research may subsequently credit those courses to the GDipArts(Applied) or MA(Applied), provided the candidate abandons the certificate upon being awarded the GDipArts(Applied) or MA(Applied).
- (b) (i) A candidate who passes four courses of the degree and decides not to proceed further shall be awarded a Graduate Diploma in Arts (Applied) endorsed in Nursing, Midwifery, Recreation and Leisure Studies, or Social Science Research.
- (ii) At the discretion of the relevant programme director, a candidate who holds a Graduate Diploma in Arts (Applied) endorsed in Nursing, Midwifery, Recreation and Leisure Studies or Social Science Research may subsequently credit those courses to the MA(Applied), provided the candidate abandons the diploma upon being awarded the MA(Applied).

### Subject Requirements

6. Except as provided in section 7, the personal course of study of each candidate shall satisfy the requirements for one of the subjects listed below:

#### Midwifery

##### Part 1

120 points from MIDW 500-550 or other approved Honours or Master's courses.

*Part 2*

120 points, comprising

- (a) a research methods course worth at least 30 points;
- (b) MIDW 555 or 594;
- (c) further courses from MIDW 500-595 or other approved Honours or Master's courses.

**Nursing***Part 1*

120 points from NURS 500-550 or other approved Honours or Master's courses.

*Part 2*

120 points, comprising

- (a) a research methods course worth at least 30 points;
- (b) NURS 555 or 594;
- (c) further courses from NURS 500-595 or other approved Honours or Master's courses.

**Recreation and Leisure Studies***Part 1*

120 points, comprising

- (a) RECN 511, 512, 515;
- (b) 30 further points from RECN 517, 521, 524, 526 or other approved Honours or Master's courses.

*Part 2*

120 points, comprising

- (a) RECN 522;
- (b) RECN 555 or 593;
- (c) further courses from RECN 500-595 or other approved Honours or Master's courses\*.

\* Candidates admitted directly to Part 2 must include RECN 511 and 515 if equivalent courses have not been completed elsewhere.

**Social Science Research***Part 1*

120 points, comprising SSRE 511, 512, 521 and 30 further points selected from SSRE 516 or 517 or other approved Honours or Master's courses. Students with a substantial research /evaluation background may, with the approval of the programme director, substitute for SSRE 512 30 further points selected from SSRE 516 or 517 or other approved Honours or Master's courses.

*Part 2*

120 points, comprising SSRE 522 and 594

**Substitution of Courses**

7. A candidate who, in the opinion of the relevant Head of School, has already covered the work in any required courses may substitute approved courses worth up to 60 points.

**Award of Distinction or Merit**

8. The MA(Applied) may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute on the basis of the combined results of the courses and assessment of practical skills in Part 2 of the degree, and the examination of the thesis. For the MA(Applied) in Nursing or Midwifery, the award shall be made only on the basis of results of courses taken at this University.

**Schedule to the MA(Applied) Statute**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
<b>1. MA(Applied) in Midwifery</b>			
MIDW 509	Special Topic	30	
MIDW 510	Special Topic	30	
MIDW 512	Practicum 1	30	X NURS 512
MIDW 513	Midwifery Knowledge – Analysis and Critique	30	X NURS 513
MIDW 514	Midwifery Practice in Complex Maternity Care	30	X MIDW 516 in 2000 or 2001
MIDW 515	Health Research in Nursing and Midwifery	30	X NURS 515
MIDW 516	Special Topic	30	X NURS 516
MIDW 517	Special Topic	30	X NURS 517
MIDW 518	Clinical Inquiry: Evidence for Practice	30	X NURS 518
MIDW 519	Historical Inquiry in Midwifery	30	
MIDW 521	Health Policy and Ethics	30	X NURS 521
MIDW 522	Practicum 2	30	X NURS 522
MIDW 524	Māori Health and Midwifery	30	X MIDW 510 in 2003
MIDW 525	Special Topic	30	
MIDW 526	Special Topic	30	
MIDW 527	Special Topic	30	
MIDW 531	Nursing, Midwifery and Health Services in Aotearoa/New Zealand	30	X NURS 531
MIDW 532	Educational Theory and Caring Pedagogy	30	X NURS 532
MIDW 533	Health, Language and Culture	30	X NURS 533
MIDW 555	A Research Paper in Midwifery	30	
MIDW 593	Thesis	60	
MIDW 594	Thesis	90	P grade B or above in a Research Methods course
<b>2. MA(Applied) in Nursing</b>			
NURS 509	Special Topic	30	
NURS 510	Special Topic	30	
NURS 511	Nursing Knowledge – Analysis and Critique	30	
NURS 512	Practicum 1	30	
NURS 515	Health Research in Nursing and Midwifery	30	
NURS 516	Special Topic	30	
NURS 517	Special Topic	30	
NURS 518	Clinical Inquiry: Evidence for Practice	30	
NURS 519	Historical Inquiry in Nursing	30	
NURS 521	Health Policy and Ethics	30	

**Schedule to the MA(Applied) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
NURS 522	Practicum 2	30	
NURS 523	Advanced Assessment and Diagnosis in Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing	30	X NURS 522 in 2003
NURS 524	Māori Health and Nursing	30	X NURS 510 in 2003
NURS 525	Special Topic	30	
NURS 526	Special Topic	30	
NURS 527	Special Topic	30	
NURS 531	Nursing, Midwifery and Health Services in Aotearoa/New Zealand	30	
NURS 532	Educational Theory and Caring Pedagogy	30	
NURS 533	Health, Language and Culture	30	
NURS 534	Mental Health Care in Complex Contexts	30	
NURS 535	People in Life-Challenging Situations – Palliative Care Nursing	30	
NURS 536	Trauma and Emergency Care in Complex Contexts	30	
NURS 537	Gerontological Care in Complex Contexts	30	
NURS 538	People in Life-Challenging Situations – Cancer Nursing	30	X NURS 535 before 2002
NURS 539	Intensive Care Nursing	30	
NURS 540	Cardiac/Cardiothoracic Nursing	30	
NURS 541	Assessment, Treatment and Rehabilitation	30	
NURS 542	Paediatric Nursing	30	
NURS 543	Community Health Nursing	30	
NURS 544	Perioperative Nursing	30	
NURS 545	Neonatal Care	30	
NURS 546	Nephrology Nursing	30	
NURS 547	Orthopaedic Nursing	30	
NURS 548	Maxillofacial Burns and Plastics Nursing	30	
NURS 549	Acute Medical Nursing	30	
NURS 550	Advanced Assessment in Clinical Nursing	30	
NURS 551	Complex Assessment and Diagnostic Reasoning in Palliative Care	30	
NURS 552	Specialty Knowledge and Practice: Nursing Assessment and Management across the Lifespan	30	
NURS 555	A Research Paper in Nursing	30	
NURS 593	Thesis (equivalent to 2 courses)	60	
NURS 594	Thesis	90	P Grade B or above in a Research Methods course

**3. MA(Applied) in Recreation and Leisure Studies**

RECN 511	Leisure	30	
RECN 512	Practicum	30	
RECN 515	Methods	30	
RECN 517	Special Topic	30	
RECN 521	Culture and Power	30	
RECN 522	Advanced Practical Work	30	
RECN 524	Strategic Policy Development	30	
RECN 526	Special Topic	30	

**Schedule to the MA(Applied) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
RECN 555	A Research Paper in Recreation and Leisure Studies	30	
RECN 593	Thesis (equivalent to 2 courses)	60	
<b>4. MA(Applied) in Social Science Research</b>			
SSRE 511	Processes and Organisation of Research	30	X SACS 401, 501
SSRE 512	Social Research Practicum 1	30	
SSRE 516	Special Topic	30	
SSRE 517	Special Topic	30	
SSRE 521	Strategies and Techniques of Research	30	X SACS 401, 501
SSRE 522	Social Research Practicum 2	30	
SSRE 593	Thesis (equivalent to 2 courses)	60	
SSRE 594	Thesis	90	P grade B or above in SSRE 511 and 521

**GCertArts(Applied) and GDipArts(Applied)****Statute for the Graduate Certificate in Arts (Applied) and the Graduate Diploma in Arts (Applied)**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. Before enrolment, a candidate for the GCertArts(Applied) or the GDipArts(Applied) shall have met the entry requirements listed in section 1 of the MA(Applied) statute.

**General Requirements**

2. (a) The course of study for the GCertArts(Applied) shall consist of two courses together worth 60 points. These courses shall be selected from the Part 1 requirements of one of the subject areas listed in section 2 of the MA(Applied) Statute, as approved by the relevant Programme Director.  
 (b) A candidate for the certificate shall complete the requirements within two years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences may extend this period in special cases.
3. (a) The course of study for the GDipArts(Applied) shall consist of four courses together worth 120 points. These courses shall satisfy the Part 1 requirements for one subject area as listed in section 6 of the MA(Applied) statute, and shall be approved by the relevant Programme Director.  
 (b) A candidate for the diploma shall complete the requirements within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend this period in special cases.  
 (c) A candidate who has been awarded a GCertArts(Applied) shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the GDipArts(Applied).

## GDipArts

### Statute for the Graduate Diploma in Arts

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipArts shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the relevant Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who
  - (i) has had adequate training and experience to proceed with the proposed course of study; or
  - (ii) is in the final year of study of an approved degree.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) The personal course of study of each candidate shall include at least 46 points in a discipline offered within the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences or a subject area offered as a BA major, except for Science Subjects.
- (b) The course of study for the GDipArts shall be a coherent programme approved by the relevant Head of School and consisting of at least 116 points in courses numbered 200-599, including at least 72 points at 300 level or above. Except as provided in (c), the courses shall be selected from those offered for the BA, BA(Hons), BMus, BMus(Hons), MA, MA(Applied) or MEd degrees.
- (c) The Head of School may approve the inclusion of up to 30 points from courses offered for other Bachelor's, Honours or Master's degrees.
3. At the discretion of the Associate Dean, up to 48 points may be included from courses passed for a Certificate of Proficiency before enrolment for the diploma.
4. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the diploma within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend this maximum period in special cases.

## Conjoint BA/BTeach

### Statute for the Conjoint Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Teaching Programme

*Note: This statute facilitates the study of the BA and BTeach degrees in combination; students completing the conjoint programme graduate with both degrees.*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Admission to the conjoint BA/BTeach programme normally occurs in a candidate's first year of study at university and requires that the candidate be

accepted into the BA degree and meet the College of Education entry requirements, which include the "good character" and "fitness to teach" requirements of the NZ Teachers Council. A candidate who has already completed the requirements of the BA degree will not be admitted to the conjoint programme.

- (b) A candidate taking the conjoint programme shall obtain permission to re-enrol for it each year after first admission to the programme. Such permission will normally be given if the student has achieved a B- average over the courses completed in the previous year of study.

### General Requirements

2. The personal course of study of a candidate for the conjoint BA/BTeach shall consist of courses from the schedules to first degrees of this University. Except as provided in section 6 below and the Credit Transfer Statute, these courses shall have a total value of at least 534 points, of which
- at least 318 points shall be from courses numbered 200-399, including at least 120 from courses numbered 300-399;
  - at least 244 points shall be from the BA schedule, including at least 136 from courses numbered 200-399; and
  - at least 244 points shall be from the BTeach schedule, including at least 136 from courses numbered 200-399.

A candidate taking the conjoint programme is normally expected to include courses from both the BA and BTeach schedules in each year of enrolment.

3. The course of study of every candidate shall contain
- enough courses to fulfil the BA major requirements as set out in section 2 of the BA Statute for at least one approved teaching subject and including one other approved teaching subject to at least 200 level;
  - courses from the BTeach schedule as follows:

#### Part 1

CUST 131; TEAP 131, 132, 231, 232, 331

#### Part 2

Courses as specified in one of the following teaching specialisations:

- Primary: CUST 132, 133, 134, 135, 231, 232, 233, 331, 332;
- Secondary: CUST 153; two of CUST 251-269; two of CUST 351-369; TEAP 253;
- Primary and Secondary: CUST 132, 133, 134, 135, 231, 232, 233, 331, 332; two of CUST 351-369, TEAP 253.

4. Where in the opinion of the relevant Head of School or Programme Director a candidate has achieved in another course of study a standard equivalent to that required in any compulsory course and cannot obtain corresponding credit under section 6 of this statute or the Credit Transfer Statute, the candidate shall be exempted from that course and shall substitute an approved course of at least the equivalent number of points.
5. Courses from the BTeach schedule are excepted from the Aegrotat Pass provisions in the Assessment Statute. In the event that a candidate is prevented

from completing such a course by one of the circumstances specified in section 4.5 of that Statute, the candidate will be granted an extension to complete the assessment.

### Cross-crediting

6. At the discretion of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences, a candidate completing a conjoint BA/BTeach combined with another undergraduate degree may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately. In any such case, the overall course of study for the conjoint BA/BTeach and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 2 and 3 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### BTeach Schedule

*See Schedule for the Conjoint BTeach Statute as shown under Course of Study Statutes for the Faculty of Education.*

## Conjoint BA/BTeach(ECE)

### Statute for the Conjoint Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Teaching (Early Childhood Education) Programme

*Note: This statute facilitates the study of the BA and BTeach(ECE) degrees in combination; students completing the conjoint programme graduate with both degrees.*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Except as provided in (b), admission to the conjoint BA/BTeach(ECE) programme normally occurs in a candidate's first year of study at university and requires that the candidate be accepted into the BA degree and meet the entry requirements, which include the "good character" and "fitness to teach" requirements of the NZ Teachers Council. A candidate who has already completed the requirements of the BA degree will not be admitted to the conjoint programme.
- (b) With the approval of the Head of the School of Early Childhood Teacher Education, a candidate who has completed, with a B+ average or better, the normal Year 1 for (i) the Diploma of Teaching (Early Childhood Education) or (ii) the Diploma of Teaching (Early Childhood Education) Whāriki Papatipu may enter the conjoint programme.
- (c) A candidate taking the conjoint programme shall obtain permission to re-enrol for it each year after first admission to the programme. Such permission will normally be given if the student has achieved a B- average over the courses completed in the previous year of study.

#### General Requirements

2. The personal course of study of a candidate for the conjoint BA/BTeach(ECE) shall consist of courses from the schedules to first degrees of this University.

Except as provided in sections 4 and 7 below and the Credit Transfer Statute, these courses shall have a total value of at least 520 points, of which

- (a) at least 364 points shall be from courses numbered 200-399, including at least 142 from courses numbered 300-399;
- (b) at least 260 points shall be from CUST and TEAP courses selected from the BTeach(ECE) schedule.

A candidate taking the conjoint programme is normally expected to include courses from both the BA and BTeach(ECE) schedules in each year of enrolment.

- 3. Except as specified in section 4, the course of study of each candidate shall contain
  - (a) enough courses to fulfil the requirements of the Early Childhood Studies major as set out in section 2 of the BA statute; and
  - (b) courses from the BTeach(ECE) schedule as follows:
    - (i) Curriculum Knowledge and Practice**  
At least 160 points in CUST courses, including at least 60 points from CUST 110-129, at least 80 points from CUST 210-229 and at least 20 points from CUST 310-329;
    - (ii) Teaching and Professional Studies**  
At least 100 points in TEAP courses, including at least 20 points from TEAP 110-129, at least 80 points from TEAP 210-329 and at least 50 points from TEAP 310-329.
- 4. (a) A candidate admitted under section 1(b)(i) above may transfer CUSE 101/THEO 101 and CUSE 102/PROF 101 to the conjoint programme as 20 CUSE 100 points.

*Note: The CUST, EDUC and TEAP courses in Year 1 of the DipTchg(ECE) are included in the courses required for the conjoint BA/BTeach(ECE), and may be credited to either programme.*

- (b) A candidate admitted under section 1(b)(ii) above may transfer CUSE 121-129 to the conjoint programme as 60 CUST 100 points, 20 TEAP 100 points and 20 EDUC 100 points, with exemptions from CUST 111, 112, 113, TEAP 112 and 113 and EDUC 154.
- 5. Where in the opinion of the relevant Head of School or Programme Director a candidate has achieved in another course of study a standard equivalent to that required in any compulsory course and cannot obtain corresponding credit under sections 4 or 7 of this statute or the Credit Transfer Statute, the candidate shall be exempted from that course and shall substitute an approved course of at least the equivalent number of points.
- 6. Courses from the BTeach(ECE) schedule are excepted from the Aegrotat Pass provisions in the Assessment Statute. In the event that a candidate is prevented from completing such a course by one of the circumstances specified in section 4.5 of that Statute, the candidate will be granted an extension to complete the assessment.

### **Cross-crediting**

- 7. At the discretion of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences, a candidate completing a conjoint BA/BTeach(ECE)

combined with another undergraduate degree may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately. In any such case, the overall course of study for the conjoint BA/BTeach(ECE) and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 2 and 3 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### BTeach(ECE) Schedule

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
CUST 111	Te Whāriki	20	
CUST 112	Children's Well-being and Belonging	20	C CUST 111
CUST 113	Whakapapa: Our Living Cultures	20	
CUST 211	The Communicating Child	20	P CUST 111
CUST 212	The Expressive Child	20	P CUST 111
CUST 213	Te Ao Māori	20	P CUST 113
CUST 214	An Inclusive Early Childhood Curriculum	20	P CUST 113, 213
CUST 311	The Thinking Child	20	P CUST 211, 212
TEAP 112	Introduction to the Early Childhood Teaching Profession	12	
TEAP 113	Early Childhood Centre Experience Year 1	8	C TEAP 112
TEAP 212	Developing Professional Partnerships in Early Childhood Education	10	P CUST 111, 112, TEAP 112, 113
TEAP 213	Early Childhood Centre Experience Year 2	20	P TEAP 112, 113
TEAP 312	Early Childhood Centre Experience Year 3	8	P TEAP 212, 213, CUST 211, 212, 213
TEAP 313	Becoming Professional (ECE)	22	P TEAP 212, 213, CUST 211, 212, 213; C CUST 214, 311, TEAP 312
TEAP 315	Quality Programmes in Early Childhood	20	P EDUC 253, CUST 311; X EDUC 355

## BEd(TESOL)

### Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Education (Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages)

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

- Before enrolment, a candidate for the BEd(TESOL) shall have
  - successfully completed the two-year foundation programme offered by the Institut Perguruan Bahasa-Bahasa-Antarabangsa (IPBA), Malaysia; and
  - been accepted by the Head of the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.

*Note: To enter the BEd(TESOL) a student must meet the University entry requirements and also be accepted into the programme by the Ministry of Education Malaysia.*

### General Requirements

2. (a) The course of study for the BEd(TESOL) shall consist of courses having a total value of not less than 480 points, of which
    - (i) at least 192 points shall be for courses numbered 300-399;
    - (ii) at least 300 points shall be for courses numbered 200-399.
  - (b) The course of study shall comprise:
 

**Part 1** (120 points to be taken at IPBA):  
FHSS 170-177

**Part 2** (240 points to be taken at VUW):  
Approved courses worth at least 240 points from the schedule to this statute and Part A of the BA schedule, including ALIN 201, 301, 302 (or 202), LING 221 and LING 223.

**Part 3** (120 points, to be taken at IPBA):  
CUST 391, LALS 310, 311, TEAP 392, 393.
  - (c) Unless otherwise permitted by the Programme Director, a candidate shall complete Part 1 before enrolling in Part 2, and shall complete Part 2 before enrolling in Part 3.
  - (d) A candidate who has failed any course shall re-enrol for the degree only with the permission of the Programme Director.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least eight trimesters and shall complete the degree within six years of first enrolling in it. The Programme Director may extend this period in special cases.

### Schedule to the BEd(TESOL) Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
ALIN 201	Language Teaching Methodology	22	P 36 pts including 18 pts in a language other than English or an equivalent second language learning experience; X ELIN 805
ALIN 202	Second Language Curriculum	22	P 36 pts; X ELIN 823
ALIN 301	Pedagogical Description of English	24	P LING 211 or FHSS 170; X ELIN 804
ALIN 302	Language Education for Science and Technology	24	P ALIN 201
CUST 391	Curriculum Studies	15	
FHSS 170	Linguistics for the Language Teacher	15	
FHSS 171	Introduction to English Language Teaching	15	
FHSS 172	Philosophy of Malaysian Education	15	
FHSS 173	Human Development	15	
FHSS 174	Competency in the Malay Language	15	
FHSS 175	Classroom Management	15	
FHSS 176	Learning and the Learner	15	
FHSS 177	Ethics and Education	15	
LALS 310	Assessment in Schools	15	
LALS 311	Linking Theory and Practice in the Language Classroom	15	

**Schedule to the BEd(TESOL) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
LING 221	Sociolinguistics	22	P 36 pts
LING 223	Language Learning Processes	22	P 36 pts
TEAP 392	Professional Development	15	
TEAP 393	Teaching Practice	60	

**BMus\*****Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Music**

\* Some details subject to approval in November 2005

This qualification is awarded jointly by Massey University and Victoria University of Wellington. This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute of Victoria University which has been adopted for the NZ School of Music.

**General Requirements**

1. The course of study for the Bachelor of Music shall consist of courses prescribed for first degrees of Massey University or Victoria University of Wellington and having a total value of at least 360 VUW/300 MU points, of which at least 180 VUW/150 MU points shall be for courses numbered 201-399.

*Note: At Victoria University 1 EFTS = 120 points and at Massey University 1 EFTS = 100 points. Massey University is expected to change to 1 EFTS = 120 credits from 2007. NZSM points adopt the 1 EFTS = 120 points equivalence.*

2. All candidates wishing to enrol in the Classical Performance and Jazz specialisations must apply for audition not later than the date specified by the School.

*Note: The annual application dates are available on the NZSM website and in other publications or by direct enquiry to the School. The following options are approved: carillon, classical guitar, harpsichord, lute, pianoforte, organ, voice and any standard classical orchestral or jazz instrument. Applications to present any other instrument must be made to the School by the specified date.*

3. A candidate shall, to the satisfaction of the Director of the NZ School of Music, complete such practical work as may be prescribed and participate in approved vocal or instrumental work within the School.

**Specialisations**

4. The personal course of study of each candidate shall satisfy the requirements for at least one of these specialisations:

**Classical Performance**

- (a) NZSM 110, 130, 131, 161, 162; at least one of NZSM 113, 118, 120;
- (b) NZSM 210; either NZSM 213, 221, or NZSM 218, or NZSM 220, 221; at least one of NZSM 234-239; at least one of NZSM 261, 262;
- (c) NZSM 310; either NZSM 313, 321, or NZSM 318, or NZSM 320, 321; at least one of (NZSM 234-239, 261, 262, 334-339, 361, 362).

**Composition**

- (a) Instrumental/Vocal: NZSM 101, 130, 161, 162; or  
Sonic Arts: NZSM 102, 130, 161, 162, 181;
- (b) Instrumental/Vocal: NZSM 201, 205, 262; or  
Sonic Arts: NZSM 202, 242, 265;
- (c) Instrumental/Vocal: NZSM 301, 305, 362; or  
Sonic Arts: NZSM 302, 314, 341.

**Ethnomusicology**

- (a) NZSM 125, 130, 150, 151, 152;
- (b) NZSM 250, 251, 252, 253;
- (c) NZSM 350, 351, 352.

**History and Literature of Western Music**

- (a) NZSM 130, 131, 161, 162;
- (b) NZSM 262; three courses from NZSM 234-239;
- (c) three further courses from NZSM 334-339 not restricted against those included in (b);
- (d) at least one of the courses (excluding NZSM 130) specified in (a)-(c) for the Ethnomusicology specialisation.

**Jazz**

- (a) NZSM 111, 115, 122, 130, 132, 163;
- (b) NZSM 206, 263; either NZSM 208 or NZSM 211, 215, 222;
- (c) NZSM 306, 363; either NZSM 308 or NZSM 311, 315, 322.

**Cross-crediting**

5. For candidates completing the NZ School of Music BMus degree and another Massey University qualification credit shall be granted in accordance with the Massey University Recognition of Formal and Informal Prior Learning Regulations.

*Note: These regulations are available at: <http://calendar.massey.ac.nz>.*

6. At the discretion of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences of Victoria University of Wellington,
  - (a) a candidate completing a BMus degree combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme of Victoria University of Wellington may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;
  - (b) a candidate completing a BMus degree combined with a double degree programme of Victoria University of Wellington may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the BMus and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 1 and 3 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

*Note: Candidates whose other course of study is not a first degree (e.g. a diploma) will be granted a smaller number of points as described in the Schedule to the Credit Transfer Statute of Victoria University of Wellington.*

### Transitional Arrangements

7. (a) Candidates who first enrolled for the BMus at Massey University or Victoria University of Wellington in 2005 or who have completed fewer than 120 VUW/100 MU points towards the BMus may complete the degree of that university under that statute, making such substitutions as prescribed by the Director, as long as they do so by the end of 2010. Alternatively, they may transfer to this statute, with credit and exemptions as set out in the NZ School of Music prospectus.

*Note: At Victoria University 1 EFTS = 120 points and at Massey University 1 EFTS = 100 points. Massey University is expected to change to 1 EFTS = 120 credits from 2007. NZSM points adopt the 1 EFTS = 120 points equivalence.*

- (b) Other candidates who began their course of study at Massey University or Victoria University of Wellington under the BMus statute in force before 2006 shall complete the degree of that university under that statute, making such substitutions as prescribed by the Director, as long as they do so by the end of 2010.
- (c) Restrictions against Massey papers and Victoria courses included in qualifications prior to 2006 will be available from the School.

### Schedule to the Bachelor of Music Statute

Course	Title	NZSM Points (120 per EFTS)	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
NZSM 101	Composition 1	30	C NZSM 161, 162
NZSM 102	Sonic Arts 1 – Music Technology	15	
NZSM 103	Composition/Sonic Arts Second Study 1	15	C NZSM 161, 162
NZSM 110	Classical Performance 1	30	X NZSM 114
NZSM 111	Jazz Performance 1	30	C NZSM 115, 122, 163
NZSM 112	Performance Second Study	15	P audition
NZSM 113	Accompanying 1 – Repertoire Class for Pianists	10	C NZSM 110
NZSM 114	Preparatory Musical Performance 1	10	P audition
NZSM 115	Jazz Improvisation 1	15	C NZSM 163
NZSM 116	Improvisation for Non-Jazz Majors 1	10	X NZSM 111, 211, 311
NZSM 117	Improvisation for Non-Jazz Majors 2	10	P NZSM 116 or audition; X NZSM 111, 211, 311
NZSM 118	Vocal and Theatre Arts 1	25	
NZSM 120	Large Ensemble 1	10	P audition
NZSM 121	Small Ensemble 1	15	P audition
NZSM 122	Jazz Ensemble Workshop 1	15	C NZSM 111, 115
NZSM 123	Fusion Ensemble	15	
NZSM 124	Latin Ensemble	15	
NZSM 125	Gamelan – Orchestras of Southeast Asia	10	
NZSM 128	Preparatory Musical Performance 2	10	P NZSM 114 or audition
NZSM 130	Understanding Music	15	
NZSM 131	Hildegard to Avant Garde: Western Music 900 – 2005	15	X NZSM 135

---

**Schedule to the Bachelor of Music Statute (contd)**


---

Course	Title	NZSM Points (120 per EFTS)	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
NZSM 132	Jazz History	15	
NZSM 133	The Art of Jazz	15	X NZSM 111, 115
NZSM 150	Introduction to World Music	15	
NZSM 151	Music in NZ – Māori Music	15	
NZSM 152	Ragtime to Rap, African-American Music	15	
NZSM 161	Musicianship 1	20	P entrance test
NZSM 162	Materials of Music 1	20	P entrance test
NZSM 163	Jazz Theory 1	15	
NZSM 170	Music Education 1	15	
NZSM 171	Workshops in Music Education 1	15	
NZSM 180	Sound 1	15	
NZSM 181	Sonic Arts 1 - Acoustics	15	
NZSM 182	Recording 1	15	
NZSM 183	Introduction to MIDI	15	
NZSM 192	Music Business	15	
NZSM 201	Composition 2	30	P NZSM 101, 161, 162
NZSM 202	Sonic Arts 2	30	P NZSM 102, 181; C NZSM 242, 265
NZSM 203	Composition/Sonic Arts Second Study 2	15	P NZSM 101 or 102 or 103
NZSM 205	Instrumentation	20	P NZSM 162 or 163
NZSM 206	Jazz Arranging and Composition 1	15	P NZSM 163; C NZSM 263
NZSM 207	Conducting and Arranging	15	P NZSM 161
NZSM 208	Jazz Composition Principal Study 1	30	P NZSM 111; C NZSM 206, 263
NZSM 210	Classical Performance 2	40	P B- or better in NZSM 110
NZSM 211	Jazz Performance 2	30	P NZSM 111; C NZSM 215, 222, 263
NZSM 212	Performance Second Study 2	20	P B- or better in NZSM 112 or audition
NZSM 213	Accompanying 2	10	P NZSM 113 or audition
NZSM 215	Jazz Improvisation 2	15	P NZSM 115; C NZSM 263
NZSM 216	Improvisation for Non-Jazz Majors 3	10	P NZSM 117 or audition; X NZSM 111, 211, 311
NZSM 217	Ethnomusicology Performance 1	20	P audition
NZSM 218	Vocal and Theatre Arts 2	25	P NZSM 118
NZSM 220	Large Ensemble 2	10	P NZSM 120 or audition
NZSM 221	Small Ensemble 2	15	P NZSM 121 or audition
NZSM 222	Jazz Ensemble Workshop 2	15	P NZSM 122; C NZSM 211, 215
NZSM 223	Advanced Fusion Ensemble	15	P NZSM 123
NZSM 224	Advanced Latin Ensemble	15	P NZSM 124
NZSM 225	Ethnomusicology Ensemble	15	P NZSM 125 or audition
NZSM 231	Narrative Processes in European Music	15	P one of NZSM 101-199
NZSM 234	Music in the Middle Ages and Renaissance	20	P NZSM 131, 162; X NZSM 334
NZSM 235	Music in the Baroque Era	20	P NZSM 131, 162; X NZSM 335

---

**Schedule to the Bachelor of Music Statute (contd)**


---

Course	Title	NZSM Points (120 per EFTS)	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
NZSM 236	Music in the Classical Era	20	P NZSM 131, 162; X NZSM 336
NZSM 237	Music in the Romantic Era	20	P NZSM 131, 162; X NZSM 337
NZSM 238	Western Music from the Late Romantic Era to 1939	20	P NZSM 131, 162; X NZSM 338
NZSM 239	Western Music from 1940	20	P NZSM 130, 162; X NZSM 339
NZSM 240	Free Jazz	15	P NZSM 132 or 133
NZSM 241	Jazz Rock Fusion	15	P NZSM 132 or 133
NZSM 242	Electronic Music	20	P 15 100-level pts
NZSM 250	Ethnomusicology Techniques	20	P 30 100-level pts
NZSM 251	Pacific Islands Music and Dance 1	20	P 30 100-level pts
NZSM 252	Music of Asia 1	20	P 30 100-level pts
NZSM 253	Music in NZ Society	20	P NZSM 151 or 30 100-level pts
NZSM 254	Ethnomusicology Special Topic	20	P 30 100-level pts
NZSM 261	Musicianship 2	20	P NZSM 161; C NZSM 162
NZSM 262	Materials of Music 2	20	P NZSM 162; C NZSM 161
NZSM 263	Jazz Theory 2	15	P NZSM 163
NZSM 265	Electronic Music: Theory and Analysis	20	P NZSM 242
NZSM 270	Theories of Music Education 2	20	P NZSM 130; C NZSM 271
NZSM 271	Workshops in Music Education 2	20	P NZSM 130 and audition; C NZSM 270
NZSM 272	Introduction to Studio Music Teaching	15	P NZSM 130, 161
NZSM 280	Sound 2	15	P NZSM 180
NZSM 281	Recording Project	15	P NZSM 180, 182 and one of NZSM 101, 102, 110, 111; C NZSM 280, 282
NZSM 282	Recording 2	15	P NZSM 182
NZSM 283	MIDI, Synthesisers and Sampling	15	P NZSM 183
NZSM 301	Composition 3	40	P NZSM 201
NZSM 302	Sonic Arts 3	40	P NZSM 202, 242, 265
NZSM 303	Composition/Sonic Arts Second Study 3	20	P NZSM 201 or 202 or 203
NZSM 305	Advanced Orchestration	20	P NZSM 205
NZSM 306	Jazz Arranging and Composition 2	15	P NZSM 206; C NZSM 363
NZSM 308	Jazz Composition Principal Study 2	40	P NZSM 208; C NZSM 306, 363
NZSM 310	Classical Performance 3	50	P B- or better in NZSM 210
NZSM 311	Jazz Performance 3	30	P B- or better in NZSM 211; C NZSM 315, 322, 363
NZSM 312	Performance Second Study 3	25	P B- or better in NZSM 212 or audition
NZSM 313	Accompanying 3	10	P NZSM 213 or audition
NZSM 314	Electronic Performance	20	P NZSM 202 or 203
NZSM 315	Jazz Improvisation 3	15	P NZSM 215; C NZSM 363
NZSM 317	Ethnomusicology Performance 2	25	P NZSM 217
NZSM 318	Vocal and Theatre Arts 3	25	P NZSM 218
NZSM 320	Large Ensemble 3	10	P NZSM 220 or audition
NZSM 321	Small Ensemble 3	15	P NZSM 221 or audition

**Schedule to the Bachelor of Music Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	NZSM Points (120 per EFTS)	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
NZSM 322	Jazz Ensemble Workshop 3	15	P NZSM 222; C NZSM 311, 315
NZSM 332	Independent Research Project	15	P 40 200-level NZSM pts
NZSM 334	Music in the Middle Ages and Renaissance	25	P NZSM 262 and one of NZSM 235-239; X NZSM 234
NZSM 335	Music in the Baroque Era	25	P NZSM 262 and one of NZSM 234, 236-239; X NZSM 235
NZSM 336	Music in the Classical Era	25	P NZSM 262 and one of NZSM 234, 235, 237-239; X NZSM 236
NZSM 337	Music in the Romantic Era	25	P NZSM 262 and one of NZSM 234-236, 238, 239; X NZSM 237
NZSM 338	Western Music from the late Romantic Era to 1939	25	P NZSM 262 and one of NZSM 234-237, 239; X NZSM 238
NZSM 339	Western Music from 1940	25	P NZSM 262 and one of NZSM 234-238; X NZSM 239
NZSM 340	Historical Performance Practice	25	P NZSM 262 and one of NZSM 235-239; X NZSM 440
NZSM 341	Musical Multimedia	25	P one of NZSM 231, 233-254, 265; X NZSM 443
NZSM 344	Approaches to the Study of Music	25	P NZSM 262 and two of NZSM 234-239; X NZSM 431
NZSM 350	Ethnomusicology	25	P NZSM 250
NZSM 351	Pacific Islands Music and Dance 2	25	P 40 200-level pts
NZSM 352	Music of Asia 2	25	P 40 200-level pts
NZSM 361	Musicianship 3	20	P NZSM 261
NZSM 362	Advanced Analysis	15	P NZSM 262
NZSM 363	Jazz Theory 3	15	P NZSM 263
NZSM 370	Music Education 3	25	P NZSM 270; C NZSM 371
NZSM 371	Workshops in Music Education 3	25	P NZSM 271; C NZSM 370
NZSM 372	Quality Teaching in the Music Classroom: the Effective Teacher	25	P NZSM 270
NZSM 381	Recording Major Project	40	P NZSM 281
NZSM 382	Recording 3a	15	P NZSM 282
NZSM 383	Recording 3b	15	P NZSM 282; C NZSM 382, 383
NZSM 390	Special Topic	15	P 40 200-level NZSM pts

**BMus(Hons)\*****Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Music with Honours**

*\* Some details subject to approval in November 2005*

This qualification is awarded jointly by Massey University and Victoria University of Wellington. This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute of Victoria University which has been adopted for the NZ School of Music.

### Entry Requirements

1. Before enrolment, a candidate for the BMus(Hons) degree shall have
  - (a) completed a BMus degree, or its equivalent;
  - (b) satisfied the prerequisites as listed in section 3 for the specialisation to be presented, or been exempted from those prerequisites by the Director of the NZ School of Music; and
  - (c) been accepted by the Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
2. A candidate may be required to attend an audition and /or an interview and /or submit a portfolio of work in support of their application.

*Note: Provision may be made for international students to submit videotapes as a preliminary audition.*

3. The specialisations for the BMus(Hons) and their prerequisites are as follows:

#### **Classical Performance**

#### **Composition/Sonic Arts**

#### **Ethnomusicology**

#### **History and Literature of Western Music**

#### **Jazz Arranging**

#### **Jazz Performance**

With the exception of Jazz Performance and Jazz Arranging, the prerequisites for each specialisation are the BMus requirements for that specialisation as stated in Section 4 of the BMus Statute. The prerequisites for Jazz Performance and Jazz Arranging are the BMus requirements for the Jazz specialisation as stated in Section 4 of the BMus Statute.

### General Requirements

4. A candidate for the BMus(Hons) shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the degree within four years of first enrolling. The NZ School of Music Board of Studies may extend the maximum period in special cases.
5. (a) The personal course of study of a candidate for the BMus(Hons) shall satisfy the requirements as specified in section 6 for the specialisation to be presented. The candidate shall complete to the satisfaction of the Director such practical work as may be prescribed and participate in approved vocal or instrumental work within the School.
  - (b) The courses of practical training and the practical examinations in Classical Performance and Jazz Performance shall at any time be limited to the options approved for the purpose by the Director, and each candidate in Classical Performance and Jazz Performance shall present one of those options.

### Specialisations

6. The personal course of study of each candidate shall satisfy the requirements for one of the specialisations listed below:

#### **Classical Performance**

- (a) One course from NZSM 411-414;
- (b) One course from NZSM 431, 433, 435-440, 443
- (c) A further 30 points from NZSM 401-499.

**Composition/Sonic Arts**

- (a) NZSM 401;
- (b) One course from NZSM 402-406;
- (c) One course from NZSM 431-433, 435-440, 443, 453-454
- (d) A further 30 points from NZSM 401-499.

**Ethnomusicology**

120 points from NZSM 451-456, except that the Director may approve the substitution of up to 30 points from NZSM 401-450, 457-499 or another 400 or 500-level course.

**History and Literature of Western Music**

- (a) NZSM 431, except that the Director may approve the substitution of another course;

*Note: This provision is required for students who completed NZSM 344 in their undergraduate degree*

- (b) Two courses from NZSM 433-440
- (c) A further 30 points from NZSM 401-499, except that the Director of the School may approve the substitution of another 400- or 500-level course.

**Jazz Arranging**

- (a) NZSM 407, 432;
- (b) Either NZSM 401 or 402
- (c) A further 30 points from NZSM 401-499.

**Jazz Performance**

- (a) NZSM 412,432;
- (b) A further 30 points from NZSM 401-499.

**Award of Honours**

7. A candidate shall become eligible for the award of Honours in a specialisation by completing the requirements for the degree within four years of first enrolment for the degree in that specialisation. (See Sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions covering the award of Honours.)

**Schedule to the BMus(Hons) Statute**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)*
NZSM 401	Project in Composition/Sonic Arts 1	30	
NZSM 402	Project in Composition/Sonic Arts 2	30	
NZSM 403	Combined Project in Composition/Sonic Arts	30	P either NZSM 301, 302, or NZSM 301, 303
NZSM 404	Project in Multimedia	30	P one of NZSM 301, 302, 306, 308
NZSM 405	Composition: Music for Schools	30	P one course from NZSM 301-303, 306, 308, 371
NZSM 406	Project in Orchestration	30	P NZSM 305
NZSM 407	Jazz Arranging	30	

## Schedule to the BMus(Hons) Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)*
NZSM 408	Composition/Sonic Arts Second Study	15	P one course from NZSM 301-303, 308
NZSM 411	Classical Performance (Solo)	60	P audition
NZSM 412	Jazz Performance	60	P audition
NZSM 413	Small Ensemble	60	P audition
NZSM 414	Accompanying	60	P audition
NZSM 415	Small Ensemble Second Study	15	P audition
NZSM 416	Accompanying Second Study	15	P audition
NZSM 417	Opera Performance	15	P audition
NZSM 418	Large Ensemble	15	P audition
NZSM 419	Independent Performance Project	15	C NZSM 411,412,413,414
NZSM 421	Period Instrument Performance Studies	15	P audition and 60 400-level NZSM pts
NZSM 431	Approaches to the Study of Music	30	P NZSM 262, two of NZSM 234-239; X NZSM 344
NZSM 432	Jazz Research	30	
NZSM 433	Twentieth-Century Music Studies	30	
NZSM 434	Research Project	30	P one of NZSM 334-339
NZSM 435	Music in New Zealand	30	
NZSM 436	Schenkerian Analysis Seminar	30	P NZSM 262
NZSM 437	Research for Classical Performers	30	
NZSM 438	Studies in Early Music Notation	30	P NZSM 234 or 334
NZSM 439	Eighteenth Century Studies	30	P one of NZSM 235, 236, 335, 336
NZSM 440	Historical Performance Practice	30	P NZSM 262, two of NZSM 334-339 X NZSM 340
NZSM 441	Independent Project	15	
NZSM 443	Musical Multimedia	30	X NZSM 341
NZSM 444	Opera Studies	15	
NZSM 451	Ethnomusicology Fieldwork Theory and Technique	30	
NZSM 452	Ethnomusicology Performance	30	
NZSM 453	Approaches to the Study of Ethnomusicology	30	
NZSM 454	Literature Review in a Selected Area in Ethnomusicology	30	
NZSM 455	Ethnomusicology Performance Second Study	15	
NZSM 456	Directed Independent Study	30	
NZSM 471	Research Methods in Music Education	30	
NZSM 472	Resourcing Music Education	30	
NZSM 474	Pedagogy	30	
NZSM 481	Sound Recording	15	
NZSM 491	Music Therapy Principles	30	
NZSM 492	Special Topic A	15	
NZSM 493	Special Topic B	15	

\*Note: Restrictions against Massey papers and Victoria courses included in qualifications prior to 2006 will be available from the School.

## MMus

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Music

This qualification is awarded jointly by Massey University and Victoria University of Wellington. This Statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the Master of Music degree shall have
  - (i) completed a BMus(Hons) degree from a New Zealand university with either First Class Honours or Second Class Honours Division 1, or its equivalent; and
  - (ii) satisfied the prerequisites as specified in Section 2 for the subject to be presented, or been exempted from those prerequisites by the NZ School of Music Board of Studies; and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Director of the NZ School of Music as a candidate for the degree
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the NZ School of Music Board of Studies for a candidate who has produced evidence of extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind and ability to proceed with the proposed course of study
- (c) A candidate may be required to attend an audition and /or interview in support of their application.

*Note: Provision may be made for international students to submit videotapes as a preliminary audition.*

2. The subjects of examination are:

#### Composition

#### Musicology

#### Performance

The prerequisites for each subject are the corresponding specialisation requirements set out in the BMus(Hons) Statute.

#### General Requirements

3. The course of study for the Master of Music shall consist of 120 points, comprising a thesis (see Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute) in a 100% written form or a thesis comprising an approved combination of written and practical work. The course of study shall satisfy the requirements for a subject as listed in Section 5.

*Note: At Victoria University 1 EFTS = 120 points and at Massey University 1 EFTS = 100 points. Massey University is expected to change to 1 EFTS = 120 credits from 2007.*

4. A candidate shall be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements within four years of first enrolling. The Board of Studies may extend the maximum period in special cases.

#### Subject Requirements

5. The personal course of study of each candidate shall satisfy the requirements for one of the subjects listed below:

**Composition**

NZSM 592 - a thesis comprising an original composition or compositions of a scope approved by the Head of School which may include a research report which elucidates the compositions submitted for examination (25%) or a supplementary research component relevant to the topic of the thesis (25%).

**Musicology**

NZSM 591 - a written thesis which may include a supplementary research component relevant to the topic of the thesis (25%).

**Performance**

NZSM 596 - a thesis comprising a significant performance or series of performances of a scope approved by the Head of School (75%) and either a research report which elucidates the selected repertoire submitted for examination in performance (25%) or a supplementary research component relevant to the topic of the thesis (25%).

**Award of Distinction or Merit**

6. The Master of Music may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in Sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Schedule to the Master of Music Statute**

Course	Title	Pts
NZSM 591	Musicology	120
NZSM 592	Composition	120
NZSM 596	Performance	120

**ArtDip****Statute for the Artist Diploma**

This qualification is awarded jointly by Massey University and Victoria University of Wellington. This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the ArtDip shall have
  - (i) completed the MMus degree in Performance with First Class Honours or Second Class Honours, Division I at a New Zealand university (or equivalent); and
  - (ii) passed an audition before a panel comprising senior members of the performance staff of the New Zealand School of Music and the Head of School.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Head of School in exceptional circumstances for a candidate who has completed a BMus degree in

Performance and has adequate training and ability for an advanced course of musical performance study.

### General Requirements

2. The course of study for the ArtDip shall consist of NZSM 701 and 702, both of which shall be assessed on a pass /fail basis.
3. (a) A candidate shall normally be enrolled full-time for two years and shall complete the requirements of the diploma within four years of first enrolling in it. The Head of School may extend the maximum period in special cases.
- (b) Each course shall be completed in the year of first enrolment for that course.

### Schedule to the ArtDip Statute

Course	Title	Pts
NZSM 701	Advanced Musical Performance 1	120
NZSM 702	Advanced Musical Performance 2	120

## GDipMus

### Statute for the Graduate Diploma in Music

This qualification is awarded jointly by Massey University and Victoria University of Wellington. This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipMus shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the New Zealand School of Music as a candidate for the diploma.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Head of School for a candidate who has adequate training and experience to proceed with the proposed course of study.

### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (b), the course of study for the GDipMus shall be a coherent programme approved by the Head of School and consisting of at least 120 points in courses numbered 200-599, including at least 72 points at 300-level or above. The courses shall be selected from those prescribed for the BMus, BMus(Hons) and MMus degrees at Victoria University of Wellington and Massey University or prescribed for the BA major in Music at Massey University. (Massey University courses will be credited at the rate of 120 Victoria University points for 100 Massey points.)

- (b) The Head of School may approve the inclusion of up to 30 points from courses offered for other Bachelor's, Honours or Master's degrees. In special circumstances this may be extended up to 60 points.
- 3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the diploma within four years of first enrolling in it. The Head of School may extend this maximum period in special cases.

## MMusTher

### Statute for the Master of Music Therapy

This qualification is awarded jointly by Massey University and Victoria University of Wellington. This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MMusTher shall have
  - (i) completed a degree relevant to Music Therapy; and
  - (ii) passed at least 30 points in Psychology or another approved social science discipline (candidates may be permitted to complete this requirement concurrently); and
  - (ii) satisfied the Head of the New Zealand School of Music through audition and interview that they have the appropriate academic, life experience and musical ability to proceed with the programme of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Head of School for a candidate who has adequate training and experience to proceed with the proposed course of study.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (b), the course of study for the MMusTher shall comprise
  - Part 1:** NZSM 520, 521, 522, 523 and either 524 or 525; and
  - Part 2:** NZSM 526.
- (b) Music therapists holding an appropriate postgraduate qualification may be admitted directly to Part 2.

#### Award of Honours

3. The MMusTher may be awarded with Honours, as described in sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute, to
  - (a) a candidate who completes Parts 1 and 2 within two years of first enrolling for the degree (or within five years if part-time);
  - (b) a candidate admitted directly to Part 2 who completes the requirements within one year of first enrolling for the degree (or within three years if part-time).The Head of School may extend these maximum periods in special cases.

### Schedule to the MMusTher Statute

Course	Title	Pts
NZSM 520	Music Therapy Principles	30
NZSM 521	World Musics and Music Therapy	15
NZSM 522	Music Therapy Methods	30
NZSM 523	Music Therapy Practicum	30
NZSM 524	Independent Study	15
NZSM 525	Special Topic: Music Therapy	15
NZSM 526	Case Work and Research	120

## PGDipMusTch

### Statute for the Postgraduate Diploma of Music Teaching

This qualification is awarded jointly by Massey University and Victoria University of Wellington. This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGDipMusTch shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor of Music degree; and
  - (ii) passed an audition of repertoire at a level appropriate for a third-year Bachelor of Music recital.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Head of the New Zealand School of Music for a candidate who has adequate training and experience to proceed with the proposed course of study.

#### General Requirements

2. A candidate shall follow an approved programme of study comprising courses worth 120 points, including NZSM 530 or 531, 532 or 533, 534, 535 and one course selected from the BMus(Hons) schedule.
3. The PGDipMusTch will be awarded with an endorsement in Singing.

#### Award of Distinction or Merit

4. The PGDipMusTch may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute. To be eligible, a candidate shall complete the requirements within one year of first enrolling for the degree if full-time, or within three years if part-time. The Head of School may extend these maximum periods in special cases.

### Schedule to the PGDipMusTch Statute

Course	Title	Pts
NZSM 530	Music Education Theory and Practice*	30
NZSM 531	General Pedagogy	30
NZSM 532	Recital	15

**Schedule to the PGDipMusTch Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts
NZSM 533	Performance A	15
NZSM 534	Singing Teaching A*	30
NZSM 535	Singing Teaching B*	30

\* Distance delivery

**CertJazz\*****Statute for the Foundation Certificate in Jazz**

\* Subject to approval in November 2005

This qualification is awarded jointly by Massey University and Victoria University of Wellington. This Statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute of Victoria University which has been adopted for the NZ School of Music.

1. Before enrolment, candidates shall satisfy the Director of the NZ School of Music that they have sufficient educational achievement to be able to follow the programme with a reasonable chance of success, and have completed Year 12 of secondary school or have equivalent life experience. Applicants may be required to attend an audition in support of their application.
2. The Foundation Certificate in Jazz consists of 18 weeks of full-time study to a total value of 72 NZSM points.

*Note: 100 points (1 EFTS) at Massey University equates to 120 points (1 EFTS) at Victoria University. Massey is expected to change to 120 points = 1 EFTS with effect from 2007. NZSM points follow the 1 EFTS = 120 points equation.*

3. The course of study comprises all of the courses in the CertJazz Schedule.

**Schedule to the CertJazz Statute**

Course	Title	NZSM Points (120 per EFTS)	Restrictions (X)
NZSM 001	Musicianship Studies	15	
NZSM 002	Theory Studies	15	
NZSM 003	Computing Skills	6	
NZSM 004	Instrumental Study	15	
NZSM 005	Performance Studies	15	
NZSM 006	Communication Skills	6	X 219.043*

\* Offered by Massey University

4. Supplementary assessments may be offered to candidates who fail an assessment by a small margin or where there are extenuating circumstances.

## MAPA and GDipAPA

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Asia-Pacific Affairs and the Graduate Diploma in Asia-Pacific Affairs

*Note: From 2006, no new enrolments will be accepted into this programme.*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MAPA degree shall have
  - (i) completed a BA(Hons) with First or Second Class Honours, or equivalent; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Programme Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (c), the course of study for the MAPA shall consist of
 

**Part 1:** POLS 588; two approved 400-level POLS courses;

**Part 2:** POLS 579.
- (b) A candidate who fails POLS 588 shall not be permitted to enrol in Part 2.
3. A full-time candidate shall normally complete the requirements of the degree by 28 February in the year after first enrolling for it, and each part-time candidate shall normally complete the requirements by 28 February in the second year after first enrolling. The Associate Dean may extend those periods in special cases.
4. (a) A candidate who has completed Part 1 of the degree but not Part 2 may be awarded a GDipAPA.
- (b) At the discretion of the Programme Director, a candidate who holds a GDipAPA may subsequently be admitted to Part 2 of the MAPA, provided the candidate abandons the diploma upon being awarded the degree.

#### Award of Distinction or Merit

5. The MAPA may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Schedule to the MAPA Statute

Course	Title	Pts
POLS 579	Extended Research Essay	60
POLS 588	World Politics	60

## MIR and GDipIR

### Statute for the Degree of Master of International Relations and the Graduate Diploma in International Relations

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MIR degree shall have either
  - (i) completed a BA(Hons) with First or Second Class Honours, or equivalent; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Programme Director as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. The course of study for the MIR shall consist of
  - Part 1:** INTP 588; two approved 400-level courses worth 60 points;
  - Part 2:** INTP 589.
 Enrolment in Part 2 requires a pass in INTP 588.
3. A full-time candidate shall normally complete the requirements of the degree by 28 February in the year after first enrolling for it, and each part-time candidate shall normally complete the requirements of the degree by 28 February in the second year after first enrolling. The Associate Dean may extend those periods in special cases.
4. (a) A candidate who has completed Part 1 of the degree but not Part 2 may be awarded a GDipIR.
- (b) At the discretion of the Programme Director, a candidate who holds a GDipIR may subsequently be admitted to Part 2 of the MIR, provided the candidate abandons the diploma upon being awarded the degree.

#### Award of Distinction or Merit

5. The MIR may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Schedule to the MIR Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
INTP 588	World Politics	60	X POLS 588
INTP 589	Extended Research Essay	60	P POLS/INTP 588; X POLS 589

## MMHS

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Museum and Heritage Studies

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MMHS degree shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Board of Studies as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. The course of study for the MMHS shall consist of courses worth at least 240 points, including

##### Part 1

MHST 511, 512, 513, 514

##### Part 2

MHST 593 (Dissertation) and 60 points from approved 400/500-level courses.

*Note: A student who completes Part 1 only may, with approval, be awarded the GDipArts.*

3. A candidate shall normally complete the requirements of the degree within six years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend that period in special cases.

#### Award of Distinction or Merit

4. The MMHS may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Schedule to the MMHS Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions (X)
MHST 511	Introducing Museums & Heritage	30	X MHST 501
MHST 512	Practicum 1	30	X RECN 512
MHST 513	Research Methods	30	X RECN 515
MHST 514	Practicum 2	30	X MHST 502
MHST 515	Exhibiting Māori	30	
MHST 516	Leisure	30	X RECN 511
MHST 517	Art Gallery Studies	30	
MHST 518	Research Essay	30	X MHST 555
MHST 519	Project	30	
MHST 520	Special Topic	30	
MHST 521	Special Topic	30	
MHST 593	Museum & Heritage Dissertation	60	

## GCertMHS and GDipMHS\*

### Statute for the Graduate Certificate in Museum and Heritage Studies and the Graduate Diploma in Museum and Heritage Studies

\* *Subject to approval*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. Before enrolment, a candidate for the GCertMHS or the GDipMHS shall have met the entry requirements listed in Section 1 of the MMHS Statute.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) The course of study for the GCertMHS shall consist of MMHS 511 and 512.  
 (b) The course of study for the GDipMHS shall consist of courses worth at least 120 points, including
  - (i) MHST 511, 512, 518 (or 519);
  - (ii) one further course from the MMHS Schedule or an approved 400/500-level elective.
3. (a) A candidate shall normally complete the requirements for the GCertMHS within two years of first enrolling for it. The Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences may extend this period in special cases.  
 (b) A candidate shall normally complete the requirements for the GDipMHS within four years of first enrolling for it. The Associate Dean may extend this period in special cases.  
 (c) A candidate who has been awarded a GCertMHS shall abandon that qualification on being awarded the GDipMHS.

## MNZS and GCertNZS\*

### Statute for the Degree of Master of New Zealand Studies and the Graduate Certificate in New Zealand Studies

\* *GCertNZS subject to approval in November 2005*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MNZS degree shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree with First or Second Class Honours, or equivalent; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Board of Studies as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

**General Requirements**

2. (a) The course of study for the MNZS shall consist of courses worth at least 120 points, including
- Part 1**
- (i) NZST 513
- (ii) 30 points from approved 400/500-level electives
- Part 2**
- NZST 512: Dissertation
- (b) A candidate who fails a Part 1 course shall not be permitted to enrol in Part 2.
- (c) The course of study for the GCertNZS shall consist of Part 1 of the MNZS.
3. A full-time candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least three trimesters and shall complete the degree by 28 February in the year after first enrolling in it. A part-time candidate shall complete the degree by 28 February in the fourth year after first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend these maximum periods in special cases.

**Award of Distinction or Merit**

4. The MNZS may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Schedule to the MNZS Statute**

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions (X)
NZST 512	Dissertation in New Zealand Studies	60	
NZST 513	New Zealand Studies	30	X NZST 501, 511

**MNurs****Statute for the Degree of Master of Nursing**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) A candidate for the MNurs degree shall be a registered nurse and, before enrolment, shall have
- (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand;
- (ii) passed the equivalent of a 30-point postgraduate research course; and
- (iii) been accepted by the Head of the Graduate School of Nursing and Midwifery as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

**General Requirements**

2. The course of study for the MNurs shall consist of a 120-point Master's thesis (NURS 592).

3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least three trimesters and shall complete the degree within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend that maximum period in special cases.

**Award of Distinction or Merit**

4. The MNurs may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**MMidw****Statute for the Degree of Master of Midwifery**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) A candidate for the MMidw degree shall be a registered midwife and, before enrolment, shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand;
  - (ii) passed the equivalent of a 30-point postgraduate research course; and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Head of the Graduate School of Nursing and Midwifery as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

**General Requirements**

2. The course of study for the MMidw shall consist of a 120-point Master's thesis (MIDW 592).
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least three trimesters and shall complete the degree within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend that maximum period in special cases.

**Award of Distinction or Merit**

4. The MMidw may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**MN(Clinical)****Statute for the Degree of Master of Nursing (Clinical)**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) A candidate for the MN(Clinical) degree shall be a registered nurse and, before enrolment, shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand;

- (ii) been accepted by the Head of the Graduate School of Nursing and Midwifery as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

### General Requirements

2. Except as provided in section 4, the course of study for the MN(Clinical) shall comprise

#### Part 1

Two courses selected from NURS 512, 516 and 534-538 for any postgraduate certificate that requires graduates to demonstrate achievement of the Nursing Council of New Zealand advanced practice competencies

#### Part 2

NURS 518 and either NURS 550 or NURS 551 (if Palliative Care nurses) or NURS 523 (if Mental Health nurses)

#### Part 3

One further NURS 500-level course within the student's scope of practice

#### Part 4

- (a) NURS 594; or
- (b) NURS 593 and one additional 500-level NURS course; or
- (c) NURS 555 and two additional 500-level NURS courses.

3. A candidate shall normally complete the requirements of the degree within six years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend that maximum period in special cases.

### Substitution of Courses

4. With the approval of the Head of School, a candidate may replace courses as specified in section 2 with equivalent courses from another tertiary institution, provided that the overall programme includes at least 120 points from courses offered by this University. In particular,
  - (a) either Part 1 course may be replaced by a course selected from SCPCD01, NUPCD07, NUPCD5A, NUPCD5B offered by the Waikato Institute of Technology (WINTEC), or by a course offered by VUW or WINTEC for any postgraduate certificate that requires graduates to demonstrate achievement of the Nursing Council of New Zealand advanced practice competencies;
  - (b) NURS 518 and 550 may be replaced in Part 2 by WINTEC courses NUPCD12 and NUPCD17, respectively;
  - (c) the Part 3 course may be replaced by a WINTEC NUPCD course within the student's scope of practice, or, for students wishing to be granted prescriptive privileges, by any Nursing Council approved prescribing course;
  - (d) the additional NURS 500-level courses in (b) and (c) of Part 4 may be replaced by WINTEC NUPCD courses.

### **Award of Distinction or Merit**

5. The MN(Clinical) may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

## **PGDipNurs**

### **Statute for the Postgraduate Diploma of Nursing**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Entry Requirements**

1. (a) A candidate for the PGDipNurs shall be eligible for registration as a nurse in New Zealand and, before enrolment, shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the Graduate School of Nursing and Midwifery as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### **General Requirements**

2. Except as specified in sections 3 and 6, the course of study for the PGDipNurs shall be four NURS courses from the MA(Applied) schedule, one of which shall be a research methods course.
3. A candidate who holds a PGCertAdvNurs or PGCertClinNurs may, with the permission of the Head of School, complete the PGDipNurs by passing a research methods course worth at least 30 points and one further NURS course from the MA(Applied) schedule. Such a candidate shall abandon the certificate upon being awarded the diploma.
4. A candidate may complete the PGDipNurs with a named scope of practice by including in the programme of study
  - (a) NURS 512;
  - (b) one course from NURS 534-549.
5. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the diploma within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend that maximum period in special cases.

#### **Substitution of Courses**

6. With the approval of the Head of School, a candidate may replace up to two of the courses as prescribed in section 2 with equivalent courses passed at another tertiary institution but not credited to any completed qualification.

## PGDipMid

### Statute for the Postgraduate Diploma of Midwifery

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) A candidate for the PGDipMid shall be eligible for registration as a midwife and, before enrolment, shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the Graduate School of Nursing and Midwifery as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. Except as provided in section 4, the course of study for the PGDipMid shall consist of MIDW 555 and three courses from MIDW 509-550 in the MA(Applied) schedule.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the diploma within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend that maximum period in special cases.

#### Substitution of Courses

4. With the approval of the Head of School, a candidate may replace up to two of the courses as prescribed in section 2 with equivalent courses passed at another tertiary institution but not credited to any completed qualification.

## PGCertClinNurs

### Statute for the Postgraduate Certificate in Clinical Nursing

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) A candidate for the PGCertClinNurs shall be a registered nurse and, before enrolment, shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the Graduate School of Nursing and Midwifery as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

### General Requirements

2. (a) The course of study for the PGCertClinNurs shall consist of NURS 512 and one of NURS 516, 534-549 from the MA(Applied) schedule.
- (b) Each candidate shall demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Head of School the relevant Nursing Council of New Zealand competencies within their designated scope of practice.
3. A candidate shall complete the certificate within two years of first enrolling in it.

### PGDipHealth\*

#### Statute for the Postgraduate Diploma in Health

\* *Subject to approval*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) A candidate for the PGDipHealth shall be eligible for registration as a health professional as defined under the Health Practitioners Competency Assurance Act 2003, or a social worker, and, before enrolment, shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the Graduate School of Nursing and Midwifery as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.
2. The course of study for the PGDipHealth shall consist of courses worth 120 points from the schedule to this statute, including a research methods course worth at least 30 points.
3. A candidate may complete the PGDipHealth with a named scope of practice by including appropriate courses in the programme of study.
4. A candidate for the Diploma shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete it within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend of that period in special cases.

#### Schedule to the PGDipHealth Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions (X)
HEAL 512	Practicum	30	
HEAL 515	Health Research	30	
HEAL 516	Special Topic	30	
HEAL 517	Special Topic	30	
HEAL 518	Clinical Inquiry: Evidence for Practice	30	
HEAL 519	Historical Inquiry in Health	30	
HEAL 520	Creative Arts Therapy in Health	30	
HEAL 521	Allied Mental Health Practice	30	X HEAL 518 in 2004-05

**Schedule to the PGDipHealth Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions (X)
HEAL 522	Cardiac Rehabilitation	30	X HEAL 519 in 2005
HEAL 525	Teaching and Learning in a Practice Discipline: New strategies, Skills and Pedagogies	30	
HEAL 526	Instructional Process in Health Practitioner Education	30	
HEAL 527	Clinical Education in a practice Context	30	

**PGCertHealth\*****Statute for the Postgraduate Certificate in Health**

\* *Subject to approval in November 2005*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) A candidate for the PGCertHealth shall be a registered health professional or a person who can demonstrate professional qualifications relevant to their area of health-related employment. Before enrolment, the candidate shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the Graduate School of Nursing and Midwifery as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

**General Requirements**

2. The course of study for the PGCertHealth shall consist of courses worth 60 points, including
  - (a) HEAL 512;
  - (b) one of HEAL 516, 517, 521, 522.

The certificate will be endorsed with a named specialisation according to the candidate's choice of course under part (b), including:

<i>Specialisation</i>	<i>Required course</i>
Allied Mental Health Practice	HEAL 521
Cardiac Rehabilitation	HEAL 522
Creative Arts Therapy	HEAL 520

Other named specialisations may be obtained through appropriate choice of HEAL 516 or 517.

3. A candidate shall complete the certificate within two years of first enrolling in it.

### Schedule to the PGCertHealth Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions (X)
HEAL 512	Practicum	30	
HEAL 516	Special Topic	30	
HEAL 517	Special Topic	30	
HEAL 520	Creative Arts Therapy in Health	30	
HEAL 521	Allied Mental Health Practice	30	X HEAL 518 in 2004-05
HEAL 522	Cardiac Rehabilitation	30	X HEAL 519 in 2005

## PGCertMid

### Statute for the Postgraduate Certificate in Midwifery

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) A candidate for the PGCertMid shall be a registered midwife and, before enrolment, shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the Graduate School of Nursing and Midwifery as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. The course of study for the PGCertMid shall consist of two courses from MIDW 509-533.
3. A candidate shall complete the certificate within two years of first enrolling in it.

## MPHist\*

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Public History

\* *Not offered in 2006*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MPHist degree shall have:
  - (i) completed a BA(Hons) with First or Second Class Honours, or equivalent; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the History Programme as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.

- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. The course of study for the MPHist shall consist of courses worth at least 120 points, including
  - (a) PBHY 501, 502, 510;
  - (b) an approved elective course or courses worth at least 30 points.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the degree within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend that maximum period in special cases.

#### Award of Distinction or Merit

4. The MPHist may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Schedule to the MPHist Statute

Course	Title	Pts
PBHY 501	Issues in Public History 1	30
PBHY 502	Issues in Public History 2	30
PBHY 510	Research Project	30

## MTA and GDipTA

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Theatre Arts and the Graduate Diploma in Theatre Arts

These qualifications are awarded jointly by Toi Whakaari: New Zealand Drama School and Victoria University of Wellington. The statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MTA degree shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the MTA Joint Board of Studies as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Joint Board of Studies for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (b), the course of study for the MTA shall consist of courses worth at least 240 points, including

**Part 1**

- (i) THEA 501, 511, 512;
- (ii) THEA 580 or 589, or 30 points from approved Honours or Master's courses offered at this University

**Part 2**

THEA 592\*.

\* Subject to approval in November 2005

- (b) With the permission of the Joint Board of Studies, a candidate who can demonstrate suitable expertise may replace one or more of the required courses with approved electives.
  - (c) Unless otherwise permitted by the Joint Board of Studies, a candidate shall complete Part 1 before proceeding to Part 2.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least four trimesters and shall complete the degree within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences may extend that maximum period in special cases.
4. (a) A candidate who has completed Part 1 of the degree but not Part 2 may be awarded a GDipTA.
- (b) With the permission of the Joint Board of Studies, a candidate who holds a GDipTA may subsequently be admitted to Part 2 of the MTA, provided the candidate abandons the diploma upon being awarded the degree.

**Award of Distinction or Merit**

5. The MTA may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Schedule to the MTA Statute**

Course	Title	Pts	Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
THEA 501	Drama and Theory	30	
THEA 511	Directing Method	30	C THEA 512
THEA 512	Theatre Craft for Directors	30	C THEA 511
THEA 521	Directing Actors Project	15	
THEA 522	Technical Directing Project	15	
THEA 523	Community or Corporate Directing Project	15	
THEA 524	Production Attachments	15	
THEA 525	Major Directing Project	45	
THEA 526	Research Journal and Seminar Projects	15	
THEA 580	Special Topic	30	
THEA 589	Research Project	30	
THEA 592	Production Portfolio	120	X THEA 521, 522, 523, 524, 525, 526

\*Note: THEA 521-526 available only to students originally enrolled in the MTA prior to 2006.

## GDipJapaStud\*

### Statute for the Graduate Diploma in Japanese Studies

*\* Not offered in 2006*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the Graduate Diploma in Japanese Studies shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a university in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Programme Director, Japanese Studies as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has adequate training and experience to proceed with the proposed course of study.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) The course of study for the GDipJapaStud shall be a coherent programme approved by the Programme Director and consisting of courses worth at least 120 points, comprising
  - (i) JAPA 801, 889;
  - (ii) other 800-level JAPA courses.
- (b) A candidate judged by the Programme Director to have insufficient background by way of Japan-related study or experience shall complete JAPA 801 and two other courses before beginning JAPA 889. Such a student would normally take at least two years to complete the diploma.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall normally complete the requirements for the diploma within three years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend that maximum period in special cases.

## PGDipTchgJapa\*

### Statute for the Postgraduate Diploma in Teaching Japanese

*\* Not offered in 2006*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGDipTchgJapa shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study. A normal qualification for acceptance is that the candidate has completed a major in Japanese at a tertiary level; and has at least two years of teaching experience.

- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Programme Director, Japanese Studies for a candidate who has had adequate training and experience.

### General Requirements

2. Except as provided in section 4, the course of study for the PGDipTchgJapa shall comprise
  - (a) ELIN 805; JAPA 401, 407;
  - (b) one of JAPA 402-406.
3. A full-time candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters.

### Substitution of Courses

4. With the approval of the Programme Director, a candidate may replace one course in section 2(a) with an equivalent course.

## DipMāori/Tohu Māori

### Statute for the Diploma in Māoritanga/Tohu Māoritanga

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirement

1. Before enrolment, a candidate for the DipMāori/Tohu Māori shall have been accepted by the Head of the School of Māori Studies / Te Kawa a Māui as likely to benefit from the course of study.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (b), the course of study for the DipMāori/Tohu Māori shall consist of
  - (i) MAOR 804\*; at least two of MAOR 801-803;
  - (ii) MAOR 121; at least two of MAOR 122-124, 212-214, 216

\* *The Head of School may exempt from MAOR 804 a candidate with the required study skills.*
- (b) A candidate who has not attained the required level of proficiency in Māori language for entry to MAOR 121 shall also include MAOR 101 and 102.
- (c) A candidate whose first enrolment at this University was for the DipMāori/Tohu Māori will be permitted to cross-credit up to 90 points between the diploma and a BA degree. A candidate whose first enrolment at Victoria University was for a different qualification may credit a maximum of 36 points to the diploma.

### Schedule to the DipMāori/Tohu Māori Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Corequisites (C)
MAOR 101	Te Timatanga/Introduction to Māori	18	
MAOR 102	Te Arumanga/Elementary Māori Language	18	
MAOR 121	Wana Tū Te Wana/ Māori Language	36	P MAOR 102
MAOR 122	Te Pūwhenuatanga o te Moana-nui-ā-Kiwa/The Peopling of Polynesia	18	

**Schedule to the DipMāori/Tohu Māori Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Corequisites (C)
MAOR 123	Te Iwi Māori me āna Tikanga/Māori Society and Culture	18	
MAOR 124	Te Pūtaiao Māori/Science of the Māori	18	P 18 100-level Māori pts or permission of the Head of School
MAOR 212	Te Ao Hangarau ā Rehia/Culture, Performance and Technology	22	P 18 pts in Māori language; one of MAOR 122, 123, 124
MAOR 213	Te Kawa o te Marae/Marae Etiquette and Protocols	22	P MAOR 121; one of MAOR 122, 123, 124
MAOR 214	Māori Land and Sea Tenure	22	P as for MAOR 212
MAOR 216	Te Tiriti o Waitangi	22	P 36 100-level pts
MAOR 801	Te Tū Marae/Marae Practice	18	C MAOR 121
MAOR 802	Waiata Tawhito/Waiata Performance	18	C MAOR 121
MAOR 803	Te Mahi Tāonga/Practical Māori Art	18	C MAOR 121
MAOR 804	Whakakokoi Mātauranga/ Academic Study Skills	9	

**GDipTchgMāori\*****Statute for the Graduate Diploma in Teaching Māori Language/  
He Tohu Whakaako i te Reo Māori**

\* *Not offered in 2006*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipTchgMāori shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the School of Māori Studies/Te Kawa a Māui as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study. In particular, the candidate shall have satisfied the Head of School, through endorsement by kaumātua, that the candidate has sufficient ability in the Māori language.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had adequate training and experience to proceed with the proposed course of study.

**General Requirements**

2. (a) Except as provided in (b) and (c), the course of study for the GDipTchgMāori shall comprise  
MAOR 820, 821, 822 (or ELIN 805), 823, 824; MAOR 222 or LING 211.

- (b) A candidate who, in the opinion of the Head of School, has already covered the work in any course shall substitute another course approved by the Head of School.
- (c) With the approval of the Head of School, a candidate may substitute ELIN 803 or LING 223 for one of the courses specified in (a).
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the diploma within three years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend that maximum period in special cases.

### Schedule to the GDipTchgMāori Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions (X)
MAOR 820	Te Matatau ki te Reo Māori (Māori Language Proficiency)	20	X MAOR 322
MAOR 821	Te Reo Māori me ōna Āhuetanga (Description of Māori through the medium of Māori)	20	
MAOR 822	Planning and Development; and Curriculum Studies	20	X EDUC 323
MAOR 823	Special Topic	20	
MAOR 824	Research Paper	20	

## DipRehbStud\*

### Statute for the Diploma in Rehabilitation Studies

\* Not offered in 2006

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

- Before enrolment, a candidate for the DipRehbStud shall have
    - completed a degree or diploma of a university in New Zealand;
    - had at least two years of professional experience or, in the case of candidates admitted under (b), at least three years of professional experience; and
    - been accepted by the Head of the School of Social and Cultural Studies as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
  - Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience in social or rehabilitation services.

#### General Requirements

- Except as provided in section 4, the course of study for the DipRehbStud shall comprise REHB 801, 802, 803, 804, 805.
  - A candidate may be required to undergo an oral examination in any part of the course of study.

- (c) A candidate who has failed twice shall re-enrol for the diploma only with the permission of the Head of School.
- 3. (a) A full-time candidate shall normally be enrolled for two trimesters.  
(b) The course of study shall be on a modular basis, involving 64 contact hours for each of REHB 801-803 plus a rehabilitation practicum consisting of a 70-day placement and a supervised rehabilitation project.
- 4. A candidate who has passed for another qualification a course equivalent to one of REHB 801-803 may substitute an alternative course approved by the Head of School.

### GDipTESOL\*

#### **Statute for the Graduate Diploma in Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages**

*\*Note: From 2005 this qualification is available only to primary and secondary school teachers from the Pacific region who have been granted MFAT scholarships to study in the programme.*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Entry Requirements**

- 1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipTESOL shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study. A normal qualification for acceptance is that the candidate has at least two years of teaching experience or has been awarded the CertTESOL or GCertTESOL.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Head of School for a candidate who has had sufficient training and experience to proceed with the proposed course of study.

#### **General Requirements**

- 2. (a) The course of study for the GDipTESOL shall comprise
  - (i) ELIN 803, 804, 805;
  - (ii) one other course, normally ELIN 823.With the approval of the Head of School, a candidate may replace ELIN 823 with a relevant course or courses from any degree or diploma schedules.
- (b) Candidates will be required in ELIN 803 to undertake an instructional programme in a language of their choice. This requirement may be waived by the Head of School for a candidate who has acquired advanced proficiency in a second language, or who has had recent experience in learning another language.
- (c) A candidate may be required to attend an oral examination.

3. A candidate who has been presented with the CertTESOL before 2001 shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the GDipTESOL.
4. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters.

#### Schedule to the GDipTESOL Statute

Course	Title	Pts
ELIN 803	Language Acquisition and Language Use	30
ELIN 804	Description of English	30
ELIN 805	Language Teaching Methodology	30
ELIN 823	Studies in Language Teaching and Learning	30

## GCertTESOL

### Statute for the Graduate Certificate in Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GCertTESOL shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Head of School for a candidate who has had sufficient education and experience to proceed with the proposed course of study.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) The course of study for the GCertTESOL shall normally consist of ELIN 801, 802.
- (b) A candidate who attains a standard in the GDipTESOL deemed by the Head of School to be equivalent to that of the GCertTESOL shall be awarded the certificate.
3. The certificate shall normally be completed in one trimester of full-time study.

#### Schedule to the GCertTESOL Statute

Course	Title	Pts
ELIN 801	Introduction to Language Teaching	30
ELIN 802	TESOL Classroom Practice	30

## CertDeafStud (Teaching NZSL)

### Statute for the Certificate in Deaf Studies (Teaching NZSL)

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. Before enrolment, a candidate for the CertDeafStud (Teaching NZSL) shall have been accepted by the Head of the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies as likely to benefit from the course of study. Applicants will normally be fluent users of NZ Sign Language.

#### General Requirements

2. The course of study for the CertDeafStud (Teaching NZSL) shall comprise DEAF 801, 802, 803, 804, 805, 806.

#### Schedule to the CertDeafStud Statute

Course	Title	Pts
DEAF 801	Deaf Culture and Society	20
DEAF 802	Introduction to Structure and Use of NZ Sign Language	20
DEAF 803	Introduction to Learning Sign Language	20
DEAF 804	Principles of Teaching NZ Sign Language	20
DEAF 805	Curriculum Design and Materials Development	20
DEAF 806	Deaf Studies Teaching Practicum	20

## CertEnglProf

### Statute for the Certificate of Proficiency in English

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirement

1. Before enrolment, a candidate for the CertEnglProf shall have been accepted by the Head of the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies as likely to benefit from the course of study as a preparation for study in a tertiary institution in the following academic year.

#### General Requirements

2. The course of study for the CertEnglProf shall consist of one of ELIN 931, 932, 933, 941.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least one trimester full-time or the equivalent in part-time study.

### Schedule to the CertEnglProf Statute

Course	Title	Pts
ELIN 931	English Language Course	48
ELIN 932	English Language Course	48
ELIN 933	English Language Course	48
ELIN 941	English for Professional Purposes	48

## CertCP

### Statute for the Certificate in Contemporary Policing

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. Before enrolment, a candidate for the CertCP shall have been accepted by the Programme Director as having sufficient education and experience to proceed with the proposed course of study.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) The course of study for the CertCP shall be a coherent programme of study approved by the Programme Director. Except as provided in section 4, the course of study shall consist of courses worth at least 116 points, including:
  - (i) EDUC 114, LEGL 114, CRIM 214, 215;
  - (ii) at least 36 points in courses approved by the Programme Director.
 (b) Police personnel who have completed their workplace assessments and two-year probationary period and obtained the NZ Police College Certificate in Policing (or equivalent, as approved by the Royal New Zealand Police College and the Programme Director) will be granted 36 UNSP 100-level points under (a)(ii) above.
3. The certificate shall normally be completed part-time in the equivalent of two trimesters of full-time study.
4. With the approval of the Programme Director, a candidate who has already covered the content of up to two courses in the programme may substitute alternative courses at an equivalent or higher level.

### Schedule to the CertCP Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
EDUC 114	Understanding Behaviour: Working with People	18	
LEGL 114	Introduction to Criminal Law and Problem Solving	18	X FHSS 114
CRIM 214	Introduction to Criminal Behaviour	22	P (EDUC 114 and FHSS 114) or 36 ANTH, POLS, PSYC, PUBL, SOSC or SPOL pts or approved alternative; X CRIM 211, 212
CRIM 215	Contemporary Issues in Policing	22	P CRIM 211 or 214 or approved alternative; X CRIM 311, LAWS 309

---

## Faculty of Law

---

### LLB

#### Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### General Requirements

1. The personal course of study of a candidate for the LLB degree shall, except as provided in section 3 below and the Credit Transfer Statute, consist of courses worth at least 482 points as specified in section 2. Each candidate shall participate in the Moot Court programme of the Faculty of Law and complete the compulsory Legal Research and Writing programme to the satisfaction of the Dean of the Faculty of Law.
2. (a) The course of study for the LLB degree shall, except as provided in (c), include
  - Part 1:** 90 points selected from the schedules of other first degrees of this University
  - Part 2:** LAWS 121, 122, 123
  - Part 3:** LAWS 211, 212, 213, 214
  - Part 4:** LAWS 301 and twelve electives selected from LAWS 300-397.
- (b) In general, Part 2 shall be completed before enrolment in Part 3, and Part 3 shall be completed before enrolment in Part 4.
- (c) A graduate of a New Zealand university (or another approved university) shall receive credit for 90 non-law points and be exempted from Part 1.

#### Cross-crediting

3. At the discretion of the Student Administration Manager,
  - (a) a candidate completing an LLB degree combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;
  - (b) a candidate completing an LLB degree combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the LLB and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of section 2 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Transition from Earlier Regulations

4. Candidates who began their course of study under the regulations in force before 1995 and who have not yet completed the degree must complete under this statute. A schedule that details the number of courses which must be taken to complete the degree under this provision is available from the Faculty of Law.

*Note: The first year law requirements changed in 2003. Students who have completed LAWS 101 (rather than LAWS 121, 122 and 123) must complete 108 non-law points (rather than 90 non-law points) to graduate with an LLB. If necessary, students should seek advice at the Law Faculty Office.*

### Schedule to the LLB Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
LAWS 121	Introduction to New Zealand Legal System	18	X LAWS 101
LAWS 122	Introduction to Case Law	18	P LAWS 121; X LAWS 101
LAWS 123	Introduction to Statute Law	18	P LAWS 121; X LAWS 101
LAWS 211	The Law of Contract	32	P either LAWS 121, 122, 123 or LAWS 101
LAWS 212	The Law of Torts	32	P either LAWS 121, 122, 123 or LAWS 101
LAWS 213	Public Law	32	P either LAWS 121, 122, 123 or LAWS 101
LAWS 214	Criminal Law	32	P either LAWS 121, 122, 123 or LAWS 101
LAWS 301	Property Law	30	
LAWS 302	Advanced Torts	15	P LAWS 212
LAWS 303	Advanced Contract	15	P LAWS 211
LAWS 304	Restitution	15	P LAWS 211, 212, 213, 214, 301
LAWS 305	Equitable Obligations	15	X LAWS 312 before 1995
LAWS 306	Remedies	15	
LAWS 307	Sentencing and Penal Policy	15	X LAWS 314 before 1995, CRIM 312, 513
LAWS 308	Advanced Criminal Law	15	P LAWS 214
LAWS 309	The Criminal Justice System	15	X LAWS 314 before 1995, CRIM 215, 311
LAWS 313	Māori Customary Law	15	
LAWS 314	Property Law (Transitional)	15	X LAWS 394 in 1995, LAWS 395 in 1996 and 1997
LAWS 315	Advanced Real Property	15	P LAWS 301
LAWS 316	Māori Land Law	15	P LAWS 301
LAWS 317	Natural Resources Law	15	C LAWS 301
LAWS 318	Resource Management Law	15	C LAWS 301; X LAWS 356 before 1995
LAWS 319	Trusts	15	C LAWS 301; X LAWS 312 before 1995
LAWS 320	Advanced Public Law	15	
LAWS 321	Administrative Law	15	P LAWS 213; X LAWS 351 before 1995
LAWS 322	Judicial Review	15	X LAWS 351 before 1995
LAWS 323	Legislation	15	P LAWS 213
LAWS 324	Welfare Law	15	
LAWS 325	Advanced Environmental Law	15	P LAWS 212; C LAWS 301; X LAWS 335 in 1994, LAWS 391 in 1996
LAWS 326	Australian Public Law	15	P LAWS 213
LAWS 327	Civil Liberties	15	
LAWS 328	Privacy Law	15	P LAWS 212; X LAWS 392 in 1996-97
LAWS 329	Legal History	15	X LAWS 317 before 1995
LAWS 330	Jurisprudence	15	X LAWS 316 before 1995
LAWS 331	Bill of Rights	15	P LAWS 213; X LAWS 393 in 1997-2002

**Schedule to the LLB Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
LAWS 332	Feminist Legal Theory	15	
LAWS 333	Law and Sexuality	15	P LAWS 211, 212, 213, 214
LAWS 334	Ethics and the Law	15	
LAWS 335	Law and Economics	15	X ECON 330
LAWS 340	International Law	15	P LAWS 213; X LAWS 315 before 1995
LAWS 341	International Institutions	15	C LAWS 340
LAWS 342	International Environmental Law	15	C LAWS 301, 340
LAWS 343	International Human Rights	15	C LAWS 340
LAWS 345	Comparative Law	15	X LAWS 313 before 1995
LAWS 347	Pacific Legal Studies	15	
LAWS 350	Introduction to Commercial Law	15	X LAWS 322 before 1995, COML 301
LAWS 351	Maritime Law	15	
LAWS 352	Banking Law	15	
LAWS 353	Intellectual Property	15	P LAWS 211, 212, 301
LAWS 354	International Trade Law	15	
LAWS 355	Industrial Law	15	P LAWS 211; X COML 302
LAWS 356	Competition Law	15	X COML 304
LAWS 357	Consumer Law	15	
LAWS 358	Insurance Law	15	
LAWS 360	Business Associations	15	X LAWS 352 before 1995, COML 303
LAWS 361	Advanced Company Law	15	X LAWS 352 before 1995
LAWS 362	Creditors' Remedies and Insolvencies	15	
LAWS 363	Securities Regulations	15	
LAWS 364	Sales and Sales Finance	15	
LAWS 365	Elements of Taxation	15	X LAWS 357 before 1995
LAWS 366	Entity Taxation	15	
LAWS 367	Business Planning	15	
LAWS 368	Issues in Taxation	15	
LAWS 370	Introduction to Family Law	15	X LAWS 354 before 1995
LAWS 371	Child Law	15	
LAWS 372	Relationship Property and Succession	15	C LAWS 301; X LAWS 354 before 1995
LAWS 375	Conflict of Laws	15	P LAWS 211, 212, 213, 214, 301; C LAWS 301; X LAWS 353 before 1995
LAWS 379	Dispute Resolution	15	X LAWS 391 in 1999-2002
LAWS 380	Evidence	15	C LAWS 214; X LAWS 393 before 1995
LAWS 381	Civil Procedure	15	
LAWS 382	Criminal Procedure	15	
LAWS 383	Negotiation and Mediation	15	
LAWS 384	Legal Services Clinical Programme	15	X LAWS 395 in 1995-96, LAWS 394 in 1997
LAWS 391-97	Special Topics	15	

## LLB(Hons)

### Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws with Honours

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### General Requirements

1. The personal course of study of a candidate for the LLB(Hons) degree shall, except as provided in section 4 below and the Credit Transfer Statute, consist of courses selected from the schedules to the statutes for this degree, the LLM and any first degrees at this University. The courses shall be worth at least 516 points and include
  - (a) at least 90 points in non-LAWS courses;
  - (b) LAWS 121, 122, 123, 211, 212, 213, 214;
  - (c) LAWS 301 and ten electives from LAWS 300-399;
  - (d) LAWS 489 and two approved courses from LAWS 430-470;
  - (e) one approved course from LAWS 500-528.Each candidate shall comply with all legal writing and mooted requirements.
2. Each candidate shall, no later than 1 September in the first year of enrolment in the LLB(Hons), present for LAWS 489 a supervised research essay undertaken on a topic approved by the Honours Co-ordinator of the Faculty of Law.
3. A candidate shall normally complete the courses specified in section 1(d) and (e) over a two-year period. This period may be varied by the Honours Co-ordinator.

#### Cross-credits

4. At the discretion of the Honours Co-ordinator,
  - (a) a candidate completing an LLB(Hons) degree combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;
  - (b) a candidate completing an LLB(Hons) degree combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.In either case, the overall course of study for the LLB(Hons) and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 1-2 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Award of Honours

5.
  - (a) The LLB(Hons) may be awarded with Honours as described in sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.
  - (b) To be eligible for the award of Honours a candidate shall complete the courses specified in section 1(d) and (e) within three years of first enrolment for the LLB(Hons) degree.
  - (c) The class of Honours to be awarded shall be determined by the candidate's performance in the courses prescribed in section 1 (c)-(e) of this statute and in any viva voce examination which may be held. Honours will not normally be

awarded if a candidate has failed any course included in the assessment of Honours, unless the Dean is satisfied that the candidate is worthy of such an award on their performance as a whole.

- (d) A candidate whose work is of a standard lower than that required for Honours, or who has not met the requirement stated in (b), may be required to transfer to an LLB degree, receiving such points as determined by the Honours Coordinator.

*Note: The first year law requirements changed in 2003. Students who have completed LAWS 101 (rather than LAWS 121, 122 and 123) must complete 108 non-law points (rather than 90 non-law points) to graduate with an LLB. If necessary, students should seek advice at the Law Faculty Office.*

### Schedule to the LLB(Hons) Statute

#### Part A

Courses from the LLB Schedule.

#### Part B

Course	Title	Pts
LAWS 430-470	Special Topic	8
LAWS 489	Research Essay	8

## LLM

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Laws

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the LLM degree shall have
  - (i) completed an LLB(Hons) or LLB degree; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Director of Postgraduate Studies for the Faculty of Law as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Director for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. Except as provided in section 5 of this statute, the course of study for the LLM shall consist of either
  - (a) a Master's thesis LAWS 591, together with any additional advanced legal study specified by the Director; or
  - (b) a coherent programme approved by the Director and including
    - (i) LAWS 581;

- (ii) one course from LAWS 501-528; and
- (iii) 70 further points from LAWS 501-589; or
- (c) a combination of coursework and dissertation including
  - (i) LAWS 581;
  - (ii) LAWS 592; and
  - (iii) 20 further points from LAWS 501-589.
- 3. A full-time candidate shall normally complete the degree within one year of first enrolling in it, and a part-time candidate shall normally complete it within three years of first enrolment. The Director may vary these periods in special cases.
- 4. A candidate who has failed any course shall re-enrol for the degree only with the permission of the Director.

#### Substitution of Courses

- 5. A candidate may, with the permission of the Director, replace LAWS 581 with an appropriate 500-level LAWS course, or substitute in section 2(b)(iii) up to 40 points worth of 400/500-level courses offered for other VUW programmes. (See Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses.)

#### Award of Distinction or Merit

- 6. The LLM may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Schedule to the LLM Statute

Course	Title	Pts
LAWS 501	Competition Law	40
LAWS 502	Intellectual Property	40
LAWS 503	Comparative Law	40
LAWS 504	International Trade	40
LAWS 505	Public Law	40
LAWS 506	Criminal Law	40
LAWS 507	Family Law	40
LAWS 508	Energy and Natural Resources	40
LAWS 509	International Law	40
LAWS 510	Jurisprudence	40
LAWS 511	Property Law	40
LAWS 512	Corporations and Other Organisations	40
LAWS 513	Law and Medicine	40
LAWS 514	Commercial Law	40
LAWS 515	Indigenous Peoples Law	40
LAWS 516	Taxation	40
LAWS 517	Law of Torts	40
LAWS 518	Employment Law	40
LAWS 519	Administrative Law	40

**Schedule to the LLM Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts
LAWS 520-529*	Special Topics	40
LAWS 530-576*	Special Topics	20
LAWS 577-579	Special Topics	10
LAWS 580	Introduction to the Common Law	10
LAWS 581	Advanced Legal Study	10
LAWS 582	Masters Legal Writing	30
LAWS 591	Thesis	120
LAWS 592	Dissertation	90

*\* To be prescribed by the Dean of Law. Approval will not normally be given for candidates to take any of LAWS 520-580 where the same or substantially similar courses have been taken as part of another degree.*

**CertLaw****Statute for the Certificate in Law**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the CertLaw shall have
  - (i) completed an LLB(Hons) or LLB; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Director of Postgraduate Studies for the Faculty of Law as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Director for a candidate who has adequate training and ability to proceed with the proposed course of study.

**General Requirements**

2. (a) The course of study for the certificate shall be a coherent programme of study approved by the Director and consisting of at least five 200- to 500-level courses, including at least three at 300 level unless the Director determines otherwise. Except as provided in section 4, these courses shall be chosen from the LLB, LLB(Hons) or LLM schedules.
- (b) The course of study may include up to two courses passed for a Certificate of Proficiency before enrolment for the certificate.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the certificate within three years of first enrolling in it. The Director may extend the maximum period in special cases.

**Substitution of Courses**

4. A candidate may include up to two approved courses from other university programmes.

## DipLaw

### Statute for the Diploma in Law

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the DipLaw shall have
  - (i) completed an LLB(Hons) or LLB; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Director of Postgraduate Studies for the Faculty of Law as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Director for a candidate who has
  - (i) completed a Bachelor degree at a university in New Zealand and produced evidence of adequate training and ability to proceed with the proposed course of study, or
  - (ii) had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) The course of study for the diploma shall be a coherent programme of study approved by the Director and consisting of at least five 200- to 500-level courses, including at least three at 500 level unless the Director determines otherwise. Except as provided in section 4, these courses shall be chosen from the LLB, LLB(Hons) or LLM schedules.
- (b) The course of study may include up to two courses passed for a Certificate of Proficiency before enrolment for the diploma.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the diploma within three years of first enrolling in it. The Director may extend the maximum period in special cases.

#### Substitution of Courses

4. A candidate may include up to two approved courses from other university programmes.

## Law Profession Admission Programme

The requirement for candidates seeking admission as barristers and solicitors is satisfactory completion of a professional legal studies course. These courses are taught and administered by the Institute of Professional Legal Studies, PO Box 5649, Wellington and by the College of Law, PO Box 5047, Wellesley Street, Auckland.

---

## Faculty of Science

---

### BSc

#### Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Science

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### General Requirements

1. (a) The personal course of study of a candidate for the BSc degree shall, except as provided in (b) or in section 5 below or the Credit Transfer Statute, consist of courses from the BSc schedule or the schedules of other first degrees of this University having a total value of at least 360 points, of which
  - (i) at least 270 points shall be from courses listed in the BSc schedule (except that up to 48 points from other degree schedules may be included in this total where they are taken to satisfy a major subject requirement as specified in section 2);
  - (ii) at least 180 points shall be from courses numbered 200-399 including 120 points from courses in the BSc schedule; and
  - (iii) at least 72 points shall be from courses numbered 300-399 in the BSc schedule.
- (b) With the permission of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science, a candidate may include courses from the BSc(Hons) schedule. For the purposes of this statute, such courses shall be regarded as if they were numbered in the range 300-399 and listed in the BSc schedule. However, they may not be used to satisfy any requirement that specifies a particular course at 300 level or courses numbered within a range narrower than 300-399.

#### Major Subject Requirements

2. A candidate shall satisfy the requirements for at least one major subject as listed below, with these provisos:
  - (a) no course numbered 300-399 may be counted towards more than two major subjects;
  - (b) no more than 30 points in courses numbered 300-399 may be counted towards more than one major subject.

#### Applied Statistics

- (a) STAT 193 or QUAN 102; 18 further 100-level MATH, STAT or QUAN points;
- (b) STAT 291, 338, 392;
- (c) 22 further 200-level STAT, OPRE or MATH points, or one of (BIOL 214, ENVI 214, GEOG 215, GEOL 214, LING 211, 325, MAOR 211, 222, MGMT 206, PSYC 325, PUBL 306, QUAN 201, 202, SOSOC 203, 212, SPOL 205, 207, STAT 339).

#### Biology

- (a) BIOL 111, 113, 114;
- (b) at least 60 200-level BIOL points;
- (c) at least 60 300-level BIOL points.

**Biotechnology**

- (a) BIOL 111, BTEC 101, CHEM 103, 104, COML 111, STAT 193;
- (b) BIOL 241, 262, BTEC 201, CHEM 201, 204, PHIL 228, at least 12 points from CHEM 205, 206, BIOL 261;
- (c) BTEC 301, TECH 302, at least 18 points from BIOL 361, 362, CHEM 305,306.

*Note: Specific course advice will be given in the SBS Prospectus relating to recommended selections of courses identified as appropriate to accompany the core requirements of the major and on prerequisite courses.*

**Cell and Molecular Bioscience**

- (a) BIOL 111, 113, 114, CHEM 104;
- (b) BIOL 239, 240, 241, 252, 261, 262;
- (c) BIOL 339, 340, 361, 362, at least one course from BIOL 334, 335, 341, 342.

**Chemistry**

- (a) CHEM 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206;
- (b) any four of CHEM 301, 302, 303, 305, 306.

**Chemistry and Technology**

- (a) CHEM 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206;
- (b) CHEM 303, 306; any two of CHEM 301, 302, 305.

**Computer Science**

- (a) Three of COMP 201-206;
- (b) 60 300-level COMP points;
- (c) MATH 114; one of STAT 131, STAT 193, QUAN 102;
- (d) one of (MATH 214, MATH 207, OPRE 251, STAT 231) or 22 points in approved courses above 100 level.

**Development Studies**

- (a) GEOG 112, 212, 312, 316;
- (b) five further approved courses with significant relevance to development studies and/or development studies content, comprising:
  - (i) one regional-based course and one subject-based course at 100-level;
  - (ii) one regional-based course and one subject-based course at 200-level;
  - (iii) one 300-level course.

*Note: A list of approved courses is included in the Development Studies Prospectus and Course Catalogue.*

**Ecology and Biodiversity**

- (a) BIOL 111, 113, 114; STAT 193;
- (b) BIOL 214, 227, 228, 241, 242; STAT 291;
- (c) BIOL 327, 328, 329.

**Electronic and Computer Systems**

- (a) PHYS 340, 341;
- (b) two of COMP 301, 305, 306;
- (c) one further approved course from PHYS 300-399 or COMP 300-399.

**Environmental Studies**

- (a) ECON 130; STAT 193 or an equivalent background in Statistics;
- (b) 18 points from BIOL 132, CHEM 100-199, ESCI 111, 132, PHYS 131;

- (c) one course from (MAOR 214, 215, PUBL 207) or an approved course in environmental law or political science;
- (d) ENVI/GEOG 314; BIOL/GEOL 214; one of BIOL 327, 328, 371.

**Geography**

- (a) 48 points from GEOG 300-399;
- (b) at least 44 further 200/300-level GEOG points.

**Geology**

- (a) GEOL 224, 341, 342, 361, 362;
- (b) GEOL 363 or GEOL/GPHS 367; 15 further points from GEOL 363-399.

**Geophysics**

- (a) MATH 206, 207, PHYS 209, 215, GPHS/MATH 323;
- (b) either
  - (i) *Solid Earth Geophysics*: ESCI 111, GEOL 113, GPHS/GEOL 344, 367, 368 and 22 further 200/300-level MATH or PHYS points, or
  - (ii) *Meteorology*: MATH 322 and one of (MATH 301, OPRE 352, PHYS 304, 305, STAT 331).

**Interdisciplinary Science**

72 points in 300-level courses approved by the Associate Dean from the BSc schedule.

**Linguistics**

- (a) LING 221, 325; one further course from LING 321-399;
- (b) one approved course\* in logic or computer science (excluding COMP 101 and 130) or a language other than English.

\* A candidate whose language in the home or school is not English will be exempted from this requirement.

**Management Science**

- (a) OPRE 251, 351, 352;
- (b) one of MGMT 314, 315, 316;
- (c) at least 22 further points from MGMT 200-399.

**Marine Biology**

- (a) BIOL 111, 113, 114; STAT 193;
- (b) BIOL 214, 227, 228, 241, 271, 272; STAT 291;
- (c) BIOL 329, 371, 372.

**Mathematics**

- (a) MATH 113, 114; one course from (COMP 102, STAT 131/193, QUAN 102);
- (b) at least 92 points from MATH 200-399 (excluding MATH 371), including at least 48 points numbered 300-399.

**Operations Research**

- (a) OPRE 251; 22 points from MATH 200-269 or STAT 200-289;
- (b) 48 points from OPRE 300-399.

**Physics**

- (a) PHYS 304, 305, 307, 309;
- (b) one of (PHYS 339, 340, 341) or, with the permission of the Head of School, MATH 301 or 322;
- (c) PHYS 214, 215 and two further courses from PHYS 200-299.

**Psychology**

- (a) 66 200-level PSYC points;  
 (b) 72 300-level PSYC points.

**Statistics**

- (a) STAT 231, 331;  
 (b) 24 further points from STAT 300-399.

**Cross-crediting**

3. At the discretion of the Associate Dean,  
 (a) a candidate completing a BSc degree combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;  
 (b) a candidate completing a BSc degree combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the BSc and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 1 and 2 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Schedule to the BSc Statute**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ARCH 181	Architectural Technologies	18	
ARCH 222	Sustainable Architecture	20	P 72 pts; X ARCH 282 in 1995 or 1998-2000; ARCH 382 in 1997
BIOL 111	Cell Biology	18	
BIOL 113	Biology of Plants	18	
BIOL 114	Biology of Animals	18	X BMSC 114
BIOL 116	Human Reproduction, Evolution and Sexuality	15	X BMSC 116
BIOL 132	Biodiversity and Conservation	18	
BIOL 214	Physical and Biological Processes in Ecology	22	P STAT 193; 36 pts from (BIOL 111, 113, 114, 116, ESCI 111, GEOG 111, GEOG/ENVI 114), GEOL 111.; C BIOL 242 (not required for Marine Biology majors); X GEOL 214
BIOL 219	New Zealand Flora & Fauna	15	P 72 pts
BIOL 221	Human Nutrition	22	P 72 pts
BIOL 227	Plants and Algae: Function and Diversity	22	P BIOL 113
BIOL 228	Animal Diversity	22	P BIOL 114; X BIOL 218
BIOL 231	Science and Society	22	P 72 pts; X SCED 201
BIOL 234	Special Topic	15	72 approved pts
BIOL 236	Environmental Microbiology	15	72 pts from (BIOL, BMSC or BTEC 100-399 or GEOL 113)
BIOL 239	Proteins and Enzymes	18	P CHEM 103 or 104; X BMSC 209, BIOL 209
BIOL 240	Metabolism	18	P BIOL 111; CHEM 103 or 104; X BMSC 210, BIOL 210

## Schedule to the BSc Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
BIOL 241	Heredity and Gene Expression	18	P BIOL 111; X BIOL 211, 311, BMSC 211
BIOL 242	Field Ecology and Landscape Evolution	11	P 36 pts from BIOL, GEOG, GEOL, ENVI, or ESCI 100-199; C BIOL/GEOL 214; X GEOL 242
BIOL 243	Physiology and Pharmacology	18	P BIOL 111, 114; CHEM 103 or 104; X BMSC 213, BIOL 213
BIOL 252	Cell and Developmental Biology	18	P BIOL 111, 114; X BMSC 212, BIOL 212
BIOL 261	Laboratory Techniques for the Molecular Biosciences 1	12	P CHEM 103 or 104; BIOL 111; X BIOL 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, BMSC 261
BIOL 262	Laboratory Techniques for the Molecular Biosciences 2	12	P CHEM 103 or 104; BIOL 111; X BIOL 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, BMSC 262
BIOL 271	Introductory Marine Biology	11	P 72 pts
BIOL 272	Field Marine Biology	11	P BIOL 113 (or 114), 271, STAT 291; or permission of the Head of School.
BIOL 327	Population and Community Ecology	30	P BIOL/GEOL 214 or permission of the Head of School
BIOL 328	Behaviour and Conservation Ecology	30	P BIOL/GEOL 214 or permission of the Head of School; X BIOL 318, 321
BIOL 329	Evolution	24	P 240 pts, including at least 30 pts at 300-level in the biological sciences, earth sciences or philosophy, or permission of Head of School
BIOL 334	Cell and Immunobiology	9	P BIOL 252 or equivalent background; X BIOL 304, BMSC 304
BIOL 335	Advanced Physiology	18	P BIOL 243; X BIOL 305, BMSC 305
BIOL 336	Special Topic: Environmental Microbiology	30	P 36 200-level BIOL or BMSC pts; X BMSC 301
BIOL 337	Special Topic	15	P 36 200-level BIOL or BMSC pts
BIOL 339	Cellular Regulation	18	P BIOL 239, 240; X BCHM 314, BIOL 309, BMSC 309
BIOL 340	Genes and Genomes	18	P BIOL 241; X BCHM 313, BIOL 310, BMSC 310
BIOL 341	Genetics	9	P BIOL 241; X BIOL 311, BMSC 312
BIOL 342	Human Molecular Genetics	9	P BIOL 341; C BIOL 340; X BIOL 311, BMSC 353
BIOL 361	Laboratory Techniques for the Molecular Biosciences 3	18	P BIOL 261, 262; X BIOL 303, 304, 305, 309, 310, 311; BMSC 361
BIOL 362	Laboratory Techniques for the Molecular Biosciences 4	18	P BIOL/BMSC 262 or (CHEM 205, BIOL 239/BMSC 209); X BIOL 303, 304, 305, 309, 310, 311
BIOL 371	Marine Ecology	30	P BIOL/GEOL 214, BIOL 272; or permission of the Head of School; X BIOL 313, 323
BIOL 372	Marine Animal Resources	30	P BIOL 228 (or 217), 271, 272; X BIOL 320, 325
<i>For BMSC courses see BMedSc schedule</i>			
BTEC 101	Introduction to Biotechnology	18	
BTEC 201	Molecular Biotechnology	18	P BIOL 111
BTEC 301	Biotechnological Techniques and Processes	30	P BTEC 201
CHEM 103	Concepts of Chemistry	18	

**Schedule to the BSc Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
CHEM 104	Principles of Chemistry	18	
CHEM 191	Introductory Chemistry	18	P permission of the Head of School; X CHEM 103, 104
CHEM 201	Organic Chemistry	18	P CHEM 103, 104; X CHEM 221
CHEM 202	Inorganic and Materials Chemistry	18	P CHEM 103, 104; X CHEM 222
CHEM 203	Physical and Process Chemistry	18	P CHEM 103, 104; X CHEM 222 and 223
CHEM 204	Spectroscopy and Structural Analysis	11	P CHEM 103, 104; X CHEM 224
CHEM 205	Chemical Synthesis – Laboratory Component	15	P CHEM 103, 104
CHEM 206	Chemical Methods and Processes – Laboratory Component	15	P CHEM 103, 104
CHEM 225	Analytical Chemistry	11	P CHEM 103, 104
CHEM 301	Organic Chemistry	18	P CHEM 201, 204; X CHEM 371
CHEM 302	Inorganic and Materials Chemistry	18	P CHEM 202, 204; X CHEM 372
CHEM 303	Physical and Process Chemistry	18	P CHEM 203; C CHEM 201; X CHEM 365, 372
CHEM 305	Chemistry Synthesis Laboratory	18	P CHEM 201, 204, 205
CHEM 306	Chemical Materials and Methods Laboratory	18	P CHEM 202, 204, 206
COMP 101	Introduction to Dynamic Web Development	18	X INET 101
COMP 102	Intro to Computer Program Design	18	
COMP 103	Introduction to Data Structures and Algorithms	18	P COMP 102
COMP 202	Introduction to Formal Methods	22	P COMP 103, MATH 114
COMP 203	Computer Organisation	22	P COMP 103, MATH 114
COMP 205	Software Design and Engineering	22	P COMP 103
COMP 206	Program and Data Structures	22	P COMP 103; X COMP 201
COMP 301	Software Engineering Principles	15	P COMP 205 (or 201)
COMP 302	Database Systems	15	P COMP 205, 206 (or 201), MATH 114
COMP 303	Design and Analysis of Algorithms	15	P COMP 202; one of COMP 201, 205, 206; MATH 214
COMP 304	Programming Languages	15	P COMP 202; COMP 205 or 206 (or 201); MATH 114
COMP 305	Operating Systems	15	P COMP 203, 206 (or 201), MATH 114
COMP 306	Computer Networks	15	P COMP 203 (or 204), 206 (or 201); MATH 114
COMP 307	Introduction to Artificial Intelligence	15	P COMP 205 or 206 (or 201); MATH 114
COMP 308	Computer Graphics	15	P COMP 205, 206 (or 201); MATH 114
COMP 310	Concurrent Programming	15	P COMP 203, 206 (or 201); MATH 114
COMP 311	User Interface Design	15	P COMP 205 (or 201)
COMP 312	Simulation and Stochastic Models	15	P COMP 205 or 206 (or 201); STAT 131; MATH 114; X COMP 349 in 1998-2003, OPRE 352
COMP 348	Special Topic	15	P permission of Head of School
COMP 349	Special Topic	15	P permission of Head of School
COMP 389	Software Engineering Project	15	P COMP 301

## Schedule to the BSc Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ENVI 114	Environment and Resources: the Foundations	18	X GEOG 114
ENVI 214	Environment and Resources: NZ Perspectives	22	P ENVI/GEOG 114, GEOG 111; X GEOG 214
ENVI 314	Advanced Environment and Resources: Global Issues	24	P ENVI/GEOG 214 or permission of the course co-ordinator; X GEOG 314
ESCI 111	Earth Systems and Global Change	18	X GEOL 111
ESCI 132	Antarctica: Unfreezing the Continent	18	X GEOL 132
ESCI 201	Climate Change and NZ's Future	22	P 36 pts
GEOG 111	Fundamentals of Geography	18	
GEOG 112	Development in the Asia Pacific	18	
GEOG 114	Environment and Resources: the Foundations	18	X ENVI 114
GEOG 212	Worlds of Development	22	P GEOG 112 or approved course
GEOG 214	Environment and Resources: NZ Perspectives	22	P GEOG 111, GEOG/ENVI 114; X ENVI 214
GEOG 215	Introduction to GIS and Spatial Analysis	22	P 72 100-level pts
GEOG 216	Urban and Population Geography	22	P GEOG 111; GEOG 112 or 115 or GEOG/ENVI 114
GEOG 218	Landform Development and Coastal Processes	22	P GEOG 111; GEOG/ENVI 114 or 18 approved pts; C GEOG 223; X GEOG 213
GEOG 219	Climatic and Hydrological Processes	22	P GEOG 111; GEOG/ENVI 114 or 18 approved pts; C GEOG 223; X GEOG 213
GEOG 223	Physical Environmental Processes: Field Methods	11	P GEOG 111; GEOG/ENVI 114 or ESCI 111 or 18 100-level GEOL or BIOL pts
GEOG 311	Geography of New Zealand and Australia	24	P 44 200-level GEOG pts or (22 200-level GEOG pts and 22 further approved pts)
GEOG 312	Gender and Development	24	P (GEOG 212 and 22 further 200-level GEOG pts) or 44 approved 200-level pts
GEOG 314	Advanced Environment and Resources: Global Issues	24	P GEOG/ENVI 214 or permission of the course coordinator; X ENVI 314
GEOG 315	Advanced Geographic Information Systems	24	P GEOG 215 and 22 further approved 200-level pts
GEOG 316	Geographies of Globalisation	24	P 22 200-level GEOG pts
GEOG 318	Geomorphical Systems	24	P 44 200-level pts from GEOG 213, 218, 219, 223 or approved GEOL or BIOL courses; C GEOG 323
GEOG 319	Coastal Systems	24	P as for GEOG 318
GEOG 323	Advanced Physical Environmental Processes	12	P (GEOG 223 and one of GEOG 213, 218, 219) or 33 200-level pts in a relevant field science
GEOL 113	Fundamentals of Geology	18	X GEOL 112
GEOL 214	Physical and Biological Processes in Ecology	22	P STAT 193; 36 pts from (BIOL 111, 113, 114, 116, GEOL 111, ESCI 111, GEOG 111, GEOG/ENVI 114); C GEOL 242; X BIOL 214, 314
GEOL 221	Understanding the Stratigraphic Record	11	P GEOL 111 or (ESCI 111 and GEOL 113); X GEOL 202

## Schedule to the BSc Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
GEOL 222	Life Through Time	11	P GEOL 111 or (ESCI 111 and GEOL 113) or (ESCI 111 and 18 100-level BIOL pts); X GEOL 202
GEOL 223	Earthquakes and Earth Structure	11	P GEOL 111, 112 or (ESCI 111 and GEOL 113); X GEOL 201
GEOL 224	Minerals and Rocks in a Dynamic Earth	11	P GEOL 112 or (ESCI 111 and GEOL 113); X GEOL 201
GEOL 241	Introductory Field Geology	11	P 36 pts from ESCI 111, GEOL 111, 112, 113; C 22 200-level GEOL pts
GEOL 242	Field Ecology and Landscape Evolution	11	P 36 pts from 100-level BIOL, GEOG, GEOL, ENVI or ESCI courses; C GEOL 214; X BIOL 242
GEOL 341	Structural Field Geology	12	P GEOL 223 (or 201), 241
GEOL 342	Sedimentary Field Geology	12	P GEOL 221 (or 202), 241
GEOL 343	Volcanic Field Geology	12	P GEOL 223 (or 201), 241
GEOL 344	Field Geophysics	12	C GEOL/GPHS 368; X GPHS 344
GEOL 351	New Zealand Field Geology	15	P GEOL 201 or 202 or 241, or a comparable background in Geology
GEOL 352	Advanced NZ Field Geology	15	P GEOL 351
GEOL 361	Paleoenvironments and Sedimentary Basin Analysis	15	P GEOL 221 (or 202); C GEOL 342; X GEOL 332
GEOL 362	Structural Geology	15	P GEOL 223 (or 201); C GEOL 341; X GEOL 331
GEOL 363	Igneous and Metamorphic Petrology	15	P GEOL 224 (or 201); X GEOL 333
GEOL 364	Petroleum and Coal Geology	15	P GEOL 221 (or 202); X GEOL 332
GEOL 365	Quaternary Geology	15	P GEOL 221 (or 202) or GEOG 213 or 218 or 219 or GEOL/BIOL 214; X GEOL 332
GEOL 366	Global Tectonics	15	P GEOL 223 (or 201); X GEOL 331
GEOL 367	Exploration Geophysics	15	P 18 pts from GEOL 113, MATH 113, PHYS 114, 115; 22 200-level GEOL, PHYS or MATH pts; X GEOL/GPHS 311, GPHS 367
GEOL 368	Geophysical Modelling	15	P GEOL/GPHS 367; 18 pts from MATH 113, PHYS 114, 115; C GEOL/GPHS 344; X GEOL/GPHS 311, GPHS 368
GEOL 369	Special Topic	12	P 22 200-level GEOL pts
GEOL 370	Geochemistry	15	P GEOL 224 or 201 or permission of the Head of School
GPHS 323	Mathematics for Earth Sciences	24	P MATH 206 and 11 further 200-level MATH pts; X MATH 323
GPHS 344	Field Geophysics	12	P as for GEOL 344; X GEOL 344
GPHS 367	Exploration Geophysics	15	P as for GEOL 367; X GEOL/GPHS 311, GEOL 367
GPHS 368	Geophysical Modelling	15	P as for GEOL 368; C as for GEOL 368; X GEOL/GPHS 311, GEOL 368
LING 211	Introduction to Linguistics	22	P 36 pts
LING 221	Sociolinguistics	22	P 36 pts; X LING 312
LING 223	Language Learning Processes	22	P 36 pts
LING 224	Interpersonal Communication	22	P LALS 101 or 54 pts; X COMM 202
LING 226	Special Topic	22	P 36 pts

## Schedule to the BSc Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
LING 321	Discourse and Meaning	24	P LING 211 or 221
LING 322	New Zealand English	24	P LING 211
LING 323	Psycholinguistics	24	P LING 211 or PSYC 122
LING 324	Language Variation and Change	24	P LING 211; X LING 314
LING 325	Linguistic Analysis	24	P LING 211; X LING 220, 320
LING 326	Special Topic	24	P an approved 200-level LING course or an approved alternative 200-level course
MAOR 124	The Science of the Māori: Te Pūtaiao o te Māori	18	P 18 100-level MAOR pts or permission of the Head of School
MATH 103	Introductory Calculus	18	X MATH 113; QUAN 103, 111
MATH 104	Introductory Algebra and Discrete Mathematics	18	X MATH 114
MATH 113	Calculus 1	18	X MATH 114 and QUAN 111
MATH 114	Algebra and Discrete Mathematics	18	X MATH 113 and QUAN 111
MATH 206	Calculus 2	22	P MATH 113, 114
MATH 207	Linear Algebra	22	P MATH 114
MATH 214	Discrete Mathematics 2	22	P MATH 114
MATH 223	Mathematical Modelling	22	P MATH 113, 114; X MATH 209, (MATH 210 and 222)
MATH 301	Calculus 3	24	P MATH 206 or 209 or 222 or 223
MATH 308	Geometry	12	P MATH 113; C MATH 207
MATH 309	Mathematical Logic	24	P MATH 214 or 207 or COMP 202; X MATH 409
MATH 311	Algebra	24	P MATH 207 or 214; X MATH 302, 303
MATH 312	Analysis	24	P MATH 206, 207; X MATH 304, 305
MATH 314	Combinatorics	12	P MATH 207 or 214
MATH 322	Applied Mathematics	24	P MATH 206, 207 (or 209 or 210 or 223)
MATH 323	Mathematics for Earth Sciences	24	P MATH 206, 207 (or 209 or 210 or 222 or 223); X GPHS 323
MATH 380	Special Topic	24	P 22 approved 200-level MATH pts
MATH 381	Special Topic	12	P as for MATH 380
MATH 382	Special Topic	12	P as for MATH 380
OPRE 251	Operations Research	22	P STAT 131 or 193 or QUAN 102; one of (MATH 113, 114, QUAN 111)
OPRE 351	Operations Research	24	P COMP 102, OPRE 251, 22 pts from (MATH 200-269, STAT 231)
OPRE 352	Simulation and Stochastic Models	24	P COMP 102; OPRE 251 or STAT 231 or 291 or QUAN 201; X COMP 312, (COMP 349 in 1998-2003)
OPRE 358	Special Topic	12	P OPRE 251 or 22 approved 200/300-level pts; MATH 113 or QUAN 111 or a comparable background in Calculus
OPRE 359	Special Topic	12	P as for OPRE 358
PHIL 111	Introduction to Logic	18	X PHIL 203
PHIL 228	Ethics and Genetics	24	P 36 PHIL/BIOL pts; X PHIL 328; PHIL 320 in 2001; PHIL 215/315 in 2002
PHIL 234	Logic and Computation	22	P PHIL 111 or 203 or 235 or 335 or MATH 114 or 309; X PHIL 211, 334

**Schedule to the BSc Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
PHIL 235	Logic	22	P PHIL 111 or 203 or 234 or 334 or MATH 114 or 309; X PHIL 311, 335
PHIL 316	Philosophy of Mind	24	P 40 PHIL pts including 22 from PHIL 200-399 or permission of the co-ordinator
PHIL 318	Philosophy of Science	24	P as for PHIL 316
PHIL 319	The Evolution of Life and Mind	24	P as for PHIL 316
PHIL 328	Ethics and Genetics	24	P 40 PHIL pts including 22 from PHIL 200-399; X PHIL 228; PHIL 215/315 in 2002, PHIL 320 in 2001
PHIL 334	Logic and Computation	24	P PHIL 111 (with a pass of at least B) or 203 or 311 or 235 or 335 or MATH 114 (with a pass of at least B) or 309; X PHIL 211, 234
PHIL 335	Logic	24	P PHIL 111 (with a pass of at least B) or 203 or 234 or 334 or MATH 114 (with a pass of at least B) or 309; X PHIL 235, 311
PHYS 114	Physics 1A	18	
PHYS 115	Physics 1B	18	P PHYS 114 or a comparable background in Physics
PHYS 130	Introductory Physics	18	X PHYS 114, 115, 134
PHYS 131	Energy and the Environment	18	
PHYS 132	Introductory Astronomy	18	
PHYS 134	From Newton to Einstein and Beyond: An Introduction to Physics	18	X PHYS 114, 115, 130
PHYS 209	Physics of the Earth and Planets	11	P PHYS 114; MATH 113
PHYS 214	Physics 2A	22	P PHYS 114 or a comparable background in physics; C MATH 113, 114
PHYS 215	Physics 2B	22	P PHYS 115, MATH 113, 114
PHYS 217	Computerised Data Acquisition and Analysis	15	P 36 100-level PHYS or CHEM pts; X PHYS 216; TECH 201, 203
PHYS 234	Digital Electronics	11	P PHYS 115 (or 130 or 134) or TECH 102; C MATH 114
PHYS 235	Analogue Electronics	11	P PHYS 115 or a comparable background in physics; MATH 104 or 114
PHYS 304	Electromagnetism and Classical Fields	15	P PHYS 215; MATH 206
PHYS 305	Thermal Physics	15	P PHYS 215; MATH 206
PHYS 307	Quantum, Atomic and Nuclear Physics	15	P PHYS 214; MATH 206
PHYS 309	Solid State and Nuclear Physics	15	P PHYS 214; MATH 113, 114
PHYS 339	Experimental Techniques	15	P one of PHYS 214, 215, 216, 217
PHYS 340	Microprocessor and Interface Electronics	15	P PHYS 234
PHYS 341	Analogue Electronics and Instrumentation	15	P PHYS 235, MATH 206
PHYS 342	Special Topic	15	P 22 approved 200-level PHYS pts
PSYC 101	Popular Psychology	15	
PSYC 121	Introduction to Psychology 1	18	
PSYC 122	Introduction to Psychology 2	18	

## Schedule to the BSc Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
PSYC 221	Social Psychology	18	P PSYC 121
PSYC 231	Cognitive Psychology	18	P PSYC 122
PSYC 232	Research Methods in Psychology	12	P PSYC 121 or 122; STAT 193 (or 131) or QUAN 102 or approved equivalent; X PSYC 325
PSYC 233	Brain and Behaviour	18	P PSYC 122; X PSYC 231 before 2002
PSYC 234	Developmental Psychology	18	P PSYC 121; X PSYC 324 before 2003
PSYC 321	Abnormal Psychology	24	P PSYC 232, STAT 193; 18 further pts from PSYC 200-299
PSYC 322	Memory	24	P PSYC 231 (or 233), 232, STAT 193
PSYC 325	Advanced Research Methods in Psychology	24	P as for PSYC 321
PSYC 326	Language, Thought and Social Behaviour	24	P as for PSYC 321
PSYC 327	Neuropsychology	24	P PSYC 231 (or 233), 232, STAT 193
PSYC 331	Visual Perception	24	P as for PSYC 327
PSYC 332	Behaviour Analysis	24	P as for PSYC 327
PSYC 333	Applied Social Psychology	24	P PSYC 221, 232, STAT 193
PSYC 334	Industrial and Organisational Psychology	24	P as for PSYC 321
PSYC 335	Psychology, Crime and Law	24	P as for PSYC 321; X CRIM 321
PSYC 336	Special Topic	24	P as for PSYC 321
PSYC 337	Family Psychology	24	P PSYC 232, 234, STAT 193
PSYC 338	Cross-cultural Psychology	24	P as for PSYC 321
PSYC 339	Special Topic	24	P as for PSYC 321
QUAN 102	Statistics for Business	18	X STAT 193
QUAN 201	Introduction to Econometrics	22	P 18 100-level ECON pts; QUAN 102 (or STAT 131 or 193); QUAN 111 (or 103) or one of MATH 103-114
QUAN 202	Business and Economic Forecasting	22	P one of QUAN 102, STAT 131, 193; one of QUAN 103, 111, MATH 103-114; X QUAN 302
QUAN 203	Quantitative Methods	22	P QUAN 102 or STAT 131 or 193; QUAN 111 (or MATH 113 or 114)
QUAN 301	Econometrics	24	P ECON 201 or 202; QUAN 201; QUAN 203 or STAT 231
QUAN 303	Applied Econometrics	24	P ECON 201 or 202; QUAN 203 or STAT 231 or 291
QUAN 304	Financial Econometrics	24	P ECON 201 or 202 or MOFI 201 or 202; QUAN 203 or STAT 231
QUAN 371	Financial Mathematics	24	P MATH 113 or QUAN 111; 44 200-level MATH, OPRE, STAT, ECON, MOFI or QUAN pts; X FINM 371
SCIE 201	Special Topic	15	P permission of relevant Head of School
SCIE 202	Special Topic	18	P as for SCIE 201
SCIE 203	Special Topic	22	P as for SCIE 201
SCIE 301	Directed Individual Study	24	P as for SCIE 201
SCIE 302	Special Topic	15	P as for SCIE 201
SCIE 303	Special Topic	18	P as for SCIE 201
SCIE 304	Special Topic	24	P as for SCIE 201

**Schedule to the BSc Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
SCIE 305	Special Topic	30	P as for SCIE 201
STAT 131	Probability and Decision Modelling	18	
STAT 193	Statistics for Natural and Social Sciences	18	X QUAN 102, STAT 231
STAT 231	Statistics	22	P either MATH 113, 114, STAT 131 or a comparable background in mathematics and statistics
STAT 291	Applied Statistics	22	P STAT 193 or a comparable background in statistics
STAT 331	Statistics	24	P MATH 206, 207, STAT 231
STAT 333	Probability and Random Processes	24	P MATH 206, STAT 231
STAT 334	Special Topic	24	P 22 approved 200/300-level pts
STAT 338	Multivariate Statistics	24	P STAT 291
STAT 339	Special Topic	24	P 22 approved 200/300-level pts
STAT 392	Sample Surveys	24	P STAT 193 (or equivalent); 44 approved 200/300-level pts; X STAT 439
TECH 101	Nanotechnology and Smart Materials	18	
TECH 102	Foundations of Digital Technology	18	
TECH 302	Technology Development and Management	24	P 36 200-level pts in PHYS, CHEM, BTEC or TECH courses; X TECH 301

**Conjoint BSc/BTeach****Statute for the Conjoint Bachelor of Science and Bachelor of Teaching Programme**

*Note: This statute facilitates the study of the BSc and BTeach degrees in combination; students completing the conjoint programme graduate with both degrees.*

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

- (a) Admission to the conjoint BSc/BTeach programme normally occurs in a candidate's first year of study at university and requires that the candidate be accepted into the BSc degree and meet the College of Education entry requirements, which include the good character and fitness to teach requirements of the NZ Teachers Council. A candidate who has already completed the requirements of the BSc will not be admitted to the conjoint programme.
- (b) A candidate taking the conjoint programme shall obtain permission to re-enrol for it each year after first admission to the programme. Such permission

will normally be given if the student has achieved a B- average over the courses completed in the previous year of study.

### General Requirements

2. The personal course of study of a candidate for the conjoint BSc/BTeach shall consist of courses from the schedules to first degrees of this University. Except as provided in section 6 below and the Credit Transfer Statute, these courses shall have a total value of at least 534 points, of which
  - (a) at least 318 points shall be from courses numbered 200-399, including at least 120 from courses numbered 300-399;
  - (b) at least 244 points shall be from the BSc schedule, including at least 136 from courses numbered 200-399; and
  - (c) at least 244 points shall be from the BTeach schedule, including at least 136 from courses numbered 200-399.

A candidate taking the conjoint programme is normally expected to include courses from both the BSc and BTeach schedules in each year of enrolment.

3. The course of study of every candidate shall contain
  - (a) enough courses to fulfil the BSc major requirements as set out in section 2 of the BSc statute for at least one approved teaching subject and including one other approved teaching subject to at least 200 level;
  - (b) courses from the BTeach schedule as follows:

#### Part 1

CUST 131, TEAP 131, 132, 231, 232, 331

#### Part 2

Courses as specified for one of the following teaching specialisations:

- (i) Primary: CUST 132, 133, 134, 135, 231, 232, 233, 331, 332;
- (ii) Secondary: CUST 153; two of CUST 251-269; two of CUST 351-369; TEAP 253;
- (iii) Primary and Secondary: CUST 132, 133, 134, 135, 231, 232, 233, 331, 332; two of CUST 351-369; TEAP 253.

4. Where in the opinion of the relevant Head of School or Programme Director a candidate has achieved in another course of study a standard equivalent to that required in any compulsory course and cannot obtain corresponding credit under section 6 of this statute or the Credit Transfer Statute, the candidate shall be exempted from that course and shall substitute an approved course of at least the equivalent number of points.
5. Courses from the BTeach schedule are excepted from the Aegrotat Pass provisions in the Assessment Statute. In the event that a candidate is prevented from completing such a course by one of the circumstances specified in section 4.5 of that statute, the candidate will be granted an extension to complete the assessment.

### Cross-crediting

6. At the discretion of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science, a candidate completing a conjoint BSc/BTeach combined with another undergraduate degree may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points

required to complete both separately. In any such case, the overall course of study for the conjoint BSc/BTeach and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 2 and 3 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### **BTeach Schedule**

*Note: See the Course of Study Statutes for the Faculty of Education.*

## **BSc(Hons)**

### **Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Science with Honours**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the BSc(Hons) degree shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of this University or, at the discretion of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science, another university;
  - (ii) satisfied the prerequisites listed in section 3 for the subject to be presented; and
  - (iii) been accepted by the relevant Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean for a candidate who has
  - (i) completed at least 240 points towards a degree at this University and attained a very high standard in the courses numbered 200-399 required by section 2 of the BSc statute; or
  - (ii) completed all but 48 points of a Bachelor's degree at this University; or
  - (iii) in exceptional cases, produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Associate Dean of extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.
2. (a) If a candidate accepted under 1(b)(i) fails in the examination for BSc(Hons) but nevertheless reaches a sufficient standard for BSc, the candidate shall be deemed to have qualified for the BSc degree.
- (b) A candidate accepted under 1(b)(ii) shall not be awarded a BSc(Hons) until a Bachelor's degree is completed.
3. The subjects for the BSc(Hons) and their prerequisites are as follows:

#### **Cell and Molecular Bioscience**

BIOL 361, 362, 45 points from BIOL 334, 335, 339, 340, 341, 342

#### **Chemistry**

CHEM 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206; at least 72 points in 300-level CHEM courses including CHEM 305, 306 and any two of CHEM 301, 302, 303

#### **Computer Science**

60 points from COMP 301-399

**Conservation Biology**

60 points in approved courses from BIOL 300-399; STAT 193 or equivalent

**Ecology and Biodiversity**

60 points in approved courses from BIOL 300-399; STAT 193

**Electronic and Computer System Engineering**

60 points in approved 300-level courses in PHYS and COMP

**Geography**

48 points in approved courses from GEOG 300-399

**Geology**

84 points in approved courses from GEOL 300-399 including 24 points from GEOL 341-344

**Geomicrobiology**

BIOL 236, BIOL/BMSC 361, BMSC 301; 15 points from GEOL 341-343, 351-352, 370; 30 points from BIOL 334 (or BMSC 304), BIOL 340 (or BMSC 310), BTEC 301

**Geophysics**

60 points in approved courses from GEOL, MATH or PHYS 300-399

**Logic and Computation**

48 points in approved courses from COMP or MATH 300-399

**Marine Biology**

60 points in approved courses from BIOL 300-399; STAT 193

**Mathematics**

48 points in approved courses from MATH 300-399, not including MATH 371

**Molecular Microbiology**

BIOL 340 (or BMSC 310), BIOL/BMSC 361, BMSC 301, BTEC 201; 20 points from BIOL 236, 334 (or BMSC 304), BTEC 301

**Physical Geography**

GEOG 323; GEOG 318 or 319; a further 24 approved 300-level points from the BSc schedule

**Physics**

(a) PHYS 304, 305, 307, 309

(b) Either (i) one of PHYS 339, 340, 341 or, with the permission of the Head of the School of Chemical and Physical Sciences, (ii) one of MATH 301, 322

**Psychology**

At least 66 points from PSYC 201-299 and 72 points from PSYC 301-399

**Statistics and Operations Research**

At least 48 points from OPRE 351, 352, STAT 331, 333.

**General Requirements**

4. A candidate for this degree shall normally be enrolled for two trimesters, though with the permission of the relevant Head of School a part-time student may extend the period to four trimesters.

5. (a) The personal course of study of a candidate for the BSc(Hons) shall satisfy the requirements for the subject to be presented as set out in section 6, or with such substitutions as may be approved under section 7. The amount of practical work in a subject shall be as determined by the relevant Head of School.
- (b) A candidate enrolled in a course of study for MSc, who has complied with the statute for a Bachelor's degree with Honours, may be awarded the appropriate Bachelor's degree with Honours in place of the MSc degree. For the purposes of this statute, a candidate transferring to BSc(Hons) shall be deemed to have commenced a course of study for that degree when first enrolling in the MSc in that subject.

### Subject Requirements

6. The personal course of study of each candidate shall satisfy the requirements for one of the subjects as listed below or with such substitutions as may be approved under section 7. The permission of the relevant Head of School is required before enrolment in any course. The subjects and their requirements are as follows:

#### Cell and Molecular Bioscience

CBIO 489; 90 points in an approved combination from BIOL 430-440.

#### Chemistry

CHEM 480 and 489; 75 points in an approved combination from CHEM 401-441.

#### Computer Science

COMP 489; 90 points in an approved combination\* from COMP 401-488.

\* Up to 30 points may be replaced by approved 300-level courses.

#### Conservation Biology

CONB 489; BIOL 420; 60 points in an approved combination from BIOL 403, 404, 421-424. With permission of the Head of School, an approved course may be substituted for one of BIOL 403, 404, 421-424.

#### Ecology and Biodiversity

(a) EBIO 489, BIOL 403, 422;

(b) 30 points from BIOL 420, 423, 425, 426.

With permission of the Head of School, one of BIOL 404, 427, 428, 430, 440 may be substituted for one course from (b).

#### Electronic and Computer System Engineering

ECSE 425, 430, 489; 60 points in an approved combination from ECSE 420-440.

#### Geography

GEOG 489; 90 points in an approved combination from GEOG 401-488, PHYG 401-488.

#### Geology

GEOL 489; 90 points in an approved combination from (GEOL 401-488, PGEO 401).

**Geomicrobiology**

MBIO 434, 489; 30 points from BIOL 400-439, MBIO 440; 30 points from ENVI 502-506, GEOL 400-440.

**Geophysics**

GPHS 489; 90 points in an approved combination from GPHS 401-488, GEOL 407, 411, MATH 468, PHYG 404 and approved courses in the BSc(Hons) schedule.

**Logic and Computation**

120 points in an approved combination from COMP 401-489, MATH 401-489, PHIL 402, including at least 60 points from (COMP 425, 426, 432, MATH 409, 433-435, 439, PHIL 402); up to 30 points may be replaced by approved 300-level courses.

**Marine Biology**

(a) BMAR 489, BIOL 422, 423;

(b) 30 points from BIOL 403, 420, 421, 425, 426. With permission of the Head of School one of BIOL 404, 427, 428, 430 or 440 may be substituted for one course from (b).

**Mathematics**

120 points in an approved combination\* from MATH 401-489.

\* Up to 30 points may be replaced by approved 300-level MATH courses.

**Molecular Microbiology**

BIOL 430, MBIO 434, 489; 30 points from BIOL 400-429, 431-439, BMSC 401, MBIO 440.

**Physical Geography**

PHYG 489; 90 points in an approved combination from PHYG 401-488 or other approved courses; at least 30 points shall be from PHYG 401-488.

**Physics**

PHYS 490, 491; 90 points in an approved combination from PHYS 401-488.

**Psychology**

PSYC 489; 90 points in an approved combination from PSYC 401-488.

*Note: PSYC 451 and 452 are restricted to candidates accepted for the PGDipClinPsyc.*

**Statistics and Operations Research**

120 points in an approved combination from (OPRE 401-489, ORST 401-489, STAT 401-489, ECON 406-409, FINM 467, SOSC 403). Up to 30 points may be replaced by approved 300-level STAT, OPRE, COMP, FINM, MATH or QUAN courses, and at least 60 points shall be from 400-level OPRE, STAT or ORST courses.

**Substitution of Courses**

7. With the permission of the relevant Head of School, a candidate may replace up to 60 points worth of optional courses with substitute courses chosen from those prescribed for postgraduate Honours or Master's degrees. (See the general

provisions concerning the substitution of courses in Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.)

### Award of Honours

8. A candidate shall become eligible for the award of Honours in a subject by completing the requirements for the degree within two years of first enrolment for the degree in that subject. (See sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions covering the award of Honours.)

### Schedule to the BSc(Hons) Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
BIOL 403	Evolution	30	P BIOL 311 or 329 or permission of the Head of School
BIOL 404	Environment and Conservation Management	30	
BIOL 420	Conservation Ecology	30	P 300-level Ecology or permission of the Head of School
BIOL 421	Human Ecology	30	P 60 pts from approved courses
BIOL 422	Ecology	30	P as for BIOL 420
BIOL 423	Marine Biology	30	
BIOL 424	New Zealand Conservation Practice	30	P 300-level Ecology or permission of the Head of School
BIOL 425	Biodiversity	30	P BIOL 329 or permission of the Head of School
BIOL 426	Behavioural Ecology	30	P BIOL 328 or permission of the Head of School
BIOL 427	Special Topic	30	P 300-level ecology or permission of the Head of School
BIOL 428	Special Topic	30	P 300-level ecology or permission of the Head of School
BIOL 430	Genetics and Molecular Biology	30	P 45 pts from BIOL 334-342 or an approved combination of 300-level BMSC courses; X BIOL 401, BCHM 403, BMSC 430
BIOL 431	Cell Biology	30	P as for BIOL 430; X BIOL 406, BMSC 431
BIOL 432	Physiology and Pharmacology	30	P as for BIOL 430; X BIOL 407, BMSC 432, PHSI 405
BIOL 433	Human and Clinical Biochemistry	30	P as for BIOL 430; X BCHM 404, BMSC 433
BIOL 436	Special Topic	30	P as for BIOL 430
BIOL 437	Special Topic	30	P 45 pts from an approved combination of 300-level BMSC, BIOL or CHEM courses
BIOL 440	Directed Individual Study	30	P permission of the Head of School
BIOL 489	Research Project	30	
BMAR 489	Research Project	30	
CBIO 489	Research Project	30	
CHEM 421	Organic and Bio-organic Chemistry	15	P CHEM 301
CHEM 422	Inorganic Chemistry	15	P CHEM 302
CHEM 423	Physical Chemistry	15	P CHEM 303
CHEM 424	Advanced Aspects of Chemistry A	15	

**Schedule to the BSc(Hons) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
CHEM 425	Advanced Aspects of Chemistry B	15	
CHEM 426	Special Topic	15	
CHEM 427	Special Topic	15	
CHEM 440	Directed Individual Study	30	P permission of the Head of School
CHEM 441	Directed Individual Study	15	P permission of the Head of School
CHEM 480	Research Preparation	30	C CHEM 489; X CHEM 580
CHEM 489	Research Project	30	P CHEM 305 or 306
COMP 413	Distributed Systems	15	P two of COMP 305, 306, 310; X ECSE 431
COMP 414	Advanced Networking	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 306; X ECSE 432
COMP 415	Mobile Systems	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 306 or 310
COMP 417	Internet Technology	15	P COMP 413
COMP 418	Security	15	P COMP 305, 306
COMP 421	Machine Learning	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 307
COMP 422	Data Mining, Neural Networks and Genetic Programming	15	P as for COMP 421
COMP 423	Intelligent Agents	15	P as for COMP 421
COMP 425	Computational Logic	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399; MATH 309 or PHIL 234/334 (or 211) recommended; X ECSE 433
COMP 426	Formal Software Development	15	P COMP 202, MATH 214, 60 pts from COMP 301-399; MATH 309 or PHIL 234/334 (or 211) recommended
COMP 431	Compiler Design	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 304
COMP 432	Functional Programming	15	P as for COMP 431
COMP 442	Issues in Databases and Information Systems	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 302
COMP 443	Distributed Object Databases	15	P as for COMP 442
COMP 444	Data Mining and Data Warehousing	15	P COMP 302, 307
COMP 453	Human Computer Interaction	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 311; X ECSE 434
COMP 462	Object Oriented Paradigms	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 301 or 304
COMP 463	Advanced Software Engineering	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 301
COMP 466	Advanced Software Requirements and Design	15	P as for COMP 463
COMP 467	Software Construction, Evolution and Quality	15	P as for COMP 463
COMP 471	Special Topic	15	
COMP 472	Special Topic	15	
COMP 473	Special Topic	15	
COMP 489	Research Project	30	
CONB 489	Research Project	30	
EBIO 489	Research Project	30	

**Schedule to the BSc(Hons) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ECON 406	Economic Dynamics A	15	P 48 approved 300-level ECON/QUAN/OPRE pts
ECON 407	Economic Dynamics B	15	P ECON 406 or an approved background in Economics and Mathematics
ECON 408	Advanced Econometric Theory	15	P QUAN 301 or equivalent
ECON 409	Advanced Applied Econometrics	15	P ECON 408
FINM 467	Actuarial Statistics	15	P STAT 331 or 333
ECSE 420	Continuous-Time Signal Processing	15	P MATH 206; X TECH 420, PHYS 420
ECSE 421	Discrete-Time Signal Processing	15	P MATH 206; X TECH 421, PHYS 421
ECSE 422	Dynamic Systems and Controls	15	P MATH 206; X TECH 422, PHYS 422
ECSE 423	Electronic Design	15	P PHYS 340, 341; X TECH 423, PHYS 423
ECSE 425	Advanced Mechatronic Engineering 1: Hardware and Control	15	P PHYS 340
ECSE 426	Special Topic	15	
ECSE 427	Special Topic	15	
ECSE 430	Advanced Mechatronic Engineering 2: Intelligence and Design	15	PHYS 340
ECSE 431	Distributed Systems Design	15	P two of COMP 305, 306, 310; X COMP 413
ECSE 432	Network Engineering	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 306; X COMP 414
ECSE 433	Design of Mobile Systems	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 306 or 310; X COMP 415
ECSE 434	Design of User Interfaces	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 311; X COMP 453
ECSE 440	Directed Individual Study	30	P permission of the Head of School
ECSE 489	Research Project	30	
GEOG 404	Geography of Development Studies	30	
GEOG 406	Geography of Place, Power and Identity	30	
GEOG 409	Contemporary Environmental Resource Management	30	X ENVI 502
GEOG 410	Urban Studies	30	
GEOG 411	Special Topic	30	
GEOG 412	Economic and Political Change in Europe	30	
GEOG 414	Environment and Business	30	
GEOG 440	Directed Individual Study	30	P permission of the Head of School
GEOG 489	Research Project	30	X GEOG 408
GEOLOG 403	Stratigraphy and Palaeontology	15	P GEOL 332
GEOLOG 404	Special Topic	15	P appropriate 300-level GEOL courses
GEOLOG 406	Petroleum Geology	15	P GEOL 332
GEOLOG 407	Tectonics	15	P GEOL 331
GEOLOG 408	Special Topic	15	
GEOLOG 409	Special Topic	15	P 30 pts from GEOL 300-399
GEOLOG 411	Exploration Geophysics	15	P GEOL 311

**Schedule to the BSc(Hons) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
GEOL 412	Igneous Petrology	15	P GEOL 363 or 333; X GEOL 402
GEOL 413	Metamorphic Petrology	15	P GEOL 363 or 333; X GEOL 402
GEOL 440	Directed Individual Study	30	P permission of the Head of School
GEOL 489	Project	30	
GPHS 402	Special Topic	30	
GPHS 420	Introduction to Dynamical Meteorology	15	P MATH 323
GPHS 421	Mid-latitude Weather Systems	15	
GPHS 422	Radiation and Thermodynamics for Meteorology	15	
GPHS 423	Cloud Physics and Boundary Layer Meteorology	15	
GPHS 424	Satellite Meteorology	15	
GPHS 425	Numerical Weather Prediction	15	
GPHS 430	Special Topic	15	
GPHS 431	Special Topic	15	
GPHS 441	Origin and Evolution of the Solid Earth	15	X GPHS 405, PHYS 406, 441
GPHS 445	Introduction to Seismology	15	P MATH 323; X GPHS 409
GPHS 446	Advanced Seismology	15	P MATH 323; X GPHS 409
GPHS 447	Introduction to Geomagnetism	15	X GPHS 408, 442, PHYS 406, 442, 447
GPHS 448	Advanced Topics in Geomagnetism	15	X GPHS 408, 443, 444
GPHS 489	Project	30	
MATH 409	Mathematical Logic	15	X MATH 309
MATH 431	Combinatorics 1	15	
MATH 432	Combinatorics 2	15	
MATH 433	Model Theory	15	
MATH 434	Set Theory	15	
MATH 435	Computability and Complexity	15	
MATH 436	Algebra 1	15	
MATH 437	Algebra 2	15	
MATH 439	Category Theory	15	
MATH 441	Analysis 1	15	
MATH 442	Analysis 2	15	
MATH 444	Nonstandard Analysis	15	
MATH 450	Geometry 1	15	
MATH 451	Geometry 2	15	
MATH 452	Topology 1	15	
MATH 453	Topology 2	15	
MATH 461	Differential Equations	15	
MATH 462	Chaotic Dynamics	15	
MATH 463	Wavelets	15	
MATH 464	Differential Geometry	15	P MATH 301 or equivalent mathematical background
MATH 465	General Relativity and Cosmology	15	P MATH 464
MATH 468	Fluid Mechanics	15	
MATH 480	Special Topic	30	

## Schedule to the BSc(Hons) Statute (contd)

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
MATH 481	Special Topic	30	
MATH 482	Category Theory	15	
MATH 483	Special Topic	15	
MATH 488	Project	15	X MATH 489
MATH 489	Project	30	X MATH 488
MBIO 434	Microbiology	30	
MBIO 440	Directed Individual Study in Microbiology	30	P permission of the Head of School; X BIOL 440
MBIO 489	Research Project	30	
OPRE 454	Operations Research Applications	15	P OPRE 352 or COMP 312 (or COMP 349 in 1998-2003)
OPRE 455	Network Applications in OR	15	P OPRE 351
OPRE 456	Optimisation in OR	15	P OPRE 351
OPRE 457	Stochastic Models	15	P OPRE 352 or COMP 312 (or COMP 349 in 1998-2003)
OPRE 481	Special Topic 1	15	
OPRE 482	Special Topic 2	15	
ORST 482	Special Topic 1	15	
ORST 483	Special Topic 2	15	
ORST 484	Special Topic	15	
ORST 485	Special Topic	15	
ORST 487	Project 1	15	
ORST 488	Project 2	15	
ORST 489	Project	30	
PGEO 401	Basin Analysis	15	P GEOL 403, 407
PHIL 402	Logic	30	
PHYG 401	Geomorphology and its Application	30	
PHYG 403	Special Topic	30	
PHYG 404	Hydrology and Water Resources	30	
PHYG 412	Natural Hazards	30	
PHYG 440	Directed Individual Study	30	P permission of the Head of School
PHYG 489	Research Project	30	
PHYS 411	Quantum Mechanics	15	X PHYS 403, 322
PHYS 412	Theoretical Physics	15	X PHYS 403
PHYS 413	Condensed Matter Physics A	15	X PHYS 404
PHYS 414	Condensed Matter Physics B	15	X PHYS 404
PHYS 415	Electromagnetism	15	X PHYS 410
PHYS 416	Relativity and Electrodynamics	15	X PHYS 410
PHYS 417	Astrophysics	15	
PHYS 418	Special Topic	15	
PHYS 420	Signal Processing A	15	X TECH 420; ECSE 420
PHYS 421	Signal Processing B	15	X TECH 421; ECSE 421
PHYS 422	Instrumentation	15	X TECH 422; ECSE 422
PHYS 423	Electronics	15	X TECH 423; ECSE 423
PHYS 424	Approved PHYS 300-level course not previously taken	15	

**Schedule to the BSc(Hons) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
PHYS 425	Approved PHYS 300-level course not previously taken	15	
PHYS 441	Origin and Evolution of the Solid Earth	15	X PHYS 406, GPHS 405, 441
PHYS 447	Introduction to Geomagnetism	15	X PHYS 442, GPHS 408, 442, 447
PHYS 490	Research Project A	15	X PHYS 489
PHYS 491	Research Project B	15	X PHYS 489
PSYC 401	Theory and History of Psychology	15	
PSYC 402	Social Psychology	15	
PSYC 404	Abnormal Psychology:	15	
PSYC 409	Fundamentals of Behaviour Analysis	15	
PSYC 411	Advanced Topics in Behaviour Analysis	15	P PSYC 332 or 409
PSYC 412	The Psychology of Criminal Conduct 1: Basic Concepts in Criminal Justice and Crime	15	
PSYC 413	Cognitive Psychology	15	
PSYC 415	Early Cognitive Development	15	
PSYC 417	Cognitive Neuropsychology 1: Perception, Attention and Memory	15	
PSYC 418	Language and Communication	15	
PSYC 421	False Memories	15	P PSYC 322
PSYC 422	Drugs, Brain and Behaviour	15	P PSYC 233
PSYC 423	Culture and Social Behaviour	15	
PSYC 424	Drug Addiction	15	P PSYC 233
PSYC 425	Personality and Motivation	15	
PSYC 426	Social Psychology and Well-being	15	
PSYC 427	Discursive Social Psychology	15	
PSYC 428	Feminist Psychology	15	
PSYC 429	Psychology of Superstition	15	
PSYC 430	Political Psychology	15	
PSYC 431	Culture and Human Development	15	
PSYC 432	Applied Cross-cultural Psychology	15	P PSYC 338
PSYC 433	Current Issues in Cross-cultural Psychology	15	
PSYC 434	Conducting Research Across Cultures	15	
PSYC 435	Traumatic Memories and Repression	15	P PSYC 322
PSYC 436	Autobiographical Memory	15	P PSYC 322
PSYC 437	Memory Errors	15	
PSYC 438	Theories of Violent Offending	15	
PSYC 439	Sexual Offending: Theories and Research	15	
PSYC 440	Directed Study	15	
PSYC 441	Family Psychology	15	P PSYC 337
PSYC 442	The Psychology of Criminal Conduct 2: Areas of Application	15	P PSYC 412

**Schedule to the BSc(Hons) Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
PSYC 443	Autism	15	
PSYC 444	Behavioural Neuroscience	15	
PSYC 445	Cognitive Neuroscience	15	P PSYC 233, 327, 444
PSYC 446	Cognitive Neuropsychology 2: Language and Higher Control	15	P PSYC 417
PSYC 447	Special Topic	15	
PSYC 448	Special Topic	15	
PSYC 449	Special Topic	15	
PSYC 451	Clinical Assessment of Adults	30	P PSYC 231, 233, 234, 321, 327, 332; X PSYC 450
PSYC 452	Child and Family Clinical Assessment	30	P PSYC 231, 233, 321, 327, 332; X PSYC 450
PSYC 489	Research Project	30	
SCIE 401	Special Topic	15	P permission of relevant Head of School
SCIE 402	Special Topic	30	P as for SCIE 401
SOSC 403	Demography	30	
STAT 434	Statistical Inference	15	P STAT 331; STAT 333 recommended
STAT 435	Time Series	15	P STAT 331 or 333
STAT 436	Forecasting	15	P 48 approved 300-level OPRE, QUAN or STAT pts
STAT 437	Probability	15	P STAT 333
STAT 438	Applied Statistics	15	P STAT 331
STAT 439	Sample Surveys	15	P STAT 193 (or equivalent); 44 further approved 200/300-level pts; X STAT 392
STAT 441	Stochastic Processes	15	P STAT 331 or 333
STAT 481	Special Topic	15	
STAT 482	Special Topic	15	

**MSc****Statute for the Degree of Master of Science**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MSc degree shall have
  - (i) completed a degree or relevant graduate or postgraduate diploma of this University or, at the discretion of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science, another university;
  - (ii) satisfied the prerequisites listed in section 2 for the subject to be presented, or been granted exemption from those prerequisites by the relevant Head of School; and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.

- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.
2. The subjects of examination and their prerequisites are as follows:
- Cell and Molecular Bioscience**  
BIOL 361 and 362; either 45 points from BIOL 334, 335, 339, 340, 341, 342 or an approved combination of 300-level BMSC courses
- Chemistry**  
138 points in CHEM or other approved courses numbered 200-399, including at least 60 points at 300 level
- Computer Science**  
60 points from COMP 301-399
- Conservation Biology**  
60 points in approved courses from BIOL 300-399; STAT 193 or equivalent
- Cross-cultural Psychology**  
At least 66 points from PSYC 201-299 and 72 points from PSYC 301-399, including PSYC 325 Advanced Research Methods or an equivalent
- Ecological Restoration**  
60 points in approved courses from BIOL 300-399; STAT 193 or equivalent
- Ecology and Biodiversity**  
60 points in approved courses from BIOL 300-399; STAT 193
- Electronic and Computer System Engineering**  
60 points in approved 300-level courses in PHYS and COMP
- Geography**  
48 points in approved courses from GEOG 300-399
- Geology**  
84 points in approved courses from GEOL 300-399 including 24 points from GEOL 341-344
- Geomicrobiology**  
BIOL 236, BIOL/BMSC 361, BMSC 301; 15 points from GEOL 341-343, 351-352, 370; 30 points from BIOL 334 (or BMSC 304), BIOL 340 (or BMSC 310), BTEC 301
- Geophysics**  
48 points in approved 300-level GEOL, PHYS or MATH courses
- Logic and Computation**  
48 points in approved 300-level MATH or COMP courses
- Marine Biology**  
60 points in approved courses from BIOL 300-399; STAT 193
- Mathematics**  
48 points in approved courses from MATH 300-399, excluding MATH 371

**Mathematics Education**

Completion of BSc(Hons) or BA(Hons) in Mathematics or Statistics and Operations Research

**Molecular Microbiology**

BIOL 340 (or BMSC 310), BIOL/BMSC 361, BMSC 301, BTEC 201; 20 points from BIOL 236, 334 (or BMSC 304), BTEC 301

**Petroleum Geoscience\***

84 points in approved courses from GEOL 301-399 including 24 points from GEOL 341-344

\* Subject to approval in November 2005

**Physical Geography**

GEOG 318 or 319; GEOG 323; a further 24 approved 300-level points from the BSc Schedule

**Physics**

(a) PHYS 304, 305, 307, 309;

(b) one of PHYS 339, 340, 341, or, with the permission of the Head of School, MATH 301 or 322

**Psychology**

At least 66 points from PSYC 201-299 and 72 points from PSYC 301-399

**Science Education**

A BSc(Hons) degree

**Statistics and Operations Research**

At least 48 points from OPRE 351, 352, STAT 331, 333

**Stochastic Processes in Finance and Insurance**

48 points from MATH 312, STAT 331, 333 and a further 24 points in approved 300-level MATH, STAT, OPRE, FINM, ECON or MOFI courses.

**General Requirements**

3. (a) Except as provided in (b) and (c) and in section 6, the course of study for the MSc shall consist of
  - Part 1:** Approved courses worth at least 120 points from the BSc(Hons) or other schedules
  - Part 2:** A Master's thesis (see Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute), or an approved combination of courses, thesis and research project(s).

Parts 1 and 2 shall be as prescribed in section 5 with both parts being in the same subject, and shall include such practical work as may be determined by the relevant Head of School. Each part shall contribute at least 40% of the total marks.
- (b) A candidate who has completed a degree with honours or other graduate study to an appropriate level may be admitted directly to Part 2 and need not then offer Part 1.

- (c) With the permission of the relevant Head of School, a candidate may commence Part 2 before completing Part 1.
4. (a) A full-time candidate whose course of study includes both parts shall normally be enrolled for at least four trimesters and shall complete the degree within two and a half years of first enrolling in it. For a part-time candidate, the period may be extended pro rata to a maximum of five years.
- (b) A full-time candidate shall normally be enrolled in Part 2 for at least two trimesters and shall complete it within one and a half years of first enrolling in it. For a part-time candidate, the latter period may be extended pro rata to a maximum of three years.
- (c) The Associate Dean may extend the maximum periods in (a) or (b) in special cases.

### Subject Requirements

5. The requirements for each MSc subject are as follows:

#### Cell and Molecular Bioscience

Part 1: CBIO 580; 90 points in approved courses from BIOL 430-440

Part 2: CBIO 591

#### Chemistry

Part 1: CHEM 580; 90 points in approved courses from CHEM 401-488

Part 2: CHEM 591

#### Computer Science

Part 1: 120 points in approved courses from COMP 401-489; up to 30 points may be replaced by approved 300-level courses

Part 2: COMP 591

#### Conservation Biology

Part 1: CONB 580; BIOL 420; 60 points in approved courses from BIOL 403, 404, 421-424

Part 2: CONB 591

#### Cross-cultural Psychology

Part 1: PSYC 433, PSYC 434, CPSY 580; at least 30 points from PSYC 423, PSYC 431, PSYC 432; and 30 further points from PSYC 401-448 or other approved courses. With permission of the Head of School up to 60 points may be replaced by approved courses at the University of Hawaii or other approved institutions.

Part 2: CPSY 591

#### Ecological Restoration

Part 1: ERES 525, 526 [practicum], 580; 30 points in an approved combination from BIOL 403, 404, 421-440, ENVI 502-506, or other courses approved by the Head of School

Part 2: ERES 591

#### Ecology and Biodiversity

Part 1: EBIO 580; 90 points in approved courses from BIOL 403, 404, 420-423, 425-428, 430, 440

Part 2: EBIO 591

**Electronic and Computer System Engineering**

Part 1: ECSE 425, 430, 580; 60 further points in an approved combination from ECSE 420-440

Part 2: ECSE 591

**Geography**

Part 1: GEOG 580; 90 points in approved courses from GEOG 401-488, PHYG 401-488

Part 2: GEOG 591

**Geology**

Part 1: GEOL 580; 90 points in approved courses from (GEOL 401-488, PGEO 401)

Part 2: GEOL 591

**Geomicrobiology**

Part 1: MBIO 434, 580; 30 points from BIOL 400-439, MBIO 440; 30 points from ENVI 502-506, GEOL 400-440

Part 2: MBIO 591

**Geophysics**

Part 1: GPHS 580; 90 points in approved courses from (GPHS 401-488, GEOL 407, 411, MATH 468, PGEO 401, PHYG 404)

Part 2: GPHS 591

**Logic and Computation**

Part 1: 120 points in approved courses from (COMP 401-489, MATH 401-489, PHIL 402), including at least 60 points from (COMP 425, 426, 432, MATH 409, 433-435, PHIL 402); up to 30 points may be replaced by approved 300-level courses

Part 2: LOCO 591

**Marine Biology**

Part 1: BMAR 580; 90 points in approved courses from BIOL 403, 404, 420-423, 425-428, 430, 440

Part 2: BMAR 591

**Mathematics**

Part 1: 120 points in approved courses from MATH 401-489; up to 30 points may be replaced by approved 300-level MATH courses

Part 2: Either (a) MATH 591 with the possible addition of MATH 548 and/or 549, or (b) MATH 592

**Mathematics Education**

Part 2: MXED 591

**Molecular Microbiology**

Part 1: BIOL 430, MBIO 434, 580; 30 points from BIOL 400-429, 431-439, BMSC 401, MBIO 440

Part 2: MBIO 591

**Petroleum Geoscience\***

\* *Subject to approval*

Part 1: PGEO 401, 511, 580; GEOL 403, 406, 407, 411

Part 2: PGEO 591

**Physical Geography**

Part 1: PHYG 580; 30 points from PHYG 401-488; a further 60 points from PHYG 401-488 or other approved courses

Part 2: PHYG 591

**Physics**

Part 1: PHYS 490, 491; 90 points in approved courses from PHYS 401-488

Part 2: PHYS 591

**Psychology**

Part 1: PSYC 489; 90 points in approved courses from PSYC 401-488

Part 2: PSYC 591

**Science Education**

Part 2: SCED 591

**Statistics and Operations Research**

Part 1: At least 60 points from 400-level OPRE, STAT or ORST courses; a further 60 points in approved courses from (OPRE 401-489, STAT 401-489, ECON 406-409, 508-509, FINM 467, SOSC 403), of which up to 30 points may be replaced by approved 300-level STAT, OPRE, COMP, FINM, MATH or QUAN courses.

Part 2: (a) Thesis (ORST 591); or

(b) Thesis (ORST 592) with the addition of 30 points from approved courses\*; or

(c) Thesis (ORST 595) with the addition of 60 points from approved courses\*; or

(d) Research Project (ORST 588) and 90 points from approved courses\*

\*ORST 501-506, all 400-level OPRE, ORST or STAT courses, ECON 406-409, 508, 509, FINM 467, SOSC 403

**Stochastic Processes in Finance and Insurance**

Part 1: 120 points in an approved combination from MATH 441, 442, 461-463, OPRE 451-459, ORST 482-485, STAT 431-459, ECON 406-409, FINM 465-472, MOFI 401, 402, 405-407, SOSC 403, including at least 60 points from MATH 441, 442, OPRE 457, STAT 435, 437, 441, FINM 467. Up to 30 points may be replaced by approved 300-level courses.

Part 2: SPFI 591.

**Substitution of Courses**

6. A candidate may, with the permission of the relevant Head of School, replace optional courses with substitute courses chosen from those offered for postgraduate Honours or Master's degrees. (See Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses.)

**Award of Honours, Distinction or Merit**

7. (a) The MSc may be awarded with Honours as described in sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute. To be eligible, a candidate shall

complete Parts 1 and 2 of the degree within two and a half years of first enrolling for the degree in that subject. For part-time students the period may be extended pro rata to a maximum of five years.

- (b) A candidate who is not eligible for Honours may be awarded the MSc with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute. To be eligible, a candidate shall complete all work for Part 2 within one year and six months from the date of first enrolment in Part 2. For part-time students the period may be extended pro rata to a maximum of three years.

### Schedule to the MSc Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions
<b>Part 1</b>			
BIOL 580	Research Preparation	30	
BMAR 580	Research Preparation	30	
CBIO 580	Research Preparation	30	
CHEM 580	Research Preparation	30	X CHEM 480
COMP 489	Research Project	30	
CONB 580	Research Preparation	30	
CPSY 580	Research Preparation	30	
EBIO 580	Research Preparation	30	
ECSE 580	Research Preparation	30	
ERES 525	Ecological Restoration	30	
ERES 526	Ecological Restoration Practicum	30	
ERES 580	Research Preparation	30	
GEOG 580	Research Preparation	30	
GEO 580	Research Preparation	30	
GPHS 580	Research Preparation	30	
MBIO 580	Research Preparation	30	
ORST 489	Project	30	
PGEO 511	Technical Petroleum Geoscience	15	
PGEO 580	Research Preparation	30	
PHYG 580	Research Preparation	30	
PHYS 490	Research Project A	15	
PHYS 491	Research Project B	15	
PSYC 489	Project	30	X PSYC 410
<b>Part 2</b>			
BMAR 591	Thesis in Marine Biology	120	
CBIO 591	Thesis in Cell & Molecular Bioscience	120	
CHEM 591	Thesis in Chemistry	120	
COMP 591	Thesis in Computer Science	120	
CONB 591	Thesis in Conservation Biology	120	
CPSY 591	Thesis in Cross-cultural Psychology	120	
EBIO 591	Thesis in Ecology & Biodiversity	120	
ECSE 591	Thesis in Electronic and Computer System Engineering	120	
ERES 591	Thesis in Ecological Restoration	120	

**Schedule to the MSc Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Restrictions
GEOG 591	Thesis in Geography	120	
GEOG 591	Thesis in Geology	120	
GPHS 591	Thesis in Geophysics	90/120	
LOCO 591	Thesis in Logic & Computation	120	
MATH 548	Special Topic in Mathematics	15	
MATH 549	Special Topic in Mathematics	15	
MATH 591	Thesis in Mathematics	90/105/120	
MATH 592	Advanced Course of Study in Mathematics	120	
MXED 591	Thesis in Mathematics Education	120	
MATH 592	Advanced Course of Study in Mathematics	120	
MBIO 591	Thesis in Microbiology	120	
ORST 501	Directed Individual Study	15	
ORST 502	Directed Individual Study	15	
ORST 503	Special Topic	15	
ORST 504	Special Topic	15	
ORST 505	Directed Individual Study	30	
ORST 506	Special Topic	30	
ORST 588	Research Project	30	
ORST 592	Thesis	90	
ORST 595	Thesis	60	
ORST 591	Thesis	120	
PGEO 591	Thesis in Petroleum Geoscience	120	
PHYG 591	Thesis in Physical Geography	120	
PHYS 591	Thesis in Physics	120	
PSYC 591	Thesis in Psychology	120	
SCED 591	Thesis in Science Education	120	
SPFI 591	Thesis in Stochastic Processes in Finance and Insurance	120	

**GDipSc****Statute for the Graduate Diploma in Science**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipSc shall have
  - (i) completed a BSc degree; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the relevant Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Head of School for a candidate who has completed another Bachelor's degree.

**General Requirements**

2. (a) The course of study for the diploma shall be a coherent programme approved by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science on the

recommendation of the relevant Head of School. It shall include at least 116 points from courses offered for the BSc, BSc (Hons) or MSc degrees and numbered 200-579 or 889, of which at least 72 points shall be at 300 level or above. At the discretion of the Associate Dean, up to 48 points may be replaced by approved courses from other programmes offered at this University.

- (b) At the discretion of the Associate Dean, courses passed for a Certificate of Proficiency may be credited to the diploma.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the diploma within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend the maximum period in special cases.

*Note: The actual time taken to complete the diploma will depend on the need to pass prerequisites and the timetabling of courses. No guarantee is given that every specialisation can be completed within two trimesters.*

### Specialisations

4. The diploma will be endorsed with at most one specialisation if the candidate's personal course of study includes courses as listed below:

#### **Cell and Molecular Bioscience**

CBIO 889; one approved course from BIOL 400-488

#### **Chemistry**

CHEM 889; one approved course from CHEM 400-488

#### **Computer Science**

COMP 889, two approved courses from COMP 400-488

#### **Conservation Biology**

CONB 889; one approved course from BIOL 400-488

#### **Ecology and Biodiversity**

EBIO 889; one approved course from BIOL 400-488

#### **Electronics**

PHYS 889; two courses from PHYS 420-423

#### **Geography**

GEOG 889; one approved course from GEOG 400-488

#### **Geology**

GEOL 889; two approved courses from GEOL 400-488

#### **Geophysics**

GPHS 889; two approved courses numbered 400-488

#### **Hydrology**

ESCI 889; PHYG 404

#### **Logic and Computation**

LOCO 889; 30 points from COMP, MATH or PHIL 400-488

#### **Marine Biology**

BMAR 889; one approved course from ECOL or BIOL 400-488

**Mathematics**

MATH 889; two approved courses from MATH 400-488

**Mathematics of Finance and Insurance**

48 points in approved courses from MATH, OPRE, ORST, STAT 300-489 and at least 30 points from MOFI 201, 301, 305, 401, 402, 405-407, QUAN 304, 371, ECON 406-409, FINM 465-472

**Modelling with Differential Equations**

MATH 461, 462, 889

**Petroleum Geology and Geochemistry**

GEOL 406, 889

**Physical Geography**

ESCI 889; one approved course from PHYG 400-488

**Physics**

PHYS 889; two approved courses from PHYS 400-488

**Psychology**

PSYC 889; an approved course from PSYC 400-488

**Statistics and Operations Research**

ORST 889; 30 points from ECON, FINM, OPRE, ORST, STAT 400-488, SOSC 403

**Volcanology**

ESCI 889; two approved courses from GEOL 400-488.

5. A candidate who has passed for some other qualification one or more of the courses required for a particular specialisation under section 4 will be given the appropriate exemptions and allowed to substitute an approved course or courses if necessary to meet the points requirements of section 2(a).

**Schedule to the GDipSc Statute**

Course	Title	Pts
BIOL 889	Project	30
BMAR 889	Project	30
BMSC 889	Project	30
CBIO 889	Project	30
CHEM 889	Project	30
COMP 889	Project	30
CONB 889	Project	30
EBIO 889	Project	30
ESCI 889	Project	30
GEOG 889	Project	30
GEOL 889	Project	30
GPHS 889	Project	30
LOCO 889	Project	30
MATH 889	Project	30
ORST 889	Project	30
PHYS 889	Project	30
PSYC 889	Project	30

## BBmedSc

### Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Biomedical Science

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### General Requirements

1. (a) The personal course of study of a candidate for the BBmedSc degree shall, except as provided in section 3 below or the Credit Transfer Statute, consist of courses from the BBmedSc schedule or the schedules to other first degrees of this University having a total value of at least 360 points, of which at least 180 shall be for courses numbered 200-399.
- (b) The personal course of study of every candidate shall include
  - Part 1**
  - (i) BIOL 111, BMSC 114, 117, CHEM 103, 104, PSYC 122, and either STAT 193 or MATH 113;
  - (ii) BMSC 210, 211, 213, 261.

*Note: A candidate who has achieved excellence in four NCEA Level 3 external standards or scholarship level Chemistry may substitute another course for CHEM 103.*

#### **Part 2**

The courses listed for one of the specialisations in section 2.

#### Specialisations

2. The course of study for each candidate shall satisfy the requirements for at least one specialisation as listed below:

##### **Human Genetics**

- (a) BMSC 116, 202, 209, 212, 262, 309, 310, 312, 353, 361
- (b) at least 15 further points from 300-level BMSC courses

##### **Molecular Pathology**

BMSC 116, 202, 212, 262, 301, 304, 305, 310, 323, 361

##### **Molecular Pharmacology and Medicinal Chemistry**

BIOL 362; BMSC 209, 305, 354; CHEM 201, 204, 205, 301, 305.

#### Cross-crediting

3. At the discretion of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science,
  - (a) a candidate completing a BBmedSc degree combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;
  - (b) a candidate completing a BBmedSc degree combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the BBmedSc and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 1 and 2 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

---

**Schedule to the BBmedSc Statute**


---

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
BIOL 362	Laboratory Techniques for the Molecular Biosciences 4	18	P BIOL/BMSC 262 or (CHEM 205 and BIOL 239/BMSC 209); X BIOL 303, 304, 305, 309, 310, 311
BMSC 114	Introduction to Human Biology	18	X BIOL 114
BMSC 116	Human Reproduction, Evolution and Sexuality	15	X BIOL 116
BMSC 117	The Biology of Disease	15	
BMSC 202	Introduction to Pathology	11	P BIOL 111, BMSC 114, 117
BMSC 209	Proteins and Enzymes	18	P CHEM 103 or 104; X BIOL 209, 239
BMSC 210	Metabolism	18	P BIOL 111; CHEM 103 or 104; X BIOL 210, 240
BMSC 211	Heredity and Gene Expression	18	P BIOL 111; X BIOL 211, 241
BMSC 212	Cell and Developmental Biology	18	P BIOL 111, BMSC 114; X BIOL 212, 252
BMSC 213	Physiology and Pharmacology	18	P BIOL 111, BMSC 114; CHEM 103 or 104; X BIOL 213, 243
BMSC 261	Biomedical Laboratory Techniques 1	12	P BIOL 111; CHEM 103 or 104; X BIOL 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 261
BMSC 262	Biomedical Laboratory Techniques 2	12	P BIOL 111; CHEM 103 or 104; X BIOL 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 262
BMSC 301	Microbiology	15	P BMSC 117, 210
BMSC 304	Cell and Immunobiology	9	P BMSC 212 or equivalent background; X BIOL 304, 334
BMSC 305	Advanced Physiology	18	P BMSC 213; X BIOL 305, 335
BMSC 309	Cellular Regulation	18	P BMSC 209, 210; X BIOL 309, 339
BMSC 310	Genes and Genomes	18	P BMSC 211; X BIOL 310, 340, BCHM 313
BMSC 312	Genetics	9	P BMSC 211; X BIOL 311, 341
BMSC 323	Systems Pathology	15	P BMSC 202, 305
BMSC 353	Human Molecular Genetics	9	P BMSC 312; C BMSC 310; X BIOL 311, 342
BMSC 354	Pharmacology	18	P at least 25 pts from BIOL 239, 240, 243, BMSC 209, 210, 213, CHEM 204, 205
BMSC 361	Advanced Biomedical Laboratory Techniques	18	P BMSC 261, 262; X BIOL 303, 304, 305, 309, 310, 311, 361

---

**BBmedSc(Hons)**
**Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Biomedical Science with Honours**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the BBmedSc(Hons) degree shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of this University or, at the discretion of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science, another university;

- (ii) obtained at least 180 points from courses numbered 200-399 in the BBmedSc schedule;
  - (iii) satisfied the requirements of at least one specialisation as listed in section 2 of the BBmedSc statute or equivalent; and
  - (iv) been accepted by the Head of the School of Biological Sciences, subject to appeal to the Associate Dean, as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean for a candidate who has
- (i) completed all but 48 points of a Bachelor's degree at this University; or
  - (ii) in exceptional cases, produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Associate Dean of extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.
2. A candidate accepted under section 1(b)(i) shall not be awarded a BBmedSc(Hons) until the Bachelor's degree has been completed.

### General Requirements

3. A candidate for this degree shall normally be enrolled for two trimesters, though with the permission of the Head of School a part-time student may extend the period to four trimesters. Further extensions may be granted in special cases by the Associate Dean.
4. (a) The personal course of study of a candidate for the BBmedSc(Hons) shall include the following, or such substitutions as may be approved under section 5:  
BMSC 402, 489; two courses from BMSC 430-433.  
The amount of practical work shall be as determined by the Head of School.
- (b) A candidate enrolled in a course of study for MBmedSc, who has complied with the statute for the BBmedSc(Hons), may be awarded a BBmedSc(Hons) degree in place of the Master's degree. For the purposes of this statute a candidate transferring to BBmedSc(Hons) shall be deemed to have commenced a course of study for that degree when first enrolling in the MBmedSc in that subject.

### Substitution of Courses

5. With the permission of the Head of School, a candidate may replace up to two optional courses with substitute courses chosen from those prescribed for BSc(Hons) or MSc, or for equivalent qualifications from an approved tertiary institution. (See the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses in Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.)

### Award of Honours

6. A candidate shall become eligible for the award of Honours by completing the requirements for the degree within two years of first enrolment for the degree. (See Sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute for the general provisions covering the award of Honours.)

### Schedule to the BBmedSc(Hons) Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
BMSC 401	Advanced Topics in Biomedical Science	30	P 45 pts from an approved combination of 300-level BMSC, BIOL, or CHEM courses
BMSC 402	Special Topic	30	P as for BMSC 401
BMSC 430	Genetics and Molecular Biology	30	P as for BMSC 401; X BCHM 403, BIOL 401, 430
BMSC 431	Cell Biology	30	P as for BMSC 401; X BIOL 406, 431
BMSC 432	Physiology and Pharmacology	30	P as for BMSC 401; X BIOL 407, 432, PHSI 405
BMSC 433	Human and Clinical Biochemistry	30	P as for BMSC 401; X BCHM 404, BIOL 433
BMSC 440	Directed Individual Study	30	P permission of the Head of School
BMSC 489	Biomedical Science Research Project	30	P BMSC 361 or CHEM 305

## MBmedSc

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Biomedical Science

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MBmedSc degree shall have
  - (i) completed a degree or relevant graduate or postgraduate diploma of this University or, at the discretion of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science, another university;
  - (ii) met the Part 2 requirements as set out in section 2 of the BBmedSc statute, or been granted exemption from those prerequisites by the Head of the School of Biological Sciences; and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as provided in (b) or in section 4, the course of study for the MBmedSc shall consist of
 

**Part 1:** BMSC 401; two courses from BMSC 402-449; BMSC 580

**Part 2:** BMSC 591

Each part shall contribute at least 40% of the total marks.
- (b) A candidate admitted with a BBmedSc(Hons) degree may be admitted directly to Part 2 and then need not offer Part 1.
3. (a) A full-time candidate whose course of study includes both parts shall normally be enrolled for at least four trimesters and shall complete the

- degree within two and a half years of first enrolling in it. For a part-time candidate, the period may be extended pro rata to a maximum of five years.
- (b) A full-time candidate shall normally be enrolled in Part 2 for at least two trimesters and shall complete it within one and a half years. For a part-time candidate, the period may be extended pro rata to a maximum of three years.
  - (c) The Associate Dean may extend the maximum period in (a) or (b) in special cases.

#### **Substitution of Courses**

4. A candidate may, with the permission of the Head of School, replace optional courses with substitute courses chosen from those offered for BSc(Hons) and MSc, or equivalent qualifications from an approved tertiary institution. (See the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses in Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.)

#### **Award of Honours, Distinction or Merit**

5. (a) The MBmedSc may be awarded with Honours as described in sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute. To be eligible, a candidate shall complete Parts 1 and 2 of the degree within two and a half years of first enrolling for the degree in that subject. For part-time students the period may be extended pro rata to a maximum of five years.
- (b) A candidate who is not eligible for Honours may be awarded the MBmedSc with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute. To be eligible, a candidate shall complete all work for Part 2 within one year and six months from the date of first enrolment in Part 2. For part-time students the period may be extended pro rata to a maximum of three years.

#### **Schedule to the MBmedSc Statute**

Course	Title	Pts
BMSC 580	Research Preparation	30
BMSC 591	Thesis	120

## **GDipBmedSc**

### **Statute for the Graduate Diploma in Biomedical Science**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipBmedSc shall have
  - (i) completed a BBmedSc degree; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the School of Biological Sciences as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.

- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Head of School for a candidate who has completed another Bachelor's degree.

### General Requirements

2. (a) The course of study for the diploma shall be a coherent programme approved by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science. Except as provided in (b) and (c), the course of study shall consist of courses worth at least 120 points, including
  - (i) BMSC 889; and
  - (ii) at least 90 points from BMSC 200-579, of which at least 48 points shall be at 300-level or above and at least 30 points shall be at 400-level or above.
- (b) At the discretion of the Associate Dean, up to 48 approved points may be selected from other programmes offered at this University.
- (c) At the discretion of the Associate Dean, courses passed for a Certificate of Proficiency may be credited to the diploma.

3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least two trimesters and shall complete the requirements of the diploma within four years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend the maximum period in special cases.

*Note: The actual time taken to complete the diploma will depend on the need to pass prerequisites and the timetabling of courses. No guarantee is given that the programme can be completed within two trimesters.*

4. A candidate who has passed for some other qualification one or more of the courses required for the diploma will be given the appropriate exemptions and allowed to substitute an approved course or courses if necessary to meet the points requirement of section 2(a).

## BIT

### Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Information Technology

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### General Requirements

1. The personal course of study of a candidate for the BIT degree shall, except as provided in section 2(d) and (e) and section 3 below and the Credit Transfer Statute, consist of courses from the BIT schedule and the schedules of other first degrees or postgraduate Honours degrees of this University. These courses shall have a total value of at least 480 points, of which
  - (i) at least 320 points shall be from courses numbered 200-499;
  - (ii) at least 175 points shall be from courses numbered 300-499; and
  - (iii) at least 90 points shall be from courses numbered 400-499.
2. (a) The course of study shall include
 

**Part 1:** COMP 102, 103, INFO 101, 102, MATH 114, TECH 102;

**Part 2:** COMP 205, INFO 241, MGMT 101, BITT 301, 302, 401, 489 and courses meeting the requirements in section 3 for at least one specialisation.

- (b) Entry to Part 2 will require passes in at least five Part 1 courses, with at least three of those passes being at B+ level or better.
- (c) Before the degree can be awarded a candidate shall have completed 800 hours of employment or work experience in an information technology related position approved by the Programme Director. Candidates shall begin their work experience after the second year of study and produce evidence of its completion to the satisfaction of the Programme Director.
- (d) With the permission of the Programme Director, a candidate may include 500-level courses in their personal course of study.
- (e) Where, in the opinion of the relevant Head of School, a candidate has achieved in another course of study a standard equivalent to that required in any compulsory course and cannot obtain credit for that under section 3 below or the Credit Transfer Statute, the candidate shall be exempted from that course and shall substitute an approved course of at least the equivalent number of points.

### Specialisations

3. A candidate shall meet the requirements for at least one specialisation as listed below:

#### Computer System Engineering

- (a) COMP 305, PHYS 340
- (b) at least five courses from COMP 301, 306, 310, 413, 414, PHYS 341, TECH 420-423, 431, of which at least 45 points shall be above 300 level

#### Information Systems

- (a) INFO 201, 222, 301, 322, 341
- (b) at least five further courses from ELCM 211-380, INFO 301-380, 401, 402, 404-407, 409-420, COMP 453, of which at least 45 points shall be above 300 level

#### Internet Computing

- (a) COMP 305, 306, 413, 417
- (b) at least four courses from COMP 302, 310, 311, ELCM 353, COMP 414, 415, 418, 442, 444, 453, of which at least 15 points shall be above 300 level

#### Software Engineering

- (a) COMP 202, 205, 206, 301, 302, 311
- (b) at least three courses from COMP 426, 453, 462, 463, 466, 467.

### Cross-crediting

4. At the discretion of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science or the Associate Dean (Undergraduate Students) of the Faculty of Commerce and Administration,
- (a) a candidate completing a BIT degree combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;
  - (b) a candidate completing a BIT degree combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the BIT and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 1-3 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Award of Honours**

5. The BIT may be awarded with Honours as described in sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute to a candidate whose work is judged to be of sufficient merit. The class of honours shall be determined on the basis of the candidate's performance in the 300 and 400-level courses; to be eligible, a candidate shall normally have completed those courses within a three-year period.

**Schedule to the BIT Statute**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
BITT 301	IT Project Management	15	P Part 1 of the BIT; MGMT 101; INFO 241 (or 213)
BITT 302	Ethical and Legal Issues	15	P Part 1 of the BIT; 44 200-level pts from the BIT schedule, including one of COMP 205 (or 201), INFO 241 (or 213)
BITT 401	Case Studies in Information Technology	15	P enrolment in the BIT, 75 300-level pts from the BIT schedule including BITT 301 and 302
BITT 489	Project	30	P as for BITT 401
COMP 101	Introduction to Dynamic Web Development	18	X INET 101
COMP 102	Intro to Computer Program Design	18	
COMP 103	Introduction to Data Structures and Algorithms	18	P COMP 102
COMP 202	Introduction to Formal Methods	22	P COMP 103, MATH 114
COMP 203	Computer Organisation	22	P COMP 103, MATH 114
COMP 205	Software Design and Engineering	22	P COMP 103
COMP 206	Program and Data Structures	22	P COMP 103; X COMP 201
COMP 301	Software Engineering Principles	15	P COMP 205 (or 201)
COMP 302	Database Systems	15	P COMP 205, 206 (or 201), MATH 114
COMP 303	Design and Analysis of Algorithms	15	P COMP 202; one of COMP 201, 205, 206; MATH 214
COMP 304	Programming Languages	15	P COMP 202; COMP 205 or 206 (or 201); MATH 114
COMP 305	Operating Systems	15	P COMP 203, 206 (or 201), MATH 114
COMP 306	Computer Networks	15	P COMP 203 (or 204), 206 (or 201), MATH 114
COMP 307	Introduction to Artificial Intelligence	15	P COMP 205 or 206 (or 201); MATH 114
COMP 308	Computer Graphics	15	P COMP 205, 206 (or 201), MATH 114
COMP 310	Concurrent Programming	15	P COMP 203, 206 (or 201), MATH 114
COMP 311	User Interface Design	15	P COMP 205 (or 201)
COMP 312	Simulation and Stochastic Models	15	P COMP 205 or 206 (or 201), STAT 131, MATH 114; X COMP 349 in 1998-2003, OPRE 352
COMP 413	Distributed Systems	15	P two of COMP 305, 306, 310; X ECSE 431
COMP 414	Advanced Networking	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 306; X ECSE 432
COMP 415	Mobile Systems	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 306 or 310

**Schedule to the BIT Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
COMP 417	Internet Technology	15	P COMP 413
COMP 418	Security	15	P COMP 305, 306
COMP 426	Formal Software Development	15	P COMP 202, MATH 214; 60 pts from COMP 301-399; MATH 309 or PHIL 234/334 (or 211) recommended
COMP 442	Issues in Databases and Information Systems	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 302
COMP 443	Distributed Object Databases	15	P as for COMP 442
COMP 444	Data Mining and Data Warehousing	15	P COMP 302, 307
COMP 453	Human Computer Interaction	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 311; X ECSE 434
COMP 462	Object-Oriented Paradigms	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 301 or 304
COMP 463	Advanced Software Engineering	15	P 30 pts from COMP 301-399 including COMP 301
COMP 466	Advanced Software Requirements and Design	15	P as for COMP 463
COMP 467	Software Construction, Evolution and Quality	15	P as for COMP 463
ELCM 211	Foundations of e-Commerce	22	P INFO 101; X ELCM 201
ELCM 251	Introduction to internet Design and Development	22	P INFO 102; X ELCM 202
ELCM 311	Advanced topics in e-Commerce	24	P ELCM 211 (or 201); X ELCM 301
ELCM 351	Advanced Internet Design and Development	24	P ELCM 251 (or 202); X ELCM 302
ELCM 353	Internet Development Environments	24	P ELCM 251; X ELCM 306
INFO 101	Foundations of Information Systems	18	
INFO 102	Information Systems Development	18	C INFO 101
INFO 201	Introduction to Information Systems Management	22	P INFO 101
INFO 222	Modern Systems Analysis	22	P INFO 102; X INFO 212
INFO 241	Introduction to Database Management and Programming	22	P INFO 102 or COMP 103; X INFO 213, COMP 302
INFO 301	Strategic Information Systems Management	24	P INFO 201 or ELCM 211; X INFO 311
INFO 322	Information Systems Implementation	24	P 22 200-level INFO pts; X INFO 214
INFO 325	Telecommunications in Business	24	P 22 200-level INFO, ELCM or COMP pts; X INFO 314
INFO 341	Advanced Database Programming	24	P INFO 241; X INFO 312
INFO 404	e-Commerce Research	15	P 48 300-level ELCM or INFO pts
INFO 409	Special Topic in Information Systems	15	
INFO 415	Manufacturing Information Systems	15	P INFO 212, 213
INFO 416	IT Business Development	15	P INFO 212, 213
MATH 114	Algebra and Discrete Mathematics	18	X MATH 113, QUAN 111

**Schedule to the BIT Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
MATH 214	Algebra and Discrete Mathematics 2	22	P MATH 114
MGMT 101	Introduction to Management	18	X MGMT 201
PHYS 340	Microprocessor and Interface Electronics	15	P PHYS 234
PHYS 341	Analogue Electronics and Instrumentation	15	P PHYS 233 or 235; MATH 206
TECH 102	Foundations of Digital Technology	18	
TECH 420	Signal Processing A	15	P MATH 206; X PHYS 420, ECSE 420
TECH 421	Digital Signal Processing	15	P MATH 206; X PHYS 421, ECSE 421
TECH 422	Instrumentation	15	P PHYS 340, 341; X PHYS 422, ECSE 422
TECH 423	Electronics	15	P PHYS 340, 341; X PHYS 423, ECSE 423
TECH 431	Communication Systems Engineering	15	P MATH 206

**BScTech****Statute for the Degree of Bachelor of Science and Technology**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**General Requirements**

1. (a) The personal course of study of a candidate for the BScTech degree shall, except as provided in section 4 below and the Credit Transfer Statute, consist of courses from the BScTech schedule and the schedules of other first degrees of this University. These courses shall have a total value of at least 480 points, of which
  - (i) at least 390 shall be selected from the BScTech or BSc schedules; and
  - (ii) at least 318 shall be for courses numbered 200-499.

A candidate shall complete to the satisfaction of the Director of Studies of the BScTech such practical work as may be prescribed
- (b) Before the degree can be awarded a candidate shall have completed employment /work experience of 400 hours approved by the Director, and shall have produced satisfactory evidence of its completion.
- (c) The personal course of study of a candidate shall include
 

**Part 1:** TECH 101 or 102; TECH 203, 302, 401, 409;

**Part 2:** The courses listed for one of the specialisations in section 2.

**Specialisations**

2. A candidate shall satisfy the requirements for at least one of these specialisation:

**Advanced Materials**

- (a) CHEM 103, 104, MATH 113, 114, PHYS 114, 115;
- (b) CHEM 202, PHYS 214, 339;

- (c) either (CHEM 203, 204, 206) or (PHYS 215, MATH 206);
- (d) either (CHEM 302, 303, 306) or (PHYS 304, 305, 307, 309);
- (e) either (CHEM 422, 423, 480 and one of TECH 411, 412) or (PHYS 413, 414 and TECH 411, 412)

#### Chemical Products and Processes

- (a) CHEM 103, 104;
- (b) one of MATH 103, 104, 113, 114;
- (c) one of PHYS 114, 115, 130, 131, 134;
- (d) CHEM 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206;
- (e) CHEM 301, 302, 303, 305, 306;
- (f) CHEM 480 and 30 points from CHEM 421-423;
- (g) one of TECH 411, 412.

#### Electronics and Instrumentation

- (a) COMP 102, 103, MATH 113, 114, PHYS 114, 115;
- (b) one of COMP 203, 205, 206;
- (c) MATH 206, PHYS 214, 215, 234, 235;
- (d) PHYS 309, 339, 340, 341;
- (e) TECH 420, 421, 422, 423.

#### Cross-crediting

3. At the discretion of the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science,
  - (a) a candidate completing a BScTech combined with another undergraduate degree or conjoint degree programme may have up to 160 points subtracted from the total points required to complete both separately;
  - (b) a candidate completing a BScTech combined with a double degree programme may have up to 240 points subtracted from the total points required to complete all three degrees separately.

In either case, the overall course of study for the BScTech and the other programme shall satisfy the requirements of sections 1 and 2 of this statute and section 11 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Award of Honours

4. The BScTech may be awarded with Honours as described in sections 19 and 20 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute to a candidate whose work is judged to be of sufficient merit. The class of honours shall be determined on the basis of the candidate's performance in the 300- and 400-level courses; to be eligible, a candidate shall complete those in not more than three consecutive years.

#### Schedule to the BScTech Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
TECH 101	Nanotechnology and Smart Materials	18	
TECH 102	Foundations of Digital Technology	18	
TECH 203	Computerised Data Acquisition and Analysis	15	P 36 100-level PHYS, CHEM, MATH, TECH or COMP pts; X TECH 201, PHYS 216, 217
TECH 302	Technology Development and Management	24	P 36 200-level pts in PHYS, CHEM, BTEC or TECH; X TECH 301

**Schedule to the BScTech Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
TECH 401	Research Project	30	
TECH 409	Management of Technological Projects	15	X MMMS 501, 509
TECH 410	Work Placement	0	
TECH 411	Materials and Technology A	15	P 30 300-level PHYS/CHEM pts
TECH 412	Materials and Technology B	15	P as for TECH 411
TECH 420	Signal Processing A	15	P MATH 206; X PHYS 420, ECSE 420
TECH 421	Signal Processing B	15	P MATH 206; X PHYS 421, ECSE 421
TECH 422	Instrumentation	15	P PHYS 340, 341; X PHYS 422, ECSE 422
TECH 423	Electronics	15	P PHYS 340, 341; X PHYS 423, ECSE 423

**MCompSc****Statute for the Degree of Master of Computer Science**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MCompSc degree shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree;
  - (ii) been accepted by the MCompSc Board of Studies as having adequate preparation in computer science, either through completion of an appropriate degree or diploma or through professional experience.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

**General Requirements**

2. Except as provided in section 4 of this statute, the course of study for the MCompSc shall consist of
 

**Part 1:** 180 points in an approved combination from COMP 401-479;

**Part 2:** COMP 588 (30 points).
3. A candidate for the MCompSc shall normally be enrolled for at least four trimesters and shall complete the degree within six years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend the maximum period in special cases.

**Substitution of Courses**

4. With the permission of the Board of Studies, a candidate may replace Part 1 courses worth up to 90 points with substitute courses chosen from
  - (a) 400/500-level courses in subjects other than Computer Science;
  - (b) 300-level courses worth at most 45 points in Computer Science or, in exceptional circumstances, in other subjects.

(See the general provisions concerning the substitution of courses in Part 2 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.)

#### **Award of Distinction or Merit**

5. The MCompSc may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute. The award shall be made on the combined results of courses and assessment of practical skills as demonstrated in COMP 588.

## **MConBio and PGCertNZCon**

### **Statute for the Degree of Master of Conservation Biology and the Postgraduate Certificate in New Zealand Conservation**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MConBio degree shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Joint Board of Studies as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### **General Requirements**

2. The course of study for the MConBio shall include

##### **Part 1**

- (a) BIOL 420 and 424;
- (b) one further course from (BIOL 404, 421-423, 425-428, ENVI 502, 504, 505) or another course approved by the Head of the School of Biological Sciences.

##### **Part 2**

A course of study at the University of New South Wales, complementary in content to that in Part 1, totalling the equivalent of 90 points (24 UNSW units of credit) and comprising BIOS 9211, 9221 and 9231.

3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least three trimesters and shall complete the degree within two years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend that maximum period in special cases.
4. (a) (i) A candidate who has completed Part 1 of the degree but not Part 2 may be awarded a PGCertNZCon.
  - (ii) A candidate who has completed Part 2 of the degree but not Part 1 may be awarded a Postgraduate Certificate in Australian Conservation by the University of New South Wales.
- (b) With the permission of the Joint Board of Studies, a candidate who holds a PGCertNZCon or a Postgraduate Certificate in Australian Conservation may

subsequently be permitted to enrol for the remainder of the programme for the MConBio. The candidate shall abandon the postgraduate certificate upon being awarded the MConBio.

#### Award of Distinction or Merit

5. The MConBio may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Schedule to the MConBio and PGCertNZCon Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
BIOL 404	Environment and Conservation Management	30	
BIOL 420	Conservation Ecology	30	P 300-level Ecology or permission of the Head of School
BIOL 421	Human Ecology	30	P 60 pts from approved courses
BIOL 422	Ecology	30	P as for BIOL 420
BIOL 423	Marine Biology	30	
BIOL 424	NZ Conservation Practice	30	P as for BIOL 420
BIOL 425	Biodiversity	30	P BIOL 329 or permission of the Head of School
BIOL 426	Behavioural Ecology	30	P BIOL 328 or permission of the Head of School
BIOL 427	Special Topic	30	P 300-level ecology or permission of the Head of School
BIOL 428	Special Topic	30	P 300-level ecology or permission of the Head of School
ENVI 502	Contemporary Environmental Resource Management	30	X GEOG 409
ENVI 504	Environmental Economics & Public Policy	30	
ENVI 505	Māori Environmental & Resource Management		
<b>Courses offered at UNSW for the MConBio:</b>			
BIOS9221	Australasian Mammals and Conservation		
BIOS9211	World Conservation Biology		
BIOS9231	Conservation Project		

## MDevStud

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Development Studies

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MDevStud degree shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree with First or Second Class Honours in a relevant subject; and

- (ii) been accepted by the Convener of the Board of Development Studies as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

### General Requirements

2. (a) Except as specified in (b) and section 3, the course of study for the MDevStud shall consist of courses worth at least 120 points, including

#### Part 1

- (i) DEVE 501;
- (ii) 60 further approved points from the MDevStud schedule, including at least one of ANTH 412, DEVE 502, 503, GEOG 404, MAOR 407, POLS 445, (ECON 414, 415).

#### Part 2

DEVE 589.

- (b) The Convener may approve the substitution of DEVE 592 for DEVE 589 and one course from (ii) of Part 1.
3. (a) A candidate who holds a Postgraduate Diploma in Development Studies may, at the discretion of the Convener, be admitted to Part 2.
- (b) A candidate admitted to Part 2 of the degree under section 3(a) who passes Part 2 shall abandon the PGDipDevStud upon being awarded the MDevStud.

### Award of Distinction or Merit

5. The MDevStud may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

### Schedule to the MDevStud statute

Course	Title	Pts	Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
ANTH 412	Anthropological Perspectives on Development	30	
BIOL 404	Environment and Conservation Management	30	
DEVE 501	Development Theory and Practice	30	
DEVE 502	Development Economics and Social Science: Poverty and Development	30	
DEVE 503	Practicum	30	
DEVE 560	Special Topic	30	
DEVE 589	Thesis	90	
DEVE 592	Thesis	120	
ECON 414	Theories of Growth and Development	15	C ECON 415 or ECHI 412
ECON 415	Topics in Development Economics	15	C ECON 414
ENVI 502	Contemporary Environmental Resource Management	30	X GEOG 409
GEOG 404	Geography of Development Studies	30	

**Schedule to the MDevStud statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
GEOG 406	The Geography of Place, Power and Identity	30	
GEOG 414	Environment and Business	30	
MAOR 407	Kaupapa Tūtahi/Special Topic	30	
PHYG 401	Geomorphology and its Application	30	
PHYG 403	Special Topic	30	
PHYG 404	Hydrology and Water Resources	30	
POLS 414	Selected Topic in Comparative Politics	30	
POLS 444	International Relations in Asia	30	
POLS 445	A Selected Topic in the International Politics of Development	30	
SOSC 403	Demography	30	

**PGDipDevStud****Statute for the Postgraduate Diploma in Development Studies**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGDipDevStud shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree with First or Second Class Honours in a relevant subject; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Convener of the Board of Development Studies as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

**General Requirements**

2. The course of study for the PGDevStud shall consist of courses worth at least 120 points, including
  - (a) DEVE 501;
  - (b) 90 further points from the MDevStud schedule, including at least one of ANTH 412, DEVE 502, DEVE 503, GEOG 404, MAOR 407, POLS 445, (ECON 414, 415).
3. A candidate for the PGDipDevStud shall normally be enrolled for at least one year of full-time study or two years of part-time study, and shall complete the requirements within two years of first enrolling for the diploma or the MDevStud. The Associate Dean may extend this maximum period in special cases.

## MEnvStud and PGDipEnvStud

### Statute for the Degree of Master of Environmental Studies and the Postgraduate Diploma in Environmental Studies

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### Entry Requirements

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the MEnvStud degree or the PGDipEnvStud shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary institution in New Zealand in a relevant subject; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Convener of the Board of Environmental Studies as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science for a candidate who has had extensive practical, professional or scholarly experience of an appropriate kind.

#### General Requirements

2. (a) The course of study for the MEnvStud shall consist of courses worth at least 240 points, including
 

**Part 1**  
Any four of ENVI 502-507; one of those may be replaced by 30 points from approved 400/500-level courses.

**Part 2**

    - (i) ENVI 512 (Practicum) or, for those with relevant work experience, an additional course selected from those listed under Part 1 above;
    - (ii) ENVI 593 (Thesis).
  - (b) Practical work shall be carried out in approved organisations under the personal supervision of practitioners approved by the Convener.
  - (c) Entry to Part 2 requires the acceptance of a thesis proposal by the School of Earth Sciences Graduate Committee and either a B+ average from Part 1 courses or special permission from the Director.
3. The course of study for the PGDipEnvStud shall comprise Part 1 of the MEnvStud as described in section 2(a).
  4. At the discretion of the Associate Dean, a candidate may credit to the diploma or Part 1 of the degree one course passed for a Certificate of Proficiency before enrolment for either qualification.
  5. (a) A candidate for the MEnvStud whose course of study includes both parts shall normally complete the degree within four years of first enrolling in it. A candidate whose course of study includes Part 2 only shall normally complete the degree within two years of first enrolment.
  - (b) A candidate for the PGDipEnvStud shall normally complete the diploma within two years of first enrolling in the diploma or the MEnvStud.
  - (c) The Associate Dean may extend the maximum periods in (a) or (b) in special cases.

6. (a) A candidate who has completed Part 1 of the degree and not Part 2 may be awarded a PGDipEnvStud.
- (b) With the permission of the Associate Dean, a candidate who holds a PGDipEnvStud may subsequently be admitted to Part 2 of the MEnvStud, provided the candidate abandons the diploma upon being awarded the MEnvStud.

#### **Award of Distinction or Merit**

7. The MEnvStud may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Schedule to the MEnvStud statute**

Course	Title	Pts
ENVI 502	Contemporary Environmental Resource Management	30
ENVI 503	Environmental and Planning Law	30
ENVI 504	Environmental Economics and Public Policy	30
ENVI 505	Māori Environmental and Resource Management	30
ENVI 506	Environment and Conservation Management	30
ENVI 507	Special Topic	30
ENVI 512	Practicum	30
ENVI 593	Thesis	90

## **GDipCompSc**

### **Statute for the Graduate Diploma in Computer Science**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the GDipCompSc shall have
  - (i) completed a Bachelor's degree; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the School of Mathematical and Computing Sciences as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science for a candidate who is otherwise suitably qualified.

#### **General Requirements**

2. (a) The course of study for the diploma shall be a coherent programme approved by the Head of School. Except as provided in section 4, the course of study shall consist of eight courses from COMP 200-488, including at least five at 300 level or above.
- (b) At the discretion of the Associate Dean, up to two courses passed for a Certificate of Proficiency may be credited to the diploma.

3. A candidate shall normally complete the requirements of the diploma within five years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend that period in special cases.

#### **Substitution of Courses**

4. With the permission of the Head of School, a candidate may replace up to two courses in section 2(a) with appropriate substitutes from other subject areas.

## **PGCertMet and PGDipMet**

### **Statute for the Postgraduate Certificate in Meteorology and the Postgraduate Diploma in Meteorology**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Entry Requirements**

1. (a) Before enrolment, a candidate for the PGCertMet or the PGDipMet shall have
  - (i) completed a degree of a tertiary education institution in New Zealand or equivalent in geophysics, mathematics, physics or other relevant subject; and
  - (ii) been accepted by the Head of the School of Earth Sciences as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (b) Requirement (a)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science for a candidate who is otherwise suitably qualified.

#### **General Requirements**

2. (a) The course of study for the PGCertMet shall consist of courses worth 60 points, including four courses selected from GPHS 420-425.
- (b) The course of study for the PGDipMet shall consist of courses worth 120 points, including
  - (i) GPHS 888;
  - (ii) 75 points from GPHS 420-425;
  - (iii) 15 further points from GPHS 420-431 or a course approved by the Head of School.
3. (a) A candidate for the PGCertMet shall normally complete the certificate within two years of first enrolling in it.
- (b) A candidate for the PGDipMet shall normally complete the diploma within four years of first enrolling in the PGCertMet or PGDipMet.
- (c) The Associate Dean may extend the maximum period in (a) or (b) in special cases.
4. A candidate who has been awarded the PGCertMet shall abandon that qualification upon being awarded the PGDipMet.

---

**Schedule to the PGCertMet and PGDipMet Statute**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites
GPHS 420	Introduction to Dynamic Meteorology	15	MATH 323
GPHS 421	Mid-latitude Weather Systems	15	
GPHS 422	Radiation and Thermodynamics for Meteorology	15	
GPHS 423	Cloud Physics and Boundary Layer Meteorology	15	
GPHS 424	Satellite Meteorology	15	
GPHS 425	Numerical Weather Prediction	15	
GPHS 430	Special Topic	15	
GPHS 431	Special Topic	15	
GPHS 888	Project	30	

---

**PGDipClinPsyc**
**Statute for the Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

**Entry Requirements**

1. (a) For provisional admission to the PGDipClinPsyc, a candidate shall have completed the requirements for a Bachelor's degree in Psychology. Provisional admission is intended to guarantee the candidate a place in the diploma subject to (b).
- (b) Before enrolment, a candidate for the diploma shall have
  - (i) completed a BSc(Hons) or BA(Hons) degree in Psychology, or completed the coursework for Part 1 of the MSc in Psychology;
  - (ii) passed 120 400-level Psychology points (or their equivalent) as required by the Head of the School of Psychology; and
  - (iii) been accepted by the Head of School as capable of proceeding with the proposed course of study.
- (c) Requirement (b)(i) may be waived by the Associate Dean (Students) of the Faculty of Science for a candidate who is otherwise suitably qualified.

**General Requirements**

2. The course of study for the diploma shall consist of courses worth 210 points, including
 

**Part 1:** PSYC 561; and

**Part 2:** PSYC 562, two of PSYC 571, 572, 573.
3. A candidate shall normally be enrolled for at least four trimesters and shall complete the diploma within three years of first enrolling in it. The Associate Dean may extend the maximum period in exceptional circumstances.
4. (a) By the beginning of the course of study for the diploma, a candidate shall have enrolled for or completed an MA or PhD degree or Part 2 of the MSc degree by thesis.

- (b) A candidate who has not completed the degree referred to in (a) shall not enrol for Part 2 of the diploma before submitting a thesis for examination.

#### **Award of Distinction or Merit**

5. The diploma may be awarded with Distinction or Merit as described in sections 19 and 21 of the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

#### **Schedule to the PGDipClinPsyc Statute**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P), Corequisites (C) and Restrictions (X)
PSYC 561	Practicum	60	
PSYC 562	Advanced Practicum	120	
PSYC 571	Advanced Neuropsychology Theory and Practice	15	P PSYC 451, 452, 561; C PSYC 562; X PSYC 551
PSYC 572	Adult and Child Clinical Psychology: Advanced Intervention Skills	15	P PSYC 451, 452, 561; C PSYC 562; X PSYC 551
PSYC 573	Clinical Criminal Justice Psychology	15	P PSYC 451, 452, 561; C PSYC 562; X PSYC 504

## Inter-Faculty Qualifications

### CertFoundStud

#### Statute for the Certificate in Foundation Studies

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

1. A candidate for the Certificate shall before enrolment have
  - (a) completed the equivalent of Year 12 at a New Zealand secondary school;
  - (b) demonstrated evidence of English language proficiency, normally through a TOEFL score of 525 or an IELTS band score of 5.5; and
  - (c) been accepted as a candidate by the Programme Director.

*Note: Details of the standards required in different countries can be obtained from the Programme Director.*

2. The Certificate shall consist of two trimesters of full-time study.
3. The Certificate shall be awarded to a candidate who has followed the course of study prescribed in this statute, completing such assignments, presentations and other course work as may be required.
4. The course of study shall consist of six courses in total, comprising
  - FNDN 001
  - One course from FNDN 004, 005, 025
  - Four further courses selected from FNDN 002-025.
5. (a) Whether a candidate qualifies for the award of the Certificate shall be determined on the basis of their performance in the Certificate programme as a whole.  
 (b) A failure in one course other than FNDN 001 shall not preclude an award of the Certificate.
6. The prescriptions for the course of study shall be as defined in the *Course Catalogue* of Victoria University of Wellington.

#### Schedule to the Certificate in Foundation Studies Statute

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
FNDN 001	Academic Writing and Research	20	X CUPR 001
FNDN 002	Information Management	20	X CUPR 002
FNDN 003	Commerce and Economics	20	X CUPR 003
FNDN 004	Politics and Government	20	X CUPR 004
FNDN 005	Modern New Zealand Literature	20	
FNDN 020	Computing Technologies	20	X CUPR 005
FNDN 021	Accounting	20	
FNDN 022	Science	20	
FNDN 023	Mathematics	20	X CUPR 006

**Schedule to the Certificate in Foundation Studies Statute (contd)**

Course	Title	Pts	Prerequisites (P) and Restrictions (X)
FNDN 024	Design	20	
FNDN 025	Modern History	20	
FNDN 026	Special Topic	20	P FNDN 001 and 40 further 000-level points; X to be determined by HoS each time the course is run
FNDN 027	Special Topic	20	P FNDN 001 and 40 further 000-level points; X to be determined by HoS each time the course is run

**CertUnivPrep****Statute for the Certificate of University Preparation**

This statute is to be read in conjunction with the Personal Courses of Study Statute.

1. A candidate for the Certificate of University Preparation shall before enrolment have
  - (a) (i) normally completed year 13 at a New Zealand secondary school or its equivalent, or
  - (ii) produced evidence that they are suitably qualified and will benefit from enrolling in the programme, and
  - (b) demonstrated evidence of English language proficiency, and
  - (c) been accepted for the Certificate by the Programme Manager.

*Note: Students are referred to the statement on English Language Competency in Section B of the Calendar.*

2. The Certificate of University Preparation shall consist of one trimester of full-time study or two trimesters of part-time study.
3. The Certificate of University Preparation shall be awarded to a candidate who has followed the course of study prescribed in this statute, passing such assignments, presentations, and other course work as may be required.
4. The course of study for the Certificate of University Preparation shall comprise CUPR 010, CUPR 011 and two further courses selected from CUPR 012-020.
5. (a) Whether a candidate qualifies for the award of the Certificate shall be determined by the Programme Manager on the basis of the candidate's performance in the Certificate programme as a whole.  
(b) A failure in one course other than CUPR 010 or CUPR 011 shall not preclude an award of the Certificate being made.
6. The prescriptions for the course of study shall be as defined in the *Course Catalogue*.
7. Students who satisfactorily complete the Certificate of University Preparation will satisfy the minimum requirements for entry to the University.

---

**Schedule to the Certificate of University Preparation Statute**

Course	Title	Pts
CUPR 010	Introduction to Academic Writing and Research	15
CUPR 011	Introduction to Information Technology	15
CUPR 012	Focus on Commerce	15
CUPR 013	Focus on Humanities	15
CUPR 014	Focus on Mathematics and Statistics	15
CUPR 015	Focus on Science	15
CUPR 016	Focus on Social Sciences	15
CUPR 017	Focus on Teaching	15

---

**COP****Statute for the Certificate of Proficiency**

1. Any person eligible for entry to the University may enrol for a course and receive a Certificate of Proficiency (COP) on passing.
2. A candidate for a COP shall meet prerequisite and other course requirements in the same way as candidates for other qualifications; the Assessment Statute and Personal Courses of Study Statute shall apply with the necessary modifications.
3. At the discretion of the relevant Associate Dean (or Dean), a student who has passed a course for a COP may credit that course to another qualification. Normally, the student must have been eligible for entry to the qualification at the time of enrolment in the course, and the number of courses credited in this way shall not exceed any limit specified in the statute for that qualification.

---

## Doctorates

---

### PhD

#### Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

##### 1. Purpose:

The PhD Statute sets out the regulations governing the admission, enrolment, registration, supervision, and examination procedures for the PhD degree at Victoria University of Wellington. It also stipulates the criteria on which the award of the degree will be based. This Statute must be read in conjunction with the PhD Policy: Approving, Enrolling, Supervising and Examining Candidates.

##### 2. Organisational Scope:

This is a University-wide statute.

##### 3. Definitions:

For purposes of this Statute, unless otherwise stated, the following definitions shall apply:

*Associate Dean:* Throughout this Statute “Associate Dean” refers to the person to whom the Dean of the Faculty has delegated the relevant authority. The Associate Dean may in turn delegate this authority.

*Full-time PhD Student:* Students are deemed to be full-time when they are able to devote a minimum of 30 hours per week to the thesis, on average, over the year. This ignores statutory holiday periods.

*Half-time PhD Student:* Students who cannot work on the thesis for the amount of time specified above are enrolled as half-time students.

*PhD Convener:* Convener of the Research Degrees Sub-Committee.

*Administrative Supervisor:* The person in the School with responsibility of administering the candidacy. The Administrative Supervisor must ensure that the candidate and the supervisors follow the regulations for the PhD Degree.

##### 4. Statute Content and Guidelines:

###### 4.1 Admission

- (a) A candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy shall, before enrolment:
  - (i) have qualified for admission to a Bachelor’s or Master’s degree with First or Second Class Honours or a Master’s degree at an equivalent standard to First or Second Class Honours at a university in New Zealand; or
  - (ii) be currently enrolled in a Master’s by thesis; or
  - (iii) produce evidence to the satisfaction of the Associate Dean of adequate training and ability to proceed with the proposed course for the degree.
- (b) A candidate must not only show themselves to be qualified but must also be accepted by the Associate Dean and relevant Head of School.

- (c) Where a candidate is accepted under clause 4.1 (a) (ii), the candidate will be deemed to have first enrolled for the Doctor of Philosophy on the date of first enrolment for the Master's degree.

#### **4.2 Conditions of Enrolment**

- (a) Initially, a candidate shall be provisionally registered as a candidate for the Doctor of Philosophy. Full registration must be confirmed by the Associate Dean on the advice of the Head of School within 15 months of first enrolment, otherwise the candidate's enrolment will be terminated. Once full registration has been confirmed, the date of registration shall be deemed to be the date of first enrolment for the degree.
- (b) With full-time enrolment, the minimum period of registration will be 24 months and with half-time enrolment, the minimum period of registration will be 48 months.

#### **4.3 Re-enrolment, suspension, termination**

- (a) A candidate pursuing a course of study for the degree shall re-enrol within one month of the expiry of the period of previous enrolment.
- (b) After every six months of enrolment, the supervisors of a candidate shall submit to the administrative supervisor and the Student and Academic Services Office, a report on the progress of the candidate. If progress is reported to be unsatisfactory the Associate Dean may, subject to any submission or appeal a candidate may make, terminate the enrolment.
- (c) On application from a candidate, the Associate Dean may grant a suspension of enrolment for a period of not less than one month, and not more than one year. During suspension of enrolment the candidate will have no access to university services, including supervision, and will pay no fees.
- (d) The thesis shall be presented within five years from the date of registration. This applies to all candidates whether full- or half-time but excludes any period(s) of suspension. This period may be extended by the Associate Dean where good cause is shown, provided that any extension beyond seven years, including any period(s) of suspension, is granted only in exceptional circumstances.

#### **4.4 Course of Study**

- (a) The course of study for a PhD consists of a programme of research and the writing of a thesis carried out under supervision.
- (i) The research will normally be conducted at Victoria University of Wellington, but with permission of the Associate Dean, part of the research programme may be carried out at locations outside the University.
- (ii) The thesis must be an integrated report that demonstrates the candidate's ability to carry out independent research, and constitutes a significant and original contribution to the knowledge or understanding of a field of study.
- (iii) The thesis may include the candidate's previously published work or material based on previous research, as long as the report constituting the thesis is written under supervision during the period of registration.

#### 4.5 Examination

- (a) At any time after the minimum period of enrolment, a candidate may submit their thesis and apply for examination.
- (b) Where any work relevant to the thesis has been published or accepted for publication at the time of submission, a statement shall be included showing how the published work relates to the thesis.
- (c) Where any of the published material included in clause 4.5 (b) is co-authored, the candidate must provide a detailed statement of each author's contribution to such work, and contact details of co-authors.
- (d) The application for examination shall be accompanied by a certificate from the supervisors that the candidate has pursued the course in accordance with the requirements of this statute.
- (e) The thesis shall not exceed a total of 100,000 words in length (including scholarly apparatus). In exceptional circumstances the PhD Convener may grant permission for a longer thesis to be submitted for examination.
- (f) The format of the thesis is determined by the Library Statute. (See Clause 4.12 of the Library Statute.)
- (g) The thesis shall be examined by three examiners, appointed by the Research Degrees Sub-Committee. One of these examiners should be from outside New Zealand. Only in exceptional circumstances should an examiner be the principal supervisor or a co-supervisor.
- (h) The Associate Dean shall, after consultation with the examiners, make a report on the whole examination to the Research Degrees Sub-Committee, who shall recommend whether the degree be awarded. When the Research Degrees Sub-Committee recommends the award of the degree, two copies of the thesis shall be deposited in the University Library.
- (i) The Associate Dean may on the application of the candidate or the supervisors at any time before the submission of the thesis, or on the recommendation of the examiners after the submission of the thesis, approve the enrolment of the candidate in a subject for an appropriate Master's degree instead of the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, where the statute for such Master's degree provides that the degree may be taken by thesis and where the candidate does not already hold that degree in the same subject in this University.
  - (i) Where any thesis has been submitted for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy that thesis may be accepted in fulfilment of the requirements for the Master's degree, notwithstanding any other provision in the Statute for that Master's degree.
  - (ii) In any other case, provided that the candidate has been enrolled for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy for that period, the candidate shall be deemed to have been enrolled in and to have followed a course of study for that Master's degree for the appropriate minimum period.

## DCom

### **Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Commerce**

1. A candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Commerce shall be a graduate of the Victoria University of Wellington or of the University of New Zealand, or have been admitted *ad eundem statum*.
2. No person shall become a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Commerce until at least five years after graduation to the qualifying degree.
3. The degree shall be awarded for substantial published work of originality and high standard which entitles the candidate to an authoritative standing in a field of commerce. In special circumstances approved by the Convener of the Research Degrees Sub-Committee, unpublished work may be submitted in support of the application.
4. A candidate for the degree shall forward to the Research Manager an application accompanied by the fee prescribed in the Fees Statute.
5. (a) Every application shall be accompanied by three copies of the published work on which the candidature is based.  
(b) If joint work is submitted the candidate's share in that work shall be fully stated. The degree will not be conferred in respect of joint work only.  
(c) The candidate shall certify that none of the material has been accepted for a degree or diploma in this or any other university or is being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other university.

*Note: Candidates must include with their application four copies of a list of those publications which are being submitted for examination. Details of the full requirements are obtainable from the Research Manager.*

6. Upon receiving an application for the degree the Research Manager shall request the Convener of the Research Degrees Sub-Committee to appoint an *ad hoc* committee of not fewer than three persons, including the Heads of the relevant Schools, unless such a person is the candidate for the degree. This committee shall report to the Convener of the Research Degrees Sub-Committee whether or not the work submitted is *prima facie* worthy of examination for the degree; and if so recommend the names of suitable examiners.
7. If the Convener of the Research Degrees Sub-Committee determines that the examination shall proceed the candidate's work shall be submitted to three examiners, one of whom must be an overseas authority, who shall:
  - (a) report on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) recommend whether or not the degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the degree should not be awarded the examiners may recommend that the candidate be allowed to re-present the work in a revised form or supplemented by additional published work. A re-presentation shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.

8. The *ad hoc* committee appointed under Section 6 shall make a report on the whole examination to the Convener of the Research Degrees Sub-Committee who will decide whether the degree should be awarded.
9. One copy of the work submitted shall be retained by the University and deposited in the Library.

*Note: Applications may be accepted from candidates who are not Victoria University graduates but who have had significant association with the University. Only in exceptional circumstances will applications be accepted from candidates who have had no association with the University.*

## LitD

### Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Literature

1. A candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Literature shall be a graduate of the Victoria University of Wellington or of the University of New Zealand, or have been admitted *ad eundem statum*.
2. No person shall become a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Literature until five years after graduation to the qualifying degree.
3. The degree shall be awarded for substantial published work that has made original contributions of special excellence in a field of the humanities or social sciences. In special circumstances approved by the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee unpublished work may be submitted in support of the application.
4. A candidate for the degree shall forward to the Research Manager an application accompanied by the fee prescribed in the Fees Statute.
5. (a) Every application shall be accompanied by three copies of the published work on which the candidature is based.  
 (b) If conjoint work is submitted the candidate's share in that work shall be fully stated. The degree will not be conferred in respect of conjoint work only.  
 (c) The candidate shall certify that none of the material has been accepted for a degree or diploma in this or any other university or is being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other university.

*Note: Candidates must include with their application four copies of a list of those publications which are being submitted for examination. Details of the full requirements are obtainable from the Research Manager.*

6. Upon receiving an application for the degree the Research Manager shall request the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee to appoint an *ad hoc* committee of not fewer than three persons, including the Heads of the relevant Schools, unless such a person is the candidate for the degree. This committee shall report to the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee (i) whether or not it is appropriate for this University to examine the submission on the grounds of subject matter, and (ii) whether or not the work submitted is *prima facie* worthy of examination for the degree. If it recommends that the submission be examined, the *ad hoc* committee shall recommend the names of suitable examiners.

7. If the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee determines that the examination shall proceed the candidate's work shall be submitted to three examiners who shall:
  - (a) report on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) recommend whether or not the degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the degree should not be awarded the examiners may recommend that the candidate be allowed to re-present the work in a revised form or supplemented by additional published work. A re-presentation shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
8. The *ad hoc* committee appointed under Section 6 shall make a report on the whole examination to the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee who will decide whether the degree should be awarded.
9. One copy of the work submitted shall be retained by the University and deposited in the Library.

*Note: Only in exceptional circumstances will applications be accepted from candidates who have had no association with Victoria University of Wellington.*

## DMus

### Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Music

1. A candidate for the degree of Doctor of Music shall be a graduate of the Victoria University of Wellington or of the University of New Zealand, or have been admitted *ad eundem statum*.
2. No person shall become a candidate for the degree of Doctor of Music until five years after graduation to the qualifying degree.
3. The degree shall be awarded for substantial published work showing special excellence in Musical Composition. The term publication shall include public performance or commercial recording of a work. In special circumstances approved by the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee unpublished work may be submitted in support of the application.
4. A candidate for the degree shall forward to the Research Manager an application accompanied by the fee prescribed in the Fees Statute.
5.
  - (a) Every application shall be accompanied by three copies of the published work on which the candidature is based.
  - (b) The candidate shall certify that none of the material has been accepted for a degree or diploma in this or any other university or is being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other university.

*Note: Candidates must include with their applications four copies of a list of those publications which are being submitted for examination. Details of the full requirements are obtainable from the Research Manager.*

6. Upon receiving an application for the degree the Research Manager shall request the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee to appoint an *ad hoc* committee of not fewer than three persons, including the Head of the School of Music, unless

the Head of School is the candidate for the degree. This committee shall report to the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee whether or not the work submitted is *prima facie* worthy of examination for the degree; and if so recommend the names of suitable examiners.

7. If the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee determines that the examination shall proceed the candidate's work shall be submitted to three examiners who shall:
  - (a) report on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to music; and
  - (b) recommend whether or not the degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the degree should not be awarded the examiners may recommend that the candidate be allowed to re-present the work in a revised form or supplemented by additional published work. A re-presentation shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
8. The *ad hoc* committee appointed under Section 6 shall make a report on the whole examination to the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee who will decide whether the degree should be awarded.
9. One copy of the work submitted shall be retained by the University and deposited in the Library.

*Note: Only in exceptional circumstances will applications be accepted from candidates who have had no association with Victoria University of Wellington.*

## LLD

### Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Laws

1. A candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Laws shall be a graduate of the Victoria University of Wellington or of the University of New Zealand, or have been admitted *ad eundem statum*.
2. No person shall become a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Laws until five years after graduation to the qualifying degree.
3. The degree shall be awarded for substantial published work of originality and high standard which entitles the candidate to an authoritative standing in a field of law. In special circumstances approved by the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee unpublished work may be submitted in support of the application.
4. A candidate for the degree shall forward to the Research Manager an application accompanied by the fee prescribed in the Fees Statute.
5.
  - (a) Every application shall be accompanied by three copies of the published work on which the candidature is based.
  - (b) If conjoint work is submitted the candidate's share in that work shall be fully stated. The degree will not be conferred in respect of conjoint work only.
  - (c) The candidate shall certify that none of the material has been accepted for a degree or diploma in this or any other university or is being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other university.

*Note: Candidates must include with their application four copies of a list of those publications which are being submitted for examination. Details of the full requirements are obtainable from the Research Manager.*

6. Upon receiving an application for the degree the Research Manager shall request the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee to appoint an *ad hoc* committee of not fewer than three persons, including the Heads of the relevant Schools, unless such a person is the candidate for the degree. This committee shall report to the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee whether or not the work submitted is *prima facie* worthy of examination for the degree; and if so recommend the names of suitable examiners.
7. If the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee determines that the examination shall proceed the candidate's work shall be submitted to three examiners who shall:
  - (a) report on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) recommend whether or not the degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the degree should not be awarded the examiners may recommend that the candidate be allowed to re-present the work in a revised form or supplemented by additional published work. A re-presentation shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
8. The *ad hoc* committee appointed under Section 6 shall make a report on the whole examination to the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee who will decide whether the degree should be awarded.
9. One copy of the work submitted shall be retained by the University and deposited in the Library.

*Note: Only in exceptional circumstances will applications be accepted from candidates who have had no association with Victoria University of Wellington.*

## DSc

### Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Science

1. A candidate for the degree of Doctor of Science shall be a graduate of the Victoria University of Wellington or of the University of New Zealand, or have been admitted *ad eundem statum*.
2. No person shall become a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Science until five years after graduation to the qualifying degree.
3. The degree shall be awarded for substantial published work that has made original contributions of special excellence in some branch of pure or applied science. In special circumstances approved by the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee unpublished work may be submitted in support of the application.
4. A candidate for the degree shall forward to the Research Manager an application accompanied by the fee prescribed in the Fees Statute.
5. (a) Every application shall be accompanied by three copies of the published work on which the candidature is based.

- (b) If conjoint work is submitted the candidate's share in that work shall be fully stated. The degree will not be conferred in respect of conjoint work only.
- (c) The candidate shall certify that none of the material has been accepted for a degree or diploma in this or any other university or is being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other university.

*Note: Candidates must include with their application four copies of a list of those publications which are being submitted for examination. Details of the full requirements are obtainable from the Research Manager.*

6. Upon receiving an application for the degree the Research Manager shall request the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee to appoint an *ad hoc* committee of not fewer than three persons, including the Heads of the relevant Schools, unless such a person is the candidate for the degree. This committee shall report to the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee (i) whether or not it is appropriate for this University to examine the submission on the grounds of subject matter, and (ii) whether or not the work submitted is *prima facie* worthy of examination for the degree. If it recommends that the submission be examined, the *ad hoc* committee shall recommend the names of suitable examiners.
7. If the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee determines that the examination shall proceed the candidate's work shall be submitted to three examiners who shall:
  - (a) report on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) recommend whether or not the degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the degree should not be awarded the examiners may recommend that the candidate be allowed to re-present the work in a revised form or supplemented by additional published work. A re-presentation shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
8. The *ad hoc* committee appointed under Section 6 shall make a report on the whole examination to the Convener, Research Degrees Sub-Committee who will decide whether the degree should be awarded.
9. One copy of the work submitted shall be retained by the University and deposited in the Library.

*Note: Only in exceptional circumstances will applications be accepted from candidates who have had no association with Victoria University of Wellington.*